Scan to see the online manual.





# OWNER'S MANUAL **DISHWASHER**

Read this owner's manual thoroughly before operating the appliance and keep it handy for reference at all times. This abridged owner's manual addresses user safety, precautions, and installation information.

To view the complete owner's manual, you may:

1. Online manual: Visit the LG website at: http://gscs-manual.lge.com/ Total/HQ/GatewayPage/main.html or scan the QR code above; or 2. Printable PDF manual: Visit lg.com and search for your model number; or

3. Call or write to customer service as provided in your Limited Warranty.

# ENGLISH

LDFC242\*\*



MFL69261758 Rev.00\_090723 www.lg.com

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### 3 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- 3 READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE
- 3 WARNING STATEMENTS
- 6 CAUTION STATEMENTS

#### 8 PRODUCT OVERVIEW

8 Product Features

#### **10 INSTALLATION**

- 10 Before Installing
- 12 Preparing Cabinet Opening
- 12 Preparing Water and Electrical Connections
- 13 Preparing Dishwasher
- 15 Sliding Dishwasher into Cabinet Opening
- 16 Connecting Water Supply Line and Power
- 18 Connecting the Drain Hose
- 20 Leveling Dishwasher
- 21 Securing Dishwasher in Cabinet Opening
- 22 Final Installation Check

#### 24 OPERATION

- 24 Before Using
- 25 Control Panel
- 26 Wash Cycles
- 26 Options and Extra Functions
- 27 Loading the Dishwasher
- 28 Loading the Silverware Basket
- 28 Loading the Lower Rack
- 29 Loading the Upper Rack
- 29 Adding Cleaning Products

#### **31 SMART FUNCTIONS**

31 LG ThinQ Application

#### **32 MAINTENANCE**

32 Cleaning and Care

#### **36 TROUBLESHOOTING**

36 Before Calling for Service

#### **38 LIMITED WARRANTY**

# **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

# **READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE**

# Safety Messages

#### Your safety and the safety of others are very important.

We have provided many important safety messages in this manual and on your appliance. Always read and follow all safety messages.



This is the safety alert symbol.

This symbol alerts you to potential hazards that can kill or injure you and others. All safety messages will follow the safety alert symbol and either the word WARNING or CAUTION.

These words mean:



# WARNING

You may be killed or seriously injured if you do not follow instructions.



### CAUTION

You may be injured or cause damage to the product if you do not follow instructions.

All safety messages will tell you what the potential hazard is, tell you how to reduce the chance of injury, and tell you what may happen if the instructions are not followed.

# WARNING STATEMENTS

# **WARNING**

• To reduce the risk of explosion, fire, death, electric shock, scalding or injury to persons when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

# Installation

- Connect to a properly rated, protected, and sized power circuit to avoid electrical overload.
- To reduce the risk of severe injury or death, follow all installation instructions.
- The appliance must be installed and electrically grounded by qualified service personnel in accordance with local codes.
- Disconnect the power supply line, house fuse or circuit breaker before installing or servicing the appliance.
- When moving or installing the product in a different location, call qualified service personnel for installation and service.
- Keep packing materials out of the reach of children. Packaging material can be dangerous for children. There is a risk of suffocation.
- Moving or installation of the appliance requires two or more people.
- This appliance is not designed for maritime use or for mobile installations such as in RVs, trailers, or aircraft.
- Store and install the appliance where it will not be exposed to temperatures below freezing or exposed to outdoor weather conditions.
- This appliance must be positioned near to an electrical power supply.
- Do not, under any circumstances, cut or remove the ground from the power supply line.

#### 4 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- When installing or moving the appliance, be careful not to pinch, crush, or damage the power supply line.
- Do not install the appliance in humid spaces.
- Destroy the carton, plastic bag, and other packing materials after the appliance is unpacked. Children might use them for play. Cartons covered with rugs, bedspreads, or plastic sheets can become airtight chambers.
- Never attempt to operate this appliance if it is damaged, malfunctioning, partially disassembled, or has missing or broken parts, including a damaged power supply line.
- Adhere to all industry recommended safety procedures including the use of long-sleeved gloves and safety glasses.
- The installer must ensure that the dishwasher is completely enclosed at the time of installation.
- Use new hoses when connecting the appliance to the water supply. Do not reuse old hoses.
- After installing, check the hose connection for leaks.
- Do not damage or place heavy items on the power supply line of the appliance.

# Operation

- Repair or immediately replace all power supply lines that have become frayed or otherwise damaged. Do not use a power supply line that shows cracks or abrasion damage along its length or at either end.
- If you detect a strange sound, a chemical or burning smell, or smoke coming from the appliance, unplug it immediately, and contact an LG Electronics customer information center.
- Never unplug the appliance by pulling on the power supply line.
- Do not use an extension cable or adapter with this appliance.
- Do not grasp the power supply line or touch the appliance controls with wet hands.
- Do not modify or extend the power cable.
- If the product has been submerged, contact an LG Electronics customer information center for instructions before resuming use.
- Do not store or use gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this or any other appliance.
- Keep the area underneath and around your appliances free of combustible materials (lint, paper, rags, etc.), gasoline, chemicals and other flammable vapors and liquids.
- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning the use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.
- If the electrical supply line is damaged, it must only be replaced by the manufacturer or its service agent or a similar qualified person in order to avoid a hazard.
- Do not abuse, sit on, or stand on the door of the appliance.
- Read all instructions before using the appliance and save these instructions.
- Use this appliance only for its intended purpose.
- Do not allow children to play on, in or with the appliance. Close supervision of children is necessary when the appliance is used near children.
- Do not tamper with controls.
- In the event of a gas leak (propane gas, LP gas, etc.) do not operate this or any other appliance. Open a window or door to ventilate the area immediately.
- Under certain conditions, hydrogen gas may be produced in a hot-water system that has not been used for two weeks or more. HYDROGEN GAS IS EXPLOSIVE. If the hot-water system has not been used for such a period, before using the appliance turn on all hot water faucets and let the water flow from each for several minutes. This will release any accumulated hydrogen gas. As the gas is flammable, do not smoke or use an open flame during this time.

- Fix the drain hose securely in place.
- Use only detergents or wetting agents recommended for use in a dishwasher and keep them out of the reach of children.
- Do not let children eat detergent or dishwasher rinse agent.
- When loading items to be washed:
  - Locate sharp items so that they are not likely to damage the door seal.
  - Load sharp knives with the handles up to reduce the risk of cuts or other injuries.
- Do not wash plastic items unless they are marked "dishwasher safe" or the equivalent. For plastic items not so marked, check the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Do not touch the HEATING ELEMENT during or immediately after use.
- Do not operate your dishwasher unless all ENCLOSURE panels are properly in place.
- Do not abuse, sit on, or stand on the door or dish rack of the dishwasher.
- Do not install or store the dishwasher where it will be exposed to weather conditions.
- After cleaning the dishes, turn off the water supply. Before cleaning, turn the water supply back on and check the connections.
- Do not open the appliance door while it is operating. For safety reasons, the drain pump operates if the door is opened, resulting in a longer cycle time.
- Be careful not to catch your hand when closing the door of the product.
- · Do not plug the dishwasher into a damaged outlet.
- · Do not install or keep the dishwasher near electrical components or exposed flames.
- Do not wash dishes exposed to gasoline, solvents or other flammable materials.
- · When cleaning, do not spray water on the product directly.
- Do not press buttons with a sharp object such as an awl or pin.
- Do not use solvent-based detergent.
- Do not come into contact with the steam outlet.
- Small parts, such as rack clips and filter retaining posts can be a choke hazard to small children if removed from the dishwasher. Keep out of reach of small children.

#### Maintenance

- Do not repair or replace any part of the appliance. All repairs and servicing must be performed by qualified service personnel unless specifically recommended in this Owner's Manual. Use only authorized factory parts.
- Do not disassemble or repair the appliance by yourself.
- Remove any dust or foreign matter from the power supply line.
- Disconnect this appliance from the power supply before cleaning and attempting any user maintenance. Turning the controls to the OFF position does not disconnect this appliance from the power supply.
- Remove the door before the appliance is removed from service or discarded to avoid the danger of children or small animals getting trapped inside.
- Unplug the appliance before cleaning to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Before discarding the appliance, cut off the power supply line and destroy the appliance's control panel.

#### **Grounding Instructions**

- For a permanently connected dishwasher: This appliance must be connected to a grounded metal, permanent wiring system, or an equipment-grounding conductor must be run with the circuit conductors and connected to the equipment-grounding terminal or lead to the appliance.
- Connect the ground wire to the green ground connector in the terminal box.

#### 6 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- For a cord connected dishwasher: This appliance must be grounded. In the event of a malfunction or breakdown, grounding will reduce the risk of electric shock by providing a path of least resistance for electric current.
- This appliance is equipped with a cord having an equipment-grounding conductor and a grounding plug.
- The plug must be plugged into an appropriate outlet that is installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances.

#### WARNING

Improper connection of the equipment-grounding conductor can result in a risk of electric shock. Check with a qualified electrician or service representative if you are in doubt whether the appliance is properly grounded. Do not modify the plug provided with the appliance, if it will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.

# **Tip Over Hazard**

- Do not use the dishwasher until completely installed.
- Do not push down on the open dishwasher door.
- Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious injury or cuts.

# **CAUTION STATEMENTS**

# 

• To reduce the risk of minor or moderate injury to persons, malfunction, or damage to the product or property when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

# Installation

- Install the product on a firm and level floor.
- This dishwasher must be connected to a hot water supply with a temperature range between 120 °F (49 °C) and 149 °F (65 °C). This temperature range provides the best washing results and shortest cycle time. The temperature should not exceed 149°F (65 °C) to prevent damage to dishes.
- Do not put the drain hose under the dishwasher during installation.
- Do not turn the dishwasher upside down. Doing so can damage the product.
- · Follow these instructions

a) The power-supply receptacle for the appliance must be installed in a cabinet or on a wall adjacent to the undercounter space in which the appliance is to be installed;

b) There must be an opening through the partition between the compartments specified in (a) that is large enough for the attachment plug to pass through. The longest dimension of the opening must not be more than 38 mm (1.5 in);

c) The edges of the opening specified in (b) must, if the partition is wood, be smooth and rounded, or, if the partition is metal, be covered with an edge protector; and

d) Care must be exercised, when the appliance is installed or removed, to reduce the likelihood of damage to the power-supply cord.

• If the power supply cord, water supply hose, or drain hose is passed through an opening in a metal cabinet, the edges of the opening must be covered by an edge protector to avoid risk of electric shock, leaking, or fire. 1 1/2" (38.1 mm) plastic or rubber wire grommets can be purchased online or at a local hardware store for this purpose. For further details, call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) or 1-888-542-2623 (Canada).

# Operation

- Do not place objects on top of the appliance.
- Turn off the water faucets and unplug the appliance if the appliance is to be left for an extended period of time, such as during vacations.
- Do not store or spill liquid detergents, cleaners, or bleaches (chlorine bleach, oxygen bleach) on the appliance. Doing so may result in corrosion, discoloration or damage to the surface of the appliance.
- Do not touch draining water which may be hot.
- If the drain hose and the water supply hose are frozen in winter, defrost before using the appliance.
- Do not put hands, feet, or metal objects below or behind the appliance.

# Maintenance

• If cooking oil is spilled on the exterior of the product, wipe it off immediately. Do not clean the exterior of the product with cleaners which contain alcohol, thinners, bleach, benzene, flammable liquids, or abrasives. These substances may discolor or damage the appliance.

# **PRODUCT OVERVIEW**

# **Product Features**

The images in this guide may be different from the actual components and accessories, which are subject to change by the manufacturer without prior notice for product improvement purposes.

### NOTE

- For your safety and for extended product life, use only authorized components. The manufacturer is not responsible for product malfunction or accidents caused by the use of separately purchased unauthorized components or parts.
- Do not remove the safety cover at any time.
- To ensure reliability, each LG dishwasher goes through thorough quality control before it leaves the factory.
- You may find water droplets or water spots from this process inside your new dishwasher.



- 1 Control Panel & Door Handle
- 2 Front Cover
- B Lower Cover
- 4 Leveling Feet
- 6 Base
- 6 Safety Cover
- Shipping Brace

**Interior View** 



- 1 Top Wash Impeller
- Opper Spray Arm
- Lower Spray Arm
- 4 Filtration System
- Oetergent and Rinse Aid Dispenser
- Orying Vent Cover
- Lower Rack
- 8 Silverware Basket
- Opper Rack

# Front View

#### NOTE

- The silverware basket ships installed at the back of the bottom rack. For best performance, install it along the right side.
- Remove all packing materials from the exterior and interior of the dishwasher before installing the appliance.
- Press the tab to remove the cable tie by hand. Cutting the tie with a knife or scissors may damage the rack or the silverware basket.



#### Accessories



- Installation Brackets (2 ea)
- Wood Screws (4 ea)
- B Hose Clamp

#### NOTE

• Accessories are inside the silverware basket.

#### **Product Specifications**

The appearance and specifications listed in this manual may vary due to constant product improvements.

Model	LDFC242**
Electrical	120 V, 60 Hz AC only,
Requirements	15 A circuit breaker
Water Pressure	20 psi - 80 psi (140 kPa - 550 kPa)
Dimensions	23 3/4" X 33 5/8" X 24 5/8"
(Width X Height X	(603 mm X 854 mm X 625
Depth)	mm)
Inlet Water	120 ℉ - 149 ℉
Temperature	(49 ℃ - 65 ℃)

Model	LDFC242**
Net Weight	70 lbs. (32 kg)

# INSTALLATION

# **Before Installing**

# **Online Installation Guide**

This QR code is for reference only. For complete installation instructions, see the owner's manual supplied with each dishwasher.

### English



https://www.lg.com/us/support/video-tutorials/lgdishwasher-installation-CT10000009-1366643457088

### French



https://www.lg.com/ca\_fr/soutien/aide-produit/ CT20100059-20152463332979

# **WARNING**

• DISCLAIMER - This Guide is strictly confidential and shall not be copied, disclosed, distributed, disseminated, publicized or reproduced, in whole or in part, without the prior written authorization of LG Electronics.

The Guide may contain inaccuracies and/or typographical errors and may be changed or updated at any time by LGE without notice.

### Parts not Provided





Electrical Cable

- 16 AWG, with 2 conductors and 1 ground
- Water Supply Tube
  - Minimum 3/8" O.D. copper tubing or stainless steel braided water supply line
- Fittings for Tube
- 4 Coupler
- 6 Electrical Tape
- 6 Air Gap
- Wire Nuts for 16-Gauge Wiring
- 8 Hose Clamp
- 3/8" UL Approved Strain Relief

#### NOTE

- Power cord installation kit is available on LG.com, part number AEM75698901 (Model name : D-PC1)
- Inlet hose installation kit is available on LG.com, part number AEM75698902.
- Drain extension hose installation kit is available on LG.com, part number AEM75698903.

# **Tools Needed**







- Flat-Blade Screwdriver
- Phillips Screwdriver
- Hole Saw min. 2 1/2" bit
- 4 Electric Drill
- **6** Gloves
- 6 Safety Glasses
- Adjustable Wrench
- 8 Tape Measure
- Outility Knife
- Level
- 1/4" Square Drive Wrench
- Nipper
- B Pliers
- Wire Stripper
- Tubing Cutter
- **1**/8" Square Drive Wrench + 1/2" Socket

#### **Installation Overview**

Please read the following installation instructions first after purchasing this dishwasher or transporting it to another location.

- Preparing Cabinet Opening
- **2** Preparing Water and Electrical Connections

- Preparing Dishwasher
- Sliding Dishwasher into Cabinet Opening
- **G** Connecting Water Supply Line and Power
- **6** Connecting the Drain Hose
- Leveling Dishwasher
- 8 Securing Dishwasher in Cabinet Opening
- Inal Installation Check

#### **Product Dimensions**

#### **Back View**



#### **Side View**

For easiest installation, see marked areas **①** for water and electrical clearances in base of dishwasher. Water supply hose, drain hose and electric cable should be passed through this area.



# **Preparing Cabinet Opening**

This dishwasher is designed to fit a standard dishwasher opening. An opening may be needed on both sides to route plumbing and electrical connections.

- To ensure proper drainage, install the dishwasher no more than 12 ft. (3.65 m) from the sink.
- The location must have sufficient space for the dishwasher door to open easily and provide at least 0.1" (2 mm) between the dishwasher and the cabinet sides.
- If installing the dishwasher in a corner, leave a minimum of 2" (50 mm) between the dishwasher and the adjacent wall.
- The adjacent wall must be free of obstructions.
- For flush installations only, you may remove the cabinet brace **1** inside the cabinet.



# **Choosing the Proper Location**

1 Select a location as close to the sink as possible for easy connections to water supply line, drain hose and electrical connection.



2 To allow for proper clearance of plumbing and electrical, use the template included with the literature to determine the clearance on the side of the cabinet where the cabinet meets the back wall. Using a 2 1/2" diameter hole saw, drill a hole in the target area as shown on the template.



# 

- The opening must be at least 2 1/2" (63.5 mm) in diameter to prevent damage to the cables and hoses during installation.
- Installation damage is not covered by the warranty, and leaks caused by improper installation may result in property damage.
- Do not use existing holes unless they are in the target area.
- Failure to properly locate the hole for the water and drain lines may prevent the dishwasher from installing flush with the cabinets and could result in kinked, pinched, crushed, stressed or damaged lines.



# Preparing Water and Electrical Connections

# 🛕 WARNING

- Water Connection
  - Do not reuse an old hose. Use only a new hose when installing the dishwasher. The old hose could leak or burst causing flooding and property damage. Contact an LG Customer Information Center for assistance in buying a new hose.
- Electrical Connection
  - Use a time-delay fuse or circuit breaker.
  - Operate this appliance with the correct voltage as shown in this manual and on the rating plate.
  - The wiring must be grounded properly. If in doubt, have it checked by a qualified electrician.

- Connect the appliance using 3-wires, including a ground wire.
- The appliance and outlet must be positioned so that the plug is easily accessible.
- Do not use an extension cable or adapter with this dishwasher.
- Do not overload the outlet with more than one appliance.
- The included 16AWG wire nuts should be used.
- It is the personal responsibility and obligation of the product owner to have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.

# 

- When connecting the dishwasher water supply line to the house water supply, sealing tape or compound should be used on pipe threads to avoid leaks. Tape or compound should not be used on compression fittings.
- Connect the dishwasher to a hot water supply with a temperature range between 120 °F (49 °C) and 149 °F (65 °C). This temperature range provides the best washing results and shortest cycle time. To prevent damage to dishes, the temperature should not exceed 149 °F (65 °C).
- Water supply pressure must be between 20 psi and 80 psi (140–550 kPa). If the water supply pressure exceeds 80 psi, a pressure reducing valve must be installed. Otherwise premature failure of the inlet valve may occur.

# Routing Water Supply Line and Electrical Wiring

There are 2 channels in the bottom of the dishwasher for routing the water and electrical connections.

 As shown in the bottom view below, channel is for the water supply line, and channel is for the electrical cable.



1 Turn off the house water supply and the circuit breaker or dedicated power before connecting the dishwasher.

- 2 Run the water supply line along the floor 6 1/ 2" – 7 3/4" (165 mm – 197 mm) from the left side of the opening and tape it in place in front of the opening.
- Run the electrical cable ③ along the floor 14"
   16" (356 mm 406 mm) from the water supply line ④ and tape it in place.
  - The electrical outlet must be within 4 ft. (1.22 m) of either side of the dishwasher.
  - The best location for the electrical conduit is on the right side of the back wall. Re-route the electrical cable before installation if the electrical conduit pipe is longer than 3" (76 mm) and is centered on the back wall.



# **Preparing Dishwasher**

#### **WARNING**

• Do not remove safety cover **1**. Removal can result in fire, electric shock or death.



# **Releasing Drain Hose**

Remove the twist tie holding the drain hose to the back of the shipping brace.



# **Removable Shipping Brace**

The rear shipping brace can be removed if additional clearance is needed when installing the dishwasher under a low countertop.



# **Removing Lower Cover**

# 

- If you lay the dishwasher on its back, do so carefully to avoid damaging the drain hose and the tub.
- **1** Remove the screws at either side which attach the lower cover to the dishwasher.



- **2** Remove the lower cover.
- **3** If there is insulation padding behind the lower cover, remove it.
- **4** Set the parts aside until the installation is complete.

# Removing Packing Materials from the Interior

Remove all packing materials from the interior of the dishwasher before installing the appliance.

# **Attaching Installation Brackets**

For countertops made of wood or other materials that will not be damaged by drilling, use the metal installation brackets provided.

For countertops made of granite, marble, or other materials that could be damaged by drilling, use the wood screws to attach the dishwasher to the cabinet. See installation instructions in **Securing Dishwasher to Cabinet Opening**.

#### NOTE

- Installation brackets and screws can be found in the silverware basket.
- 1 Insert the tabbed end of the installation brackets into the slots in the upper frame. Rotate the brackets until the tabbed ends are facing up.



**2** Bend the tabs on the brackets to secure them to the frame using a pair of needle nose pliers.



# Sliding Dishwasher into Cabinet Opening

How to Slide Dishwasher

# 

 Do not pull or lift the dishwasher using the handle ①. Doing so can damage the door and hinges.



• Do not push the door of the dishwasher with knees when sliding the dishwasher into position. Doing so can damage the front cover.



• Do not push the top of the dishwasher. Doing so can damage the interior of the dishwasher.



### NOTE

 Open the door and grab the body frame and the top front opening ② of the tub to move or lift the dishwasher.



**1** Align the dishwasher with the opening. Make sure the water supply line and electrical cable are in the correct positions to slide into their channels properly.



**2** Smooth out or pad the edges of the hole drilled for the water supply to avoid damaging the drain hose.



3 Make sure the drain hose is straight before feeding the end of it through the hole for the water supply. As you slide the dishwasher into the opening, you will want to slowly pull on the drain hose from inside the cabinet to take up some slack. Be careful not to kink, pinch, crush or stress the drain hose during installation to avoid leaking and water damage.



**4** Gradually slide the dishwasher into the opening, making sure that the water supply line and electrical cable are passing freely through the channels and do not get caught under the dishwasher.

# 

- To avoid malfunctions or leakage, it is important that the drain hose not get kinked, pinched, stressed or crushed behind or under the dishwasher or inside the neighboring cabinet.
- Damage resulting from improper installation is not covered under the warranty.
  - As you slide the dishwasher into the opening, stop periodically (or have an assistant help) to take up the slack by pulling the drain hose farther into the cabinet.



**5** Remove the tape from the water supply line and the electrical cable.



# Connecting Water Supply Line and Power

# 

• Do not turn the dishwasher upside down to connect the water supply line or electrical supply. Doing so can damage the product.

# **Connecting Water Supply Line**

1 With the home water supply turned off, connect the water supply line to the inlet valve on the left front of the dishwasher.

# 

- Tape or compound should not be used on dishwasher inlet valve.
- **2** Tighten the compression nut.



**3** Slide the water supply line back through the channel, pulling gently from inside the cabinet to make sure the line is not kinked, pinched, stressed or crushed.

# **Connecting Power**

The dishwasher should have a dedicated properly grounded branch circuit to connect the 3 wire setup which includes the ground wire.

If a 3-prong power supply is used, it should be in an accessible location adjacent to the dishwasher

within 4 ft. (1.22 m) of the dishwasher side and not behind the dishwasher.



#### NOTE

- The best location for the electrical conduit is on the right side of the back wall. Re-route the electrical cable before installation if the electrical conduit pipe is longer than 3" (76 mm) and is centered on the back wall.
- **1** Turn off electrical power to the unit at the circuit breaker.
- **2** Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the screw from the junction box cover and remove the cover.



3 Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove 2 screws0.



**4** Remove the junction box from the appliance.



Insert a 3/8" strain relief **2** through the hole in the junction box. Tighten the ring nut **3** to secure it in place.

5



6 Insert the electrical cable through the hole in the strain relief. Tighten 2 screws to secure the cable.



Pull the existing wires through the openings in the junction box. Tighten 2 screws 4 to reassemble the junction box in the appliance.



8 Pair the white, black, and green wires to the matching colored wires from the dishwasher. Then twist on the provided wire nuts **5** tightly to connect the corresponding wires.



**9** Wrap electrical tape **6** around each connection.



**10** Fold the connected wires back into the junction box and screw on the junction box cover.

### 🛕 WARNING

• Verify that the black wire is hot (120 V). If not, or if you are unsure of the power supply, have it checked by a licensed electrician.

# 

• Do not leave stripped wire exposed. Trim stripped wire to fit completely inside wire nuts.

# **Connecting the Drain Hose**

If the end of the drain hose does not fit the drain line, use a heat and detergent resistant adapter (not supplied). These may be obtained from a local plumbing supply store. • Cut the adapter to match the size of the drain connection as shown. Cutting just beyond the flare helps to keep the band clamp in place.



#### NOTE

- For drain hose installation, use the screw style hose clamp provided with this dishwasher in the silverware basket.
- If connecting the dishwasher's drain hose to the garbage disposal, be sure to follow your garbage disposal's manual for proper installation instructions.

#### **Drain Hose Requirements**

- Follow local codes and ordinances.
- Do not exceed 12 ft. (3.65 m) distance to drain.
- Do not connect drain hoses from other appliances to the dishwasher's drain hose.
- If an extension drain hose is required, use a 5/8" or 7/8" inside diameter, 2-3 ft. length hose and a coupler **1** for connecting the two hose ends.



#### Height of the Drain Hose

The height of the drain hose end must be at least 12" (305 mm) and within 40" (1016 mm) from the base of the dishwasher to avoid water being siphoned from the tub.



#### Connecting to Disposal without Air Gap

**1** Remove the knockout plug on the disposal with a hammer and screwdriver.



**2** Remove the knockout plug **1** from the disposal.

### 

• If the knockout plug has not been removed, the dishwasher will not be able to drain properly.



**3** Attach the drain hose to the disposal with the hose clamp provided. Move the hose clamp into position and tighten it with a flat-blade screwdriver.



#### Connecting Waste Tee without Air Gap

The height of the drain hose end must be at least 12" (305 mm) and within 40" (1016 mm) from the base of the dishwasher to avoid water being siphoned from the tub.

**1** Remove the knockout plug with a hammer and screwdriver.

### 

• If the knockout plug has not been removed, the dishwasher will not be able to drain properly.



**2** Attach the drain hose to the waste tee with the hose clamp provided. Move the clamp into position and tighten it with a flat-blade screwdriver.



#### Connecting to Disposal or Waste Tee with Air Gap

- **1** Remove the knockout plug with a hammer and screwdriver.
- 2 Connect the end of the drain hose ① to the air gap ② with the hose clamp provided. Move the clamp into position and tighten it with a flat-blade screwdriver.
  - This avoids water being siphoned from the tub.



ENGLISH

**3** If it is not connected, attach the rubber hose connector to the disposal or waste tee with a hose clamp (not provided).

# **Leveling Dishwasher**

Check that the dishwasher is level and adjust the leveling feet if necessary.

# 

- Failure to level the dishwasher may result in leakage, problems closing the door, or noise.
- Where the cabinet opening is narrower than recommended (see **Preparing Cabinet Opening**), the dishwasher must be carefully leveled and aligned so that the dishwasher is supported fully by the 3 leveling feet and is not hanging from the installation brackets. Failure to do so can result in leaks from the front of the dishwasher, RE errors, difficulty in closing the door, or failure to operate.

# **Checking Leveling**

To check that the tub is level from front to back, remove the lower rack and pour 169 oz. (5 L) of water into the bottom of the tub. The water level should be near the center of both tub lower indentations at the front.



With the lower rack removed, place a level on the inside wall of the tub to check that the dishwasher is level from side to side.

• If you do not have a level, try using a smartphone level application instead.



Make sure that the gap between the tub walls and the door liner is the same on either side.



# **Adjusting Leveling Feet**

Adjust as needed until the dishwasher is completely leveled.

• Adjust the front and rear leveling feet until they are all in firm contact with the floor. Failure to level the dishwasher may prevent the door from closing properly and the dishwasher will not turn on.

### **Adjusting Front Leveling Feet**

Use a flat-blade screwdriver to turn the front leveling feet and adjust the front of the tub.

• Turn the front leveling feet clockwise to raise the front of the tub and counterclockwise to lower it.



- The adjustments work identically for both front leveling feet.
- When a flat-blade screwdriver is unavailable, use a 1/4" square drive wrench ① or 3/8" square

drive wrench **2** with 1/2" socket **3** to turn the front leveling feet and adjust the front of the tub.



#### **Adjusting Rear Leveling Foot**

Use a Phillips screwdriver to adjust the rear leveling foot and the rear of the tub using the center screw at the base of the appliance in the front.

• Turn the center screw clockwise to raise the rear of the tub and counterclockwise to lower it.



#### NOTE

• To avoid damaging the screw, do not use an electric screwdriver.

# Securing Dishwasher in Cabinet Opening

There are 2 options for securing the dishwasher. If the countertop is made of wood or a material that can safely be drilled into, secure the dishwasher to the countertop with the provided brackets. If the countertop is granite, marble, or a material that cannot be drilled into, secure the dishwasher to the cabinet frame with the provided wood screws.

### 

• Ensure the dishwasher is level and all leveling feet are in firm contact with the floor before attaching the dishwasher to the countertop or cabinet. If the dishwasher is not leveled properly, the door may not close properly or water may leak.

#### ΝΟΤΕ

- Installation brackets and screws can be found in the silverware basket.
- Use a magnetic screwdriver.
- Cover the filter hole with towels to prevent screws from falling down into the pump.

# Securing Dishwasher to Countertop

Use the bracket screws provided to secure the brackets at the top of the dishwasher to the underside of the wood countertop.



#### **Securing Dishwasher to Cabinet Frame**

If desired, the dishwasher can also be secured to the cabinet frame using the instructions which follow.

**1** Remove the 2 plastic caps from the mounting bracket access holes.



**2** Drive a wood screw through the mounting bracket and into the cabinet frame.



**3** Reinstall the plastic caps.

# **Final Installation Check**

### Testing the Dishwasher

Check if the dishwasher is properly installed.

- **1** Turn on the circuit breaker.
- **2** Turn on the house water supply.
- **3** Make sure that the door opens and closes smoothly.
  - If necessary, level the dishwasher again.
  - If the door will not close, make sure the rack is level.



- Make sure that all packaging materials have been removed.
- **4** Power on the dishwasher and run a **Turbo** cycle to verify proper operation.
- **5** Check for leaks at the drain hose and water supply connection.
- 6 If a water leak is detected, press and hold the **Start** button for 3 seconds to cancel the wash cycle and automatically drain the water from the dishwasher. Tighten all water connections and run another cycle. Repeat until no leaks are detected.

**7** Replace the lower cover.

#### **A** CAUTION

 Only install the lower cover provided with the dishwasher. Do not install cabinet baseboard ① as it may cause noise and leakage.



8 Remove the protective film from the door, if present. Leaving the film on may cause discoloration or condensation on the door.

# **Installation Check Error Codes**

Refer to the chart below before calling for service.

Error Code	Possible Cause and Solution
OE	Drain hose is kinked or pinched.
	<ul> <li>Feed the drain and water supply hoses through the hole under the sink. Then gradually slide the dishwasher into the cabinet while pulling on the hoses under the sink to take up any slack. This helps avoid kinking the hoses or trapping them beneath the dishwasher.</li> <li>Drain hose is connected to the disposal without removing the knockout plug.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Remove the knockout plug from the disposal.</li> <li>Waste tee or disposal is clogged.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Remove knockout plug on the waste tee or disposal.</li> </ul>

Error Code	Possible Cause and Solution
ΙE	Water supply line is kinked under dishwasher.
	<ul> <li>Feed the drain and water supply hoses through the hole under the sink. Then gradually slide the dishwasher into the cabinet while pulling on the hoses under the sink to take up any slack. This helps avoid kinking the hoses or trapping them beneath the dishwasher.</li> <li>House water supply is not turned on.</li> <li>Turn the water faucet on.</li> </ul>

# **OPERATION**

# **Before Using**

#### 🛕 WARNING

• To reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons, read the **SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS** before operating this appliance.

#### NOTE

- Connect to the hot water supply only. The water supply temperature should be a minimum of 120 °F (49 °C) for better washing performance and shorter cycle time.
- Follow the instructions for loading the dishwasher to ensure effective cleaning.
- Remove insoluble items such as bones, toothpicks, and pieces of paper while loading the dishwasher.

#### **Quick Start**

- 1) Load the dishes.
- 2) Add the detergent.
- 3) Turn on the dishwasher.
- 4) Check the rinse aid.
- 5) Select the cycle and options.
- 6) Operate the dishwasher.
  - ・Method 1
    - Press the **Start** button and then close the door in less than four seconds to operate the dishwasher. If the door is not closed within four seconds, the white LED with time flashes, an audible tone is heard, and the cycle does not start.
  - Method 2
    - Close the door first and then press the **Start** button to operate the dishwasher.

#### NOTE

- If the door is opened during the cycle, the dishwasher will stop. To resume the cycle, see methods 1 and 2 above.
- If the door is opened during the cycle and is not closed within four seconds after selecting the Start button, or if the door is closed without pressing the Start button, the white LED with time flashes, an audible tone is heard, and the cycle does not start.
- 7) End of cycle.
  - When the cycle is complete, a chime will sound and the display will show End until the door is opened or **Power** is pressed. To save energy, press and hold **Extra Dry** and **Night Dry** simultaneously for three seconds to set

the  $\mathsf{End}$  display to automatically turn off a few minutes after the cycle ends.

• It is normal for the dishwasher to chime continuously if you open it during operation or just after the cycle ends. The dishwasher is letting you know that the interior temperatures of the unit are hot and to use caution when reaching inside. Once the unit has cooled down, the chiming will stop.

For more details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# 

• Do not open the door during operation or immediately after it has completed the wash cycle as the escaping steam may cause scalding as the door is opened.

#### Auto-Off

The dishwasher automatically turns off after four minutes of inactivity if paused or if no cycle is started.

# **Control Panel**

#### **Control Panel Features**



#### Power On/Off Button

- Press this button to turn the washer on or off.
- If there is a power surge, power outage, or disruption of any kind, power is automatically turned off for safety.
- When power is connected again, the dishwasher will turn on automatically and resume the cycle.

#### NOTE

• When opening or closing the product door, keep fingers and hands away from the control panel to avoid activating buttons.

#### Display

- Rinse Aid
  - This LED illuminates when the rinse aid level is low. The LED automatically shuts off when the rinse aid is refilled or the level is set to 0.
  - Refer to the Rinse Aid Dispenser Adjustment section.
- 8:88 : Digital Display
  - The digital display on the control panel shows the ESTIMATED cycle time. When the cycle and options are selected, the display shows the total estimated time to complete those selections. During operation, the display shows the remaining estimated operating time.

#### NOTE

- The estimated time shown on the display does not include delay times for heating water, etc.
- If **Delay Start** is selected, the display shows the delay time in hours.
- Cycle time may vary depending on the soil level of your load.

#### • Ctrl. Lock, 🗄 : Control Lock

- The **Control Lock** feature helps prevent settings from being changed during a cycle. Selecting this feature locks all of the buttons, except for the **Power** button, on the control panel. This feature does not lock the door.
- While a cycle is running, press and hold **Flex Zone** and **High Temp.** simultaneously for three seconds to activate or deactivate **Control Lock**.
- To start a new cycle, deactivate Control Lock.
- ・ Tub Clean
  - The **Tub Clean** LED flashes every 30 cycles. To activate or deactivate the LED, press and hold the **Cycles** and **High Temp.** buttons for three seconds.
  - Select the Auto cycle and follow the instructions in the Maintenance section to clean the tub.
- Sanitized
  - If the **High Temp.** option is added to a cycle, the **Sanitized** LED stays lit at the end of the cycle if the dishes were properly sanitized.

#### Chime On/Off Button

• To activate or deactivate the button sounds, press and hold **Cycles** and **Flex Zone** simultaneously for three seconds. The error alert sound cannot be turned off.

#### 4 Tub Clean Reminder On/Off Button

To activate or deactivate the Tub Clean Reminder, press and hold Cycles and High Temp.
 simultaneously for three seconds. Please refer to the Tub Clean LED description under Display 2.

#### **G** End Notification On/Off Button

• To activate or deactivate the End Notification, press and hold **Extra Dry** and **Night Dry** simultaneously for three seconds. Turn the notification ON to display End at the end of the cycle until you press **Power** or open the door. Turn the notification OFF to turn the machine off 30 seconds after the end of the cycle.

#### G Cancel Button

- The drain pump activates and the cycle cancels. Once the dishwasher finishes draining, the power turns off.
- Press and hold **Start** for three seconds to activate.

#### Start Button

- To operate the machine, either press **Start** and close the door within four seconds or close the door and press **Start**.
- If more than 4 seconds have passed since pressing **Start**, an alarm will sound when the door is closed.

# Wash Cycles

Select your desired cycle.

### **Selecting the Cycle**

The default cycle is **Auto**. You can also customize these settings using the **Cycles** button.

• Press the **Cycles** button repeatedly to select the **Normal**, **Heavy**, or **Turbo** cycle.

#### Auto

This cycle senses the soil amount and soil toughness and is optimized to achieve the best cleaning.

#### Normal

This cycle is for daily, regular, or typical use to completely wash a full load of normally soiled dishes. The energy usage label is based on this cycle without any options. Select the **Night Dry** option if leaving dishes overnight.

• After the cycle ends, the fan runs for an hour to help vent the warm, moist air in the tub. You can stop the fan by opening the door after the cycle ends.

#### Heavy

This cycle is for heavily soiled dishes and dishes with hardened on soil. This cycle defaults to the strongest spray intensity and uses it to wash heavily soiled dishes.

#### Turbo

This cycle will clean heavily soiled dishes in an hour using slightly more energy and water.

 This cycle does not have drying. Select the Extra Dry and Night Dry option or another cycle for better drying.

# **Options and Extra Functions**

Select the desired cycle and then select the options for that cycle.

### Using the Flexible Zone

This option adjusts the wash intensity to target different zones inside the dishwasher. Set it to wash just the upper rack or lower rack, or set the intensity to soft for the upper spray arm and strong for the lower spray arm.

# The **Flex Zone** is off by default. Press the **Flex Zone** button to customize settings.

• Press the **Flex Zone** button repeatedly to select the 4 modes for cleaning the dishes.

Mode	Description
	Small loads & light soil
	<ul> <li>Use just the upper rack to save energy and time.</li> </ul>
_	Small loads & heavy soil
	<ul> <li>Use just the lower rack to save energy and time.</li> </ul>
	Small loads & heavy soil & light/sensitive dishes
Flex	<ul> <li>Focus on lower rack, but also operate lightly to wash some light or sensitive dishes in the upper rack.</li> </ul>
	Various conditions
Flex	<ul> <li>Place heavily soiled dishes like plates and bowls in the lower rack and lightly soiled dishes like cups and small plates in the upper rack to get the best results.</li> </ul>

# High Temp.

Raises the main wash temperature to improve cleaning.

If the **High Temp.** option is added to a cycle, the **Sanitized** LED stays lit at the end of the cycle if the dishes were properly sanitized. If the dishwasher could not properly sanitize the dishes because the **High Temp.** option was not selected, the cycle was interrupted or the water could not be heated to the required temperature, the indicator will not light up at the end of the cycle. Open and close the door or press **POWER** to turn the indicator off.

#### NOTE

• This high temperature rinse sanitizes dishes and glassware in accordance with the NSF/ANSI Standard 184 for residential dishwashers. Certified residential dishwashers are not intended for use in licensed food establishments. Only sanitizing cycles have been designed to meet the requirements for soil removal and sanitization efficacy. There is no intention, either directly or indirectly, that all cycles on a certified machine have passed the sanitization performance test.

# Extra Dry

Select the **Extra Dry** option for better drying performance. This option adds extra drying time to the cycle and raises the heated rinse temperature.

• When the rinse aid is empty, the **Extra Dry** option is selected automatically.

# Night Dry

Dishes are often left in the dishwasher overnight after the cycle ends. This can result in the steam inside the tub condensing on dishes, leaving them wet. This option runs the ventilation fan periodically to help vent the steam from the tub.

• The **Night Dry** option is selected by default for all cycles for which it is available, except the **Normal** cycle.

# Delay Start

This feature delays the start of a selected cycle. Each time the **Delay Start** button is pressed, the delay time increases by an hour. The delay time can be set from 1 to 12 hours, in one-hour increments.

# Cycle/Option Guide

The cycle guide shows the available options for each cycle.

To see the Cycle/Option Guide, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Loading the Dishwasher

For effective washing performance, always follow these instructions.

- Remove large particles of food debris from plates including bones before loading.
- Items with burnt on food should be soaked prior to loading in the dishwasher.
- Deep pots or dishes should be placed upside down.
- Make sure that all items do not touch each other.



### Non-Dishwasher Safe Items

The combination of high water temperature and dishwasher detergents may damage certain items. Do not wash the following items in the dishwasher.

- Copper or anodized aluminum
- Hand painted silver or gold leaf china
- Wood or bone handled utensils
- Iron or non-rustproof utensils
- Plastic items which are not dishwasher safe
- Sterling silver or gold-plated flatware or delicate or metal-rimmed china
- Fragile items such as crystal glasses

# 

- Do not place pots or pans with plastic handles in the appliance as the handles may deteriorate due to the heat and detergent.
- Waterproof or long-lasting lipstick smudges on glasses may not be removed during the wash.

# Loading the Silverware Basket

The silverware basket has separators to avoid scratching and tarnishing of delicate silverware.

Loading Silverware into the Basket

### Loading 10 Place Settings



#### Loading 12 Place Settings



### Silverware Loading Tips:

- For best cleaning results, use the top separators in the basket when loading silverware. The separators will prevent nesting of silverware.
- Load sharp items, such as knives, pointing down.
- When unloading the dishwasher, it is best to start with the silverware basket. Doing so will prevent water droplets from falling on your silverware from the upper rack.

#### 🛕 WARNING

• Be careful when loading and unloading sharp items. Load sharp knives with the handles up to reduce the risk of personal injury.

# Loading the Lower Rack

Loading Dishes into the Lower Rack

### Loading 10 Place Settings



#### Loading 12 Place Settings



# Lower Rack Loading Tips:

For details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Folding Down the Lower Tines

Fold tines down to fit larger dishes; pull tines back up to fit smaller dishes.

For more details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Loading the Upper Rack

### Loading Dishes into the Upper Rack

### Loading 10 Place Settings



#### Loading 12 Place Settings



# Upper Rack Loading Tips:

For details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Folding Down the Upper Tines

Fold tines down to fit larger dishes; pull tines back up to fit smaller dishes.

For more details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Height Adjustable Upper Rack

To accommodate larger items, the upper rack can be adjusted up or down using the buttons on the left and right sides. The dishwasher ships with the upper rack raised.

For more details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# 🛕 WARNING

• Before adjusting, ensure the rack is empty of all dishes. Otherwise dishes may get damaged or you may get injured.

# **Adding Cleaning Products**

### Adding Detergent to the Dispenser

- Remove the label on the dispenser prior to running the dishwasher for the first time.
- The amount of detergent needed depends on the cycle, load size, and soil level of dishes.
- Put detergent into the detergent compartment before starting any cycle, except the **Rinse** cycle.

#### 🛕 WARNING

• Dishwasher detergent and rinse aid contain chemical components, like all other household detergent. So, they must be kept out of the reach of children.

# 

- Use only detergent intended for dishwashers. Incorrect detergent may cause the dishwasher to fill with suds during operation. Excess suds may reduce wash performance and may cause the dishwasher to leak.
- To avoid damaging the dispenser, do not pull up on the dispenser to close the dishwasher door.



For more details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Adding Rinse Aid to the Dispenser

The **Rinse Aid** LED appears in the display when more rinse aid is needed.

The use of rinse aid is recommended to prevent water spots on dishes and to enhance drying performance.

For more details, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Rinse Aid Dispenser Adjustment

The dispenser has five adjustment levels. The dishwasher is programmed at the factory for a rinse aid dispenser level of 2. This can be checked and adjusted from the control panel.

#### NOTE

- Adjust the setting higher if you have hard water and notice calcium buildup on your dishes.
- Setting the rinse aid control too low will contribute to spotting and streaking on dishes and poor drying performance.

- Setting the control too high can cause foaming, which will cause poor wash performance.
- **1** Ensure the appliance is off.
- 2 Press **Power** and **Delay Start** simultaneously to check the current setting.
- **3** Press **Delay Start** to change the rinse aid dispenser setting. Each press of the button changes the setting one step from L0 to L4.
- **4** Once the desired rinse aid dispenser setting is selected, press **Start** to save.

# **Refilling the Rinse Aid**

How often the dispenser needs to be refilled depends on how often dishes are washed and the rinse aid setting used.

• The **Rinse Aid** LED flashes when more rinse aid is needed, unless the rinse aid dispenser setting is set to L0.

# **SMART FUNCTIONS**

# LG ThinQ Application

The **LG ThinQ** application allows you to communicate with the appliance using a smartphone.

#### **LG ThinQ Application Features**

#### • Smart Diagnosis

- This function provides useful information for diagnosing and solving issues with the appliance based on the pattern of use. Select **Smart Diagnosis** in the app and follow the instructions. For additional information, refer to the online owner's manual.

# Installing the LG ThinQ Application

Search for the **LG ThinQ** application from the Google Play Store or Apple App Store on a smartphone. Follow instructions to download and install the application.

# MAINTENANCE

To maintain performance and prevent trouble, it is important to check the outside and inside of the dishwasher, including filters and spray arms, at regular intervals.

# MARNING

- When cleaning the outside and inside of the dishwasher, do not use benzene or thinner. Otherwise, it may cause fire or explosion.
- To prevent injury during care and maintenance or cleaning, wear gloves and/or protective clothing.

# **Cleaning and Care**

# **Cleaning the Exterior**

- Do not use scrub pads or abrasive cleaners on the exterior of the dishwasher.
- Most soil can be removed using a soft, damp cloth or sponge. A mild soap can be used to help release stubborn soil. Rinse and wipe dry with a soft cloth after cleaning.
- Stainless steel surfaces can be polished using a stainless steel cleaner. Follow the instructions on the cleaner, and wipe in the direction of the grain.

# 

• If cooking oil is spilled on the exterior of the product, wipe it off immediately. Do not clean the exterior of the product with cleaners which contain alcohol, thinners, bleach, benzene, flammable liquids, or abrasives. These substances may discolor or damage the appliance.

# **Cleaning the Interior**

- Clean the interior of the dishwasher periodically with a soft, damp cloth or sponge to remove food and dirt particles.
- To remove white spots and odor from inside the dishwasher, run an empty cycle, without detergent, with one cup of white vinegar in a dishwasher safe glass or bowl placed on the upper rack. (Vinegar is an acid and with constant use it could damage the appliance.)
- Cleaning the Tub

1

- Run the **Auto** cycle once a month or after every 30 cycles to eliminate residual soil, odor, white spots and other dirt inside the appliance.
  - Remove all dishes from the appliance.

- **2** Add 3 tbsp. (40 g) of citric acid to the detergent dispenser or follow the manufacturer's instructions if using a dishwasher cleaning agent. Do not use dishwasher detergent.
- **3** Press **Cycles** to select the **Auto** cycle.
- 4 Press Start.

#### ΝΟΤΕ

- Run the **Auto** cycle once a month, or more often if needed, to remove detergent buildup and other residue.
- If you have not used the dishwasher for a long time, refresh the inside by running the **Auto** cycle without detergent. When the cycle is finished, clean the inside and outside of the dishwasher according to the **MAINTENANCE** instructions.

### Clogged Drain Air Gap or In-Sink Disposal

Check the drain air gap or in-sink disposal if the dishwasher is not draining well.

#### NOTE

- The drain air gap and disposal are external plumbing devices that are not part of the dishwasher.
- The warranty provided with the dishwasher does not cover service costs directly associated with the cleaning or repair of the external drain air gap and disposal.

#### **Cleaning the Air Gap**

- **1** Turn off the dishwasher.
- **2** Remove the air gap cover and the plastic cap underneath it.



**3** Clean out any debris with a toothpick or brush.



**4** Replace the plastic cap and air gap cover.



# **Cleaning the Filters**

#### 🛕 WARNING

• Be cautious of sharp edges when handling the stainless steel filter.

# 

• Remove food residue caught in filters to prevent the buildup of odor-causing bacteria and possible drainage problems.

#### NOTE

- For best wash performance, clean the filter after each load. If food debris remains in the filter, it may cause an odor.
- In areas with hard water, clean the filter at least once a month with a soft brush.

- Clean the filters using non-abrasive materials and warm running water.
- 1 Remove the lower rack and position the bottom spray arm so a wider vee is open to the front.
- 2 Turn the inner filter counter-clockwise and take out the assembled inner filter and stainless steel filter. With the filters removed, check the sump opening and remove any foreign materials, if needed.



**3** Clean the filters with a soft brush under running water. Reassemble the filters before reinstalling them.



**4** To replace the assembled filters, position the spray arm so the wider vee is toward the front. Fit the filters back into the filter holder and secure them by turning the inner filter clockwise until it clicks into place.



#### NOTE

• Make sure the filter is assembled correctly before starting a cycle. When assembling, rotate the filter firmly until it clicks.



#### Recommended Filter Cleaning Schedule

Number of Loads Per Week	If you wash dishes before loading	If you scrape and rinse dishes before loading
1 - 3	Every 6 months	
4 - 7		Once a year
8 - 12		Even 6 months
13 - 14		Every 6 months

Number of Loads Per Week	If you only scrape dishes before loading	If you do not scrape or rinse dishes before loading
1 - 3	Four times a year	Once a month
4 - 7		Twice a month(every 15 days)
8 - 12	Every 1.5 months	Every week
13 - 14		Twice a week

# **Cleaning the Spray Arm**

If the spray arm holes are blocked by any food residue, dishes may not be cleaned well due to improper water spray.

It is recommended that the spray arms be cleaned once every two weeks.

# Cleaning the Lower Spray Arm

**1** Make sure that the water jet holes are not blocked by food particles.

- **2** When cleaning is necessary, remove the lower spray arm by pulling up.
- **3** Remove food particles by rinsing or shaking the spray arm.
- **4** After cleaning the lower spray arm, replace it by pushing down until it clips into place. Be sure that the spray arm is able to turn freely.



### **Cleaning the Upper Spray Arm**

- 1 Pull the upper rack forward. Make sure that the water jet holes are not blocked by food particles.
- 2 When cleaning is necessary, remove the upper spray arm by turning the nut on the bottom of the spray arm 1/8 turn counter-clockwise and pulling down.



- **3** Remove food particles by rinsing or shaking the spray arm.
- **4** If any food residue blocks the spray arm holes, remove it with a pin or any sharp tool.



- **5** After removing the food residue, clean the spray arms under running water.
- 6 After cleaning the upper spray arm, press it up into place. Turn the nut 1/8 turn clockwise to make sure that the nut locks back into place.



**7** After assembly, make sure that the spray arms rotate freely.

#### **Seasonal Maintenance and Storage**

- If you will be absent for an extended period of time during warmer months, close the water valve and disconnect the power supply line, or turn off the circuit breaker. Clean the filter, tub and dispenser to prevent odor.
- If you will be absent for an extended period of time during colder months and there is a possibility of freezing temperatures, winterize the water supply lines and the dishwasher itself. Winterization must be performed by qualified service personnel.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

The washer is equipped with an automatic error-monitoring system to detect and diagnose problems at an early stage. If the washer does not function properly or does not function at all, check the following before you call for service.

# **Before Calling for Service**

For more troubleshooting, refer to the online owner's manual.

#### **User Support Videos**

For further assistance, there are videos and tutorials available through the LG.com website.

- 1 On the <u>www.lg.com</u> home page, click on the **Support** menu tab to bring up the menu selections. Select **Video Tutorials**.
- **2** Select a product category and then pick a topic or search a keyword.

#### NOTE

• Scan this QR code to quickly access the video search page on the LG website.



#### **Error Messages**

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
I E	Water inlet problem.	
	Check for a clogged, kinked or frozen water inlet hose.	
	Check water supply.	
OE	Drainage Problem.	
	Check for a clogged, kinked or frozen water drain hose.	
	Air gap or disposal is clogged.	
	• Clean air gap or disposal.	
	Filters are clogged.	
	• Clean filters.	
Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
---------------------	---	--
ьЕ	Oversudsing caused by improper detergent, such as liquid dish soap.	
	<ul> <li>Do not use hand dishwashing liquids. Only use detergents which are designed for use in automatic dishwashers.</li> </ul>	
	• A bE error can appear if dishes soiled with a lot of foamy food, such as whipped cream, are loaded in the appliance. To clear the error, turn the appliance off and start a new cycle.	
	• To remove detergent residue in the tub, pour approximately 4 oz ~ 8 oz (100 ml ~ 200 ml) of milk into a shallow bowl, place it in the upper rack and then run the appliance on the <b>Auto</b> cycle.	
	Failure to level dishwasher.	
	Make sure that the appliance is properly leveled.	
AE	Water leakage	
	• Turn off the water supply to the dishwasher and call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) or 1-888-542-2623 (Canada).	
	• The dishwasher makes an alert sound for 10 seconds, and runs the drain pump intermittently. If power is turned off to the machine, the machine powers back on automatically until the AE error is resolved.	
FE	Excessive Water supplied.	
	Please call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) 1- 888-542-2623 (Canada).	
HE	Heater circuit failure.	
	Please call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) 1- 888-542-2623 (Canada).	
ЕE	Water temperature sensor error	
	Please call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) 1- 888-542-2623 (Canada).	
LE	Wash motor error	
	Please call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) 1- 888-542-2623 (Canada).	
nE	Vario motor error	
	Please call an LG Electronics Customer Information Center at 1-800-243-0000 (U.S.A.) 1- 888-542-2623 (Canada).	
n:#, U:#, d:#, L#	Test mode is selected.	
(# is a number.)	• This is not an error code. This code is used when testing the dishwasher. Power the unit off and on and the code will disappear.	
LO, L I, L2, L3, L4	Rinse aid level setting mode is selected.	
	<ul> <li>This is not an error code. This code indicates the current rinse aid level. For more information, refer to the Adding Cleaning Products section.</li> </ul>	
CL	Control Lock is activated.	
	• This is not an error code. This code indicates that the control lock is activated. Press and hold <b>Flex Zone</b> and <b>High Temp.</b> buttons simultaneously for three seconds.	

# LIMITED WARRANTY

# USA

#### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

#### ARBITRATION NOTICE: THIS LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINS AN ARBITRATION PROVISION THAT REQUIRES YOU AND LG ELECTRONICS ("LG") TO RESOLVE DISPUTES BY BINDING ARBITRATION INSTEAD OF IN COURT, UNLESS YOU CHOOSE TO OPT OUT. IN ARBITRATION, CLASS ACTIONS AND JURY TRIALS ARE NOT PERMITTED. PLEASE SEE THE SECTION TITLED "PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES" BELOW.

Should your LG Dishwasher ("Product") fail due to a defect in materials or workmanship under normal and proper use, during the warranty period set forth below, LG will, at its option, repair or replace the Product. This limited warranty is valid only to the original retail purchaser of the Product ("You") and applies only when purchased lawfully and used within the United States including U.S. Territories.

Warranty Period	Scope of Warranty	HOW SERVICE IS HANDLED
One (1) year from date of original retail purchase	Labor / Parts	LG will also provide, free of charge, all labor and on-site service to replace the defective part.
Two (2) years from date of original retail purchase	Main control board <sup>†</sup> / Racks / Stainless Steel Door Liner / Tub	Main control board, dishwasher racks, stainless steel door liner, tub. Customer will be responsible for any labor or in- home service to replace defective parts.
Ten (10) years from date of original retail purchase	Direct Drive Motor	Direct Drive motor. Customer will be responsible for any labor or in-home service to replace defective parts.

- <sup>†</sup> Main control board is located on the bottom right of the dishwasher when viewed from the front.
- Replacement Products and parts are warranted for the remaining portion of the original warranty period or ninety (90) days, whichever is greater.
- Replacement Products and parts may be new, reconditioned, refurbished, or otherwise factory remanufactured.
- Replaced Product or part(s) will be the property of LG.
- Proof of original retail purchase specifying the Product model and date of purchase is required to obtain warranty service under this limited warranty.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ON THE PRODUCT IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL LG OR ITS U.S. DISTRIBUTORS/DEALERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST GOODWILL, LOST REVENUES OR PROFITS, WORK STOPPAGE, IMPAIRMENT OF OTHER GOODS, COST OF REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT, LOSS OF USE, OR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. LG'S TOTAL LIABILITY, IF ANY, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

#### THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

- Service trips to deliver, pick up, or install, educate how to operate, correct wiring, or correct unauthorized repairs.
- Damage or failure of the Product to perform during power failures and interrupted or inadequate electrical service.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by leaky or broken water pipes, frozen water pipes, restricted drain lines, inadequate or interrupted water supply or inadequate supply of air.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from operating the Product in a corrosive atmosphere or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by accidents, pests and vermin, lightning, wind, fire, floods, acts of nature, or any other causes beyond the control of LG.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by unauthorized modification or alteration, or if the Product is used for other than the intended purpose, or any water leakage where the Product was not properly installed.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by incorrect electrical current, voltage, or plumbing codes.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by transportation, storage, and/or handling, including scratches, dents, chips, and/or other damage to the finish of the Product, unless such damage is reported within one (1) week of delivery.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from misuse, abuse, improper installation, repair, or maintenance. Improper repair includes the use of parts not authorized by LG. Improper installation or maintenance includes installation or maintenance contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by the use of parts, components, accessories, consumable cleaning products, or any other products or services that were not authorized by LG.
- Damage or missing items to any display or open box Product.
- Refurbished Product or any Product sold "As Is", "Where Is", "With all Faults", or similar disclaimer.
- Products with original serial numbers that have been removed, altered, or cannot be readily determined.
- Increases in utility costs and additional utility expenses.
- Any noises associated with normal operation.
- Products used for other than normal and proper household use (e.g., commercial or industrial use) or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Costs associated with removal and reinstallation of the Product for repairs, or the removal and reinstallation of the Product if it is installed in an inaccessible location or not installed in accordance with the Product Owner's manual.
- Accessories, removable components, or consumable parts (e.g. Shelves, door bins, drawers, water/air filters, racks, light bulbs, batteries, etc., as applicable), except for internal/functional parts covered under this limited warranty.

#### The cost of repair or replacement under these excluded circumstances shall be borne by You.

TO OBTAIN WARRANTY SERVICE AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Call 1-800-243-0000 and select the appropriate option from the menu.

Or visit our website at http://www.lg.com.

Or by mail: LG Electronics Customer Service P.O. Box 240007 Huntsville, AL 35813 ATTN: CIC

#### **PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:**

ALL DISPUTES BETWEEN YOU AND LG ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE PRODUCT SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT IN A COURT OF GENERAL JURISDICTION. BINDING ARBITRATION MEANS THAT YOU AND LG ARE EACH WAIVING THE RIGHT TO A JURY TRIAL AND TO BRING OR PARTICIPATE IN A CLASS ACTION.

**Definitions.** For the purposes of this section, references to "LG" mean LG Electronics U.S.A., Inc., its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, beneficiaries,

predecessors in interest, successors, assigns and suppliers; references to "dispute" or "claim" shall include any dispute, claim or controversy of any kind whatsoever (whether based in contract, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, fraud, misrepresentation or any other legal or equitable theory) arising out of or relating in any way to the sale, condition or performance of the product or this Limited Warranty.

**Notice of Dispute.** In the event you intend to commence an arbitration proceeding, you must first notify LG in writing at least 30 days in advance of initiating the arbitration by sending a letter to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. You and LG agree to engage in good faith discussions in an attempt to amicably resolve your claim. The notice must provide your name, address, and telephone number; identify the product that is the subject of the claim; and describe the nature of the claim and the relief being sought. If you and LG are unable to resolve the dispute within 30 days, either party may proceed to file a claim for arbitration.

**Agreement to Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver.** Upon failure to resolve the dispute during the 30 day period after sending written notice to LG, you and LG agree to resolve any claims between us only by binding arbitration on an individual basis, unless you opt out as provided below. Any dispute between you and LG shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's product or claim. More specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, any dispute between you and LG shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class or representative action. Instead of arbitration, either party may bring an individual action in small claims court, but that small claims court action may not be brought on a class or representative basis.

**Arbitration Rules and Procedures.** To begin arbitration of a claim, either you or LG must make a written demand for arbitration. The arbitration will be administered by the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") and will be conducted before a single arbitrator under the AAA's Consumer Arbitration Rules that are in effect at the time the arbitration is initiated (referred to as the "AAA Rules") and under the procedures set forth in this section. The AAA Rules are available online at <u>www.adr.org/consumer</u>. Send a copy of your written demand for arbitration, as well as a copy of this provision, to the AAA in the manner described in the AAA Rules. You must also send a copy of your written demand to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. If there is a conflict between the AAA Rules and the rules set forth in this section, the rules set forth in this section will govern. This arbitration provision is governed by the Federal Arbitration Act. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. All issues are for the arbitrator to decide, except that issues relating to the scope and enforceability of the arbitration provision and to the arbitrability of the dispute are for the court to decide. The arbitrator is bound by the terms of this provision.

**Governing Law.** The law of the state of your residence shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between us except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal law.

**Fees/Costs.** You do not need to pay any fee to begin an arbitration. Upon receipt of your written demand for arbitration, LG will promptly pay all arbitration filing fees to the AAA unless you seek more than \$25,000 in damages, in which case the payment of these fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for herein, LG will pay all AAA filing, administration and arbitrator fees for any arbitration initiated in accordance with the AAA Rules and this arbitration provision. If you prevail in the arbitration, LG will pay your attorneys' fees and expenses as long as they are reasonable, by considering factors including, but not limited to, the purchase amount and claim amount. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable law allows for an award of reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, an arbitrator can award them to the same extent that a court would. If the arbitrator finds either the substance of your claim or the relief sought in the demand is frivolous or brought for an improper purpose (as measured by the standards set forth in Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 11(b)), then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. In such a situation, you agree to reimburse LG for all monies previously disbursed by it that are otherwise your obligation to pay under the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for, LG waives any rights it may have to seek attorneys' fees and expenses from you if LG prevails in the arbitration.

**Hearings and Location.** If your claim is for \$25,000 or less, you may choose to have the arbitration conducted solely on the basis of (1) documents submitted to the arbitrator, (2) through a telephonic hearing, or (3) by an in-person hearing as established by the AAA Rules. If your claim exceeds \$25,000, the right to a hearing will be determined by the AAA Rules. Any in-person arbitration hearings will be held at a location within the federal judicial district in which you reside unless we both agree to another location or we agree to a telephonic arbitration.

**Opt Out.** You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. If you opt out, neither you nor LG can require the other to participate in an arbitration proceeding. To opt out, you must send notice to LG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the product by either: (i) sending an e-mail to <u>optout@lge.com</u>, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out" or (ii) calling 1-800-980-2973. You must include in the opt out e-mail or provide by telephone: (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the product was purchased; (c) the product model name or model number; and (d) the serial number (the serial number can be found (i) on the product; or (ii) online by accessing <u>https://www.lg.com/us/support/repair-service/schedule-repair-continued</u> and clicking on "Find My Model & Serial Number").

You may only opt out of the dispute resolution procedure in the manner described above (that is, by e-mail or telephone); no other form of notice will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the full benefits of the Limited Warranty. If you keep this product and do not opt out, then you accept all terms and conditions of the arbitration provision described above.

#### Warranty Exceptions

Poor wash results caused by debris remaining in the filter.		Clean the filter regularly.
Poor wash results caused by improper loading or over stacking: wash arm won't rotate or soap dispenser is held closed.		Make certain that no dishes or utensils are in the path of the spray arms. Do not place one dish on top of another.
Poor drying results caused by lack of rinse aid.		Use rinse aid or combination detergent.
Water is not supplied because the water tap is not turned on. IE error		Check and turn on the water tap.
Water is not supplied because the inlet hose is kinked. IE error	M Co	Reinstall the inlet hose.
Not draining because drain hose is kinked. OE error	0	Reinstall the drain hose.
The knockout plug in the garbage disposal is not removed. OE error		Remove the plug on the disposal.

The disposal or air gap is blocked by debris. OE error	Clean the disposal or the air gap.
Inlet valve and drain hose connection problem caused by improper installation. External leakage	Reinstall the hose.
Door movement or closing compromised by incorrect leveling.	Adjust the lower front leveling feet to the required height.
No power due to loose connection of power supply line or electrical outlet problem.	Reconnect the power supply line or repair the electrical outlet.
Pick-up, electrical wiring, plumbing. Installation	You will be charged for the installation.



#### LG Customer Information Center

For inquiries or comments, visit **www.lg.com** or call:

1-800-243-0000 U.S.A. CANADA

1-888-542-2623

Register your product Online!

www.lg.com

Scan to see the online manual.





# OWNER'S MANUAL

Read this owner's manual thoroughly before operating the appliance and keep it handy for reference at all times.

ENGLISH

LSEL6333\* / LSEL6331\* / LSEL633CF



MFL68920557 Rev.08\_111324 www.lg.com Copyright © 2023-2024 LG Electronics. All Rights Reserved

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### 4 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

#### 4 READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE

- 4 Safety Messages
- 4 Anti-tip Device

#### 5 WARNING

- 5 Installation
- 5 Operation
- 6 Maintenance
- 6 Risk of Fire and Flammable Materials

#### 7 CAUTION

- 7 Operation
- 7 Maintenance

#### 8 PRODUCT OVERVIEW

#### 8 Product Features

- 8 Exterior & Interior
- 8 Product Specifications
- 9 Accessories

#### **10 INSTALLATION**

#### 10 Before Installing

- 10 Installation Overview
- 11 Tools Needed
- 11 Parts
- 11 Unpacking and Moving the Range

#### 12 Choosing the Proper Location

- 12 Electricity
- 12 Flooring
- 12 Ambient Temperature
- 13 Dimensions and Clearances

#### 15 Leveling

15 Leveling the Range

#### 16 Connecting Electricity

- 16 Electrical Requirements
- 16 Connecting the Power Cord / Conduit

#### 21 Optional Rear Filler

21 Installing the Rear Filler

#### 21 Anti-tip Device

- 21 Installing the Anti-tip Device
- 22 Test Run

22 Test the Range Before Use

#### 24 OPERATION

#### 24 Control Panel

- 24 Control Panel Features
- 25 Knob Positions

#### 26 Changing Oven Settings

- 26 Clock
- 26 Oven Light
- 26 Timer On/Off
- 27 Wi-Fi
- 27 Settings (Hour Mode, Convection Auto Conversion, Oven Thermostat, Preheat Alarm Light, Beeper Volume, Fahrenheit or Celsius, Cooktop On Alert Volume)
- 29 Control Lock
- 30 Start Time (Delayed Timed Cook, Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)
- 30 Cook Time (Timed Cook)
- 31 Minimum & Maximum Default Settings

#### 32 Cooktop

- 32 Before Using the Cooktop
- 32 Cooking Areas
- 33 Using the Cooktop Elements
- 34 The Recommended Surface Cooking Setting
- 34 Using the Proper Cookware

#### 36 Oven

- 36 Before Using the Oven
- 36 Oven Vent
- 36 Using Oven Racks
- 36 Bake
- 37 Convection Mode (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)
- 38 Recommended Baking and Roasting Guide
- 39 Broil
- 40 Recommended Broiling Guide
- 43 Proof
- 43 Warm
- 44 Keep Warm
- 44 Air Fry (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)
- 46 Recommended Air Frying Guide
- 47 Frozen Meal (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

- 48 Slow Cook (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)
- 48 Remote Start
- 48 Using the Sabbath Mode

#### **50 SMART FUNCTIONS**

#### 50 LG ThinQ Application

- 50 LG ThinQ Application Features
- 50 Installing LG ThinQ Application and Connecting an LG Appliance
- 51 Wireless LAN Module Specifications
- 51 FCC Statement
- 51 FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement
- 51 Open Source Software Notice Information

#### 52 Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> Feature

- 52 Using LG ThinQ to Diagnose Issues
- 52 Using Audible Diagnosis to Diagnose Issues

#### **53 MAINTENANCE**

#### 53 Cleaning

- 53 Interior
- 53 Exterior
- 55 Cooktop Surface
- 58 EasyClean
- 60 Self Clean
- 62 Removing/Assembling Lift-Off Oven Doors
- 64 Removing/Assembling Drawers

#### 64 Periodic Maintenance

64 Changing the Oven Light

#### **66 TROUBLESHOOTING**

#### 66 FAQs

66 Frequently Asked Questions

#### 68 Before Calling for Service

- 68 Cooking
- 70 Parts & Features
- 72 Noises
- 73 Wi-Fi

#### 74 LIMITED WARRANTY

#### 74 USA

- 74 TERMS AND CONDITIONS
- 74 THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:
- 78 PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:

# **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

# **READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE**

Download this owner's manual at http://www.lg.com

#### Safety Messages

#### Your safety and the safety of others are very important.

We have provided many important safety messages in this manual and on your appliance. Always read and follow all safety messages.



This is the safety alert symbol.

This symbol alerts you to potential hazards that can kill or injure you and others. All safety messages will follow the safety alert symbol and either the word WARNING or CAUTION.

These words mean:



#### WARNING

You may be killed or seriously injured if you do not follow instructions.



#### CAUTION

You may be injured or cause damage to the product if you do not follow instructions.

All safety messages will tell you what the potential hazard is, tell you how to reduce the chance of injury, and tell you what may happen if the instructions are not followed.

#### Anti-tip Device

To reduce the risk of tipping, the appliance must be secured by a properly installed anti-tip device. To check if the device is installed properly, verify that the anti-tip device is engaged, or grasp the top rear edge of the range back guard and carefully attempt to tilt it forward. Refer to the installation section for instructions.

# 🛦 WARNING

• A child or adult can tip the range and be killed.



- Install the anti-tip device to the structure and/or the range. Verify the anti-tip device has been properly installed and engaged by following the guide on the anti-tip bracket template.
- Engage the range to the anti-tip device by following the guide on the anti-tip bracket template. Ensure the anti-tip device is re-engaged when the range is moved by following the guide on the anti-tip bracket template.
- Re-engage the anti-tip device if the range is moved. Do not operate the range without the anti-tip device in place and engaged.
- See installation instructions for details.
- Failure to do so can result in death or serious burns to children or adults.
- Do not rest large, heavy items such as whole turkeys on the open oven door. The range could tip forward and cause injury.

- Do not step or sit on the oven door. The range could be tipped and injury might result from spilled hot liquid, food, or the range itself.
- Never remove the oven legs. The range will not be secured to the anti-tip bracket if the legs are removed.



**1**Anti-tip bracket**2**Leveling leg

### WARNING

# **WARNING**

• To reduce the risk of explosion, fire, death, electric shock, injury or scalding to persons when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

#### Installation

- Do not line the oven walls, racks, bottom, or any other part of the oven with aluminum foil or any other material. Doing so will disrupt heat distribution, produce poor baking results and cause permanent damage to the oven interior. (Aluminum foil will melt to the interior surface of the oven.)
- To eliminate the risk of burns or fire by reaching over heated surface units, cabinet storage space located above the surface units should be avoided. If cabinet storage is to be provided, the risk can be reduced by installing a range hood that projects horizontally a minimum of 5 inches beyond the bottom of the cabinets.
- Do not use aluminum foil or any other material to line the oven bottom. Improper installation of these liners may result in a risk of electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your range is properly installed and grounded by a qualified installer, according to the installation instructions. Any adjustment and service should be performed only by qualified range installers or service technicians.

#### Operation

- Do not leave children alone or unsupervised near the appliance when it is in use or is still hot. Children should never be allowed to sit or stand on any part of the appliance as they could be injured or burned.
- · Children should not be allowed to play with controls or other parts of the appliance.
- DO NOT TOUCH HEATING ELEMENTS OR INTERIOR SURFACES OF OVEN. Heating elements may be hot even though they are dark in color. Interior surfaces of an oven become hot enough to cause burns. During and after use, do not touch or let clothing or other flammable materials contact heating elements or interior surfaces of the oven until they have had sufficient time to cool. Other surfaces, such as oven vent openings and surfaces near these openings, oven doors, and windows of oven doors, also get hot and may cause burns if not cooled.
- Surface units may be hot even though they are dark in color. Areas near surface units may become hot enough to cause burns. During and after use, DO NOT TOUCH SURFACE UNITS OR AREAS NEAR UNITS or let clothing or other flammable materials contact surface units or areas near units until they have had sufficient time to cool. This includes the cooktop and the area above the oven door.
- Use care when opening the oven door. The hot air and steam that escape can cause burns to hands, face and eyes. Let hot air or steam escape from the oven before removing or replacing food in the oven.
- Do not use plastic to cover food. Use foil or oven-safe lids only.

#### 6 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- Never attempt to dry a pet in the oven.
- · Never use your appliance for warming or heating the room.
- Always use pot holders or oven mitts when removing food from the oven or the surface element. Cookware will be hot. Use only dry pot holders. Moist or damp pot holders on hot surfaces may result in burns from steam. Do not let the pot holder touch hot heating elements. Do not use a towel or other bulky cloth to remove food.
- Do not heat unopened food containers. Pressure in the containers may cause them to burst which may result in injury.
- Be certain that all packing materials are removed from the appliance before operating. Keep plastic, clothes, paper, and other flammable materials away from parts of the appliance that may become hot.
- Do not allow aluminum foil or the temperature probe to contact heating elements.
- Do not touch the hot surface between the bottom of the oven door and the top of the drawer on the front of the oven while the oven is in operation. The surface becomes hot and can cause burns and other injury.
- Do not touch the oven racks while they are hot.
- If a rack must be moved while the oven is hot, do not let the pot holder contact the hot heating element in the oven.
- Pull the oven rack to the stop-lock position when loading and unloading food from the oven. This helps prevent burns caused by touching hot surfaces of the door and oven walls.
- Do not use the oven if a heating element develops a glowing spot during use or shows other signs of damage. A glowing spot indicates the heating element may fail and present a potential burn, fire, or shock hazard. Turn the oven off immediately and have the heating element replaced by a qualified service technician.
- During oven operation, the upper surface of the drawer cavity becomes hot and may cause burns. Never allow children to remain unsupervised near the oven or cooktop.
- Do not put your hand inside the drawer while the oven is operating.
- Keep Oven Vent Duct Unobstructed. Areas near the vent may become hot during operation and may cause burns. Do not block the vent opening. Avoid placing plastics near the vent as heat may distort or melt the plastic.

#### Maintenance

- · Do not allow children to crawl into the oven.
- Let hot cookware and utensils cool in a safe place, out of reach of small children.
- If the door glass, cooktop glass, surface, or oven heating unit of the range are damaged, discontinue use of the range and call for service.
- Do not allow anyone to climb, stand or hang on the door, storage drawer or cooktop. They could damage the range and even tip it over, causing severe personal injury.
- Always disconnect power from the appliance before servicing.
- Before replacing the oven light, switch off the electrical power to the oven at the main fuse or circuit breaker panel. Failure to do so can result in severe personal injury, death, or electrical shock.
- Never pour cold water over a hot oven for cleaning. Doing so may cause the oven to malfunction.

#### **Risk of Fire and Flammable Materials**

- Do not store or use flammable material in the oven or near or on the cooktop. Flammable materials include paper, plastic, pot holders, linens, wall coverings, curtains, and gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids such as grease or cooking oil. These materials can be ignited when the oven and cooktop are in use.
- Use extreme caution when moving or disposing of hot grease.

- Wear proper apparel. Do not wear loose-fitting or hanging garments, which may ignite if they contact hot surfaces, and cause severe burns.
- Do not use the oven for drying clothes. Only use the oven for its intended purpose.
- If cabinet storage is provided directly above the cooking surface, only use it to store items that are not frequently used and can be safely stored in an area subjected to heat. Temperatures may be unsafe for volatile items such as flammable liquids, cleaners or aerosol sprays.
- Do not use water on grease fires. Should an oven fire occur, leave the oven door closed and turn the oven off. If the fire continues, throw baking soda on the fire or use a fire extinguisher. Do not put water or flour on the fire. Flour may be explosive and water can spread a grease fire and cause personal injury.

# CAUTION

# 

• To reduce the risk of minor injury to persons, malfunction, or damage to the product or property when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

#### Operation

- Always heat fat slowly, and watch as it heats.
- If frying combinations of oils and fats, stir them together before heating.
- Use a deep fat thermometer, if possible, to prevent overheating fat beyond the smoking point.
- Use the least possible amount of fat for effective shallow or deep-fat frying. Filling the pan with too much fat can cause spillovers when food is added.
- Accessible parts may become hot when the broiler is in use.
- Do not place food or cookware on the bottom of the oven cavity. Doing so will cause permanent damage to the oven bottom finish.
- When using cooking or roasting bags in the oven, follow the manufacturer's directions.
- To protect against food-borne illnesses, cook meat and poultry thoroughly. The USDA has indicated the following as safe minimum internal temperatures for consumption:
  - Ground beef: 160 °F
  - Poultry: 165 °F
  - Beef, veal, pork, or lamb: 145 °F
  - Fish/seafood: 145 °F

#### Maintenance

- Do not store items of interest to children in cabinets above a range or on the back guard of a range. Children climbing on the range to reach items could be seriously injured.
- Do not repair or replace any part of the appliance unless specifically recommended in the manual. All other servicing should be performed by a qualified technician.
- Do not use harsh etching, abrasive cleaners or sharp metal scrapers to clean the oven door glass because they can scratch the surface. Scratches may cause the glass to shatter.
- Make sure oven lights are cool before cleaning.
- Do not clean the door gasket. The door gasket is essential for a good seal. Care should be taken not to rub, damage, or move the gasket.
- Clean in the self-clean cycle only parts listed in this manual. Before self-cleaning the oven, remove the broiler pan, all oven racks, the meat probe and any cookware, utensils or food from the oven.

# SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

# **PRODUCT OVERVIEW**

# **Product Features**

**Exterior & Interior** 





- Cooktop
- 2 Cooktop Controller
- Oven Door
- 4 Storage Drawer
- **G**lass-ceramic Cooktop
- **6** Oven Mode Knob (LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF model only)
- Model & Serial Number Plate
- 8 Gasket

#### **Product Specifications**

The appearance and specifications listed in this manual may vary due to constant product improvements.

Oven Range Models	LSEL6333*, LSEL6331*, LSEL633CF
Description	Electric Slide In Oven Range
Electrical requirements	LSEL6333*, LSEL633CF : 13.0 kW 120/240 VAC or 9.8 kW 120/208 VAC LSEL6331* : 13.2 kW 120/240 VAC or 9.9 kW 120/208 VAC
Exterior Dimensions	29 7/8" (W) x 37 1/4"(H) x 29 7/32" (D) (D with door closed and including door handle) 75.9 cm (W) x 94.6 cm (H) x 74.2 cm (D) (D with door closed and including door handle)
Height to cooking surface	36" (91.4 cm)
Total capacity	6.3 cu. ft.

#### Accessories

#### **Included Accessories**



#### NOTE

- Optional accessories are not included with the unit. These accessories are available for purchase on the www.lg.com web page.
- Contact LG Customer Service at 1-800-243-0000 (1-888-542-2623 in Canada) if any accessories are missing.
- For your safety and for extended product life, only use authorized components.
- The manufacturer is not responsible for product malfunction or accidents caused by the use of separately purchased, unauthorized components or parts.
- The images in this guide may be different from the actual components and accessories, which are subject to change by the manufacturer without prior notice for product improvement purposes.

# INSTALLATION

# **Before Installing**

#### **Installation Overview**

Please read the following installation instructions first after purchasing this product or transporting it to another location.

The images in this guide may be different from the actual components and accessories, which are subject to change by the manufacturer without prior notice for product improvement purposes.





- Check and choose the proper location
- 2 Level the range
- 3 Connect electric range
- **4** Plug in the power cord
- **6** Install anti-tip device
- **6** Engage the anti-tip device
- 🕖 Test run

# Tools Needed Image: Second second

#### Parts

#### **Parts Provided**



- Template (1 ea)
- Anti-tip Bracket Kit (1 ea)
- 3 Anchor Sleeves (6 ea)
- 4 Lag Bolts (6 ea)

#### **Parts Not Provided**





- 4-Wire Cord or 3-Wire Cord (UL approved 40 or 50 AMP)
- Strain Relief (for conduit installations only)

#### NOTE

- Observe all governing codes and ordinances.
- Have the installer show you the location of the circuit breaker or fuse. Mark it for easy reference.
- As when using any appliance generating heat, there are certain safety precautions you should follow.
- Be sure your range is installed and grounded properly by a qualified installer or service technician.

# Unpacking and Moving the Range

#### 🛕 WARNING

- You should use two or more people to move and install the range. (Excessive Weight Hazard) Failure to do so can result in back or other injury.
- Do not use the door handles or knobs to push or pull the range during installation or when moving the range out for cleaning or service. Doing so can result in serious damage to the range.



• Do not push or pull the range by grabbing the open oven door or cooktop only. Doing so can result in serious damage to the range.



#### 🛕 WARNING

• Do not lift the range using the cooktop or door handle. Doing so can cause damage and improper operation of the range.



• To reduce the risk of burns, do not move this appliance while it is hot.

#### NOTE

- The image may differ from the actual model.
- Your range is heavy and can be installed on soft floor coverings such as cushioned vinyl or carpeting. Use care when moving the range on this type of flooring. Use a belt when moving the range to prevent damaging the floor. Or slide the range onto cardboard or plywood to avoid damaging the floor covering.



- Remove packing material, tape and any temporary labels from your range before using. Do not remove any warning-type labels, the model and serial number label, or the Tech Sheet that is located on the back of the range.
- To remove any remaining tape or glue, rub the area briskly with your thumb. Tape or glue residue can also be easily removed by rubbing a small amount of liquid dish soap over the adhesive with your fingers. Wipe with warm water and dry.
- Do not use sharp instruments, rubbing alcohol, flammable fluids, or abrasive cleaners to remove

tape or glue. These products can damage the surface of your range.

# Choosing the Proper Location

#### Electricity

The range should always be plugged into its own individual properly grounded electrical outlet.

- This prevents overloading house wiring circuits which could cause a fire hazard from overheated wires.
- It is recommended that a separate circuit serving only this appliance be provided.

#### Flooring

#### 

• Use an insulated pad or 1/4 in. (0.64 cm) plywood under the range if installing the range over carpeting.

#### **Ambient Temperature**

#### 

- Make sure wall coverings, countertops and cabinets around the range can withstand the heat (up to 194 °F) generated by the range. Discoloration, delamination or melting may occur. This range has been designed to comply with the maximum allowable wood cabinet temperature of 194 °F.
- Before installing the range in an area covered with linoleum or other synthetic floor covering, make sure the floor covering can withstand temperatures of at least 200 °F (93 °C).

#### Dimensions and Clearances

#### Dimensions



-	Dimensions	LSEL6333*, LSEL6331*, LSEL633CF
А	Width	29 7/8" (759 mm)
В	Height	37 1/4" (946 mm)
С	Depth (Includes Door Handle)	29 7/32" (742 mm)
D	Height (Excludes Vent Trim)	36" (914 mm)
E	Depth (Includes only the product body that is loaded into the cabinet. Excludes door, drawer, and handles)	24 25/32" (628.4 mm)
F	Depth (Excludes Door Handle)	26 27/32" (682 mm)
G	Depth when drawer is fully opened	36 27/32" (935.7 mm)
Н	Depth when door is fully opened	48 5/8" (1235.9 mm)

#### Clearances



- Acceptable electrical outlet area
- **2** Normal counter top depth
- **3** Counter top height
- 4 Cabinet
- 6 Wall
- 6 Center
- A (Cabinet opening)
- = 30" (76.2 cm) For U.S.A
- = 30" (76.2 cm) ~ 31" (78.7 cm) For CANADA

#### **Minimum Dimensions**



- 30" (76.2 cm) minimum clearance between the top of the cooking surface and the bottom of an unprotected wood or metal cabinet; or 24" (60.9 cm) minimum when bottom of wood or metal cabinet is protected by not less than 1/4" (0.64 cm) flame retardant millboard covered with not less than no. 28 MSG sheet steel, 0.015" (0.381 mm) stainless steel, 0.024" (0.610 mm) aluminum or 0.020" (0.508 mm) copper.
- 2 15" (38.1 cm) minimum between countertop and adjacent cabinet bottom.

#### NOTE

- Important Save for the use of the local electrical inspector.
- For installation in Canada, a free-standing range is not to be installed closer than 15/32" (12 mm) from any adjacent surface.

# Leveling

#### Leveling the Range

Level the range by adjusting the leveling legs with a wrench. Extending the legs slightly may also make it easier to insert the rear leg into the anti-tip bracket.



#### **Checking Adjustments**

- **1** Place a level diagonally on the oven rack, and check each direction for level.
  - First check direction **1**. Then check direction **2**.



**2** If the level doesn't show that the rack is level, adjust the leveling legs with a wrench.

# **Connecting Electricity**

#### **Electrical Requirements**

This appliance must be installed and grounded on a branch circuit by a qualified technician in accordance with the National Electrical code ANSI/ NFPA NO. 70 - latest edition.

All wiring should conform to local and NEC codes. This range requires a single-phase, 3 wire, AC 120/ 208 V or 120/240 V 60 Hz electrical system. Use only a 3-conductor or a 4-conductor UL - listed range cord with closed-loop terminals, open-end spade lugs with upturned ends or similar termination. Do not install the power cord without a strain relief.

A range cord rated at 40 amps with 120/240 V minimum range is required.

If a 50 amp range cord is used, it should be marked for use with 1 3/8" diameter connection openings. This appliance may be connected by means of a conduit or power cord. If a conduit is being used, refer to "3-Wire Connection: Conduit" or "4-Wire Connection: Conduit" sections.

#### MARNING

- Allow 2 to 3 ft (61.0 cm to 91.4 cm) of slack in the line so that the range can be moved if servicing is ever necessary.
- The power supply cord and plug should not be modified. If the plug will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.
- Using an extension cord to connect the power is prohibited. Connect the power cord and plug directly.
- Electrical ground is required on this appliance.
- Make sure that the power cord is not pinched by the range or heavy objects. Failure to do so can result in serious burns or electrical shock.

#### **Specified Power Cord Kit Rating**

#### Case 1

- Voltage: 120/240 volts (3-wire)
- Range rating: 8,750 W 16,500 W
- Specified rating of power supply-cord kit, amperes: 40 A or 50 A
- Diameter (inches) of range connection opening
  - Power cord: 1 3/8"
  - Conduit: 1 1/8"

#### Case 2

- Voltage: 120/240 volts (3-wire)
- Range rating: 16,501 W 22,500 W
- Specified rating of power supply-cord kit, amperes: 50 A
- Diameter (inches) of range connection opening
  - Power cord: 1 3/4"
  - Conduit: 1 3/8"

#### Case 3

- Voltage: 120/208 volts (3-wire)
- Range rating: 7,801 W- 12,500 W
- Specified rating of power supply-cord kit, amperes: 40 A or 50 A
- Diameter (inches) of range connection opening
  - Power cord: 1 3/8"
  - Conduit: 1 1/8"

#### Case 4

- Voltage: 120/208 volts (3-wire)
- Range rating: 12,501 W 18,500 W
- Specified rating of power supply-cord kit, amperes: 50 A
- Diameter (inches) of range connection opening
  - Power cord: 1 3/4"
  - Conduit: 1 3/8"

#### 3, 4 - Wire Electrical Wall Receptacle



4 Wire receptacle (14-50R)



3 Wire receptacle (10-50R)

#### Connecting the Power Cord / Conduit

The rear access cover **①** must be removed. Loosen the two screws with a screwdriver. The terminal block will then be accessible.



Use the cord/conduit connection plate 2 to install the power cord or conduit. Leave the connection plate as installed for power cord installations. Remove the connection plate for conduit installations and rotate it to use the smaller 1 1/8 in. (2.8 cm) conduit hole 3 instead of the 1 3/8 in. (3.5 cm) power cord hole 4.



For power cord **③** installations, hook the strain relief over the 1 3/8 in. (3.5 cm) power cord hole located below the rear of the oven. Insert the power cord through the strain relief and tighten it.



For conduit installations, insert the conduit strain relief in the 1 1/8 in. (2.8 cm) conduit hole. Then install the conduit through the body of the strain relief and fasten the strain relief with its ring.



- 6 Ring
- Body
- 8 Cord/Conduit Connection Plate
- Onduit

#### **3-Wire Connection: Power Cord**

#### 🛕 WARNING

• The white middle (neutral or ground) wire of a 3wire power cord or a 3-wire conduit has to be connected to the middle post of the main terminal block. The remaining two wires of the power cord or conduit have to be connected to the outside posts of the main terminal connection block. Failure to do so can result in electrical shock, severe personal injury or death.

- If screws are not tightened securely, it can result in electrical spark and severe personal injury or death.
- **1** For power cord installations, hook the strain relief over the power cord hole (1 3/8") located below the rear of the oven.
- **2** Insert the power cord through the strain relief and tighten it.

#### 

- Do not install the power cord without a strain relief.
- **3** Remove the lower 3 screws from the terminal block and retain them.
- 4 Insert the 3 screws through each power cord terminal ring and into the lower terminals of the terminal block.
  - Make sure that the white center wire is connected to the center lower position of the terminal block.

**5** Tighten the 3 screws securely into the terminal block.

#### 

• Do not remove the ground strap connections.



- Black
- 2 White
- 8 Red
- 4 Terminal Block
- G Cord/Conduit Connection Plate

#### 4-Wire Connection: Power Cord

#### MARNING

- Only a 4-conductor power-supply cord kit rated 120/240 volts, 50 amperes and marked for use with ranges with closed-loop connectors or opened spade lugs with upturned ends must be used. The white middle (neutral) wire of the power cord or 4-wire conduit has to be connected to the middle post of the main terminal block. The other two wires of the power cord or conduit have to be connected to the outside posts of the main terminal connection block. The 4th ground wire (green) must be connected to the frame of the range with the ground screw. Failure to do so can result in electrical shock, severe personal injury or death.
- If screws are not tightened securely, it can result in electrical spark and severe personal injury or death.
- **1** For power cord installations, hook the strain relief over the power cord hole (1 3/8") located below the rear of the oven.

**2** Insert the power cord through the strain relief and tighten it.

#### 

- Do not install the power cord without a strain relief.
- **3** Remove the lower 3 screws from the terminal block and retain them.
- **4** Remove the ground screw and bend the end of the ground strap up so the slot is over the hole of the center screw removed in step 3.
- **5** Insert the ground screw into the power cord ground wire (green) terminal ring and secure it to the range frame.
- **6** Insert the 3 screws through each power cord terminal ring and into the lower terminals of the terminal block.
  - Make sure that the white center (neutral) wire is connected to the center lower position of the terminal block.
- **7** Tighten the 3 screws securely into the terminal block.
  - The center screw now attaches the bent up ground strap to the block.



- 1 Black
- 2 White
- 8 Red
- 4 Terminal Block
- Ground Strap

- 6 Ground Screw
- Cord/Conduit Connection Plate
- 8 Bend strap up and attach.

#### **3-Wire Connection: Conduit**

#### MARNING

• If screws are not tightened securely, it can result in electrical spark and severe personal injury or death.

#### **Conduit Installations**

#### 

- Do not install the conduit without a strain relief.
- **1** Remove the cord/conduit connection plate from the rear of the oven and rotate it.
  - The conduit hole (1 1/8") must be used.
- **2** Prepare the conduit wires as shown below.



1 Cord/Conduit connection plate

**3** Install the conduit strain relief.

- 1) Insert the strain relief in the 1 1/8 in. (2.8 cm) conduit hole.
- Install the conduit through the body of the strain relief and fasten the strain relief with its ring.

#### NOTE

- For conduit installations, purchase a strain relief.
- **4** Reinstall the cord/conduit connection plate.

#### **Conduit Connections**

If the wire in the conduit is copper it must be 8 or 10 AWG wiring.

If the wire in the conduit is aluminum it must be 6 or 8 AWG wiring.

- 1 Loosen the lower 3 screws from the terminal block.
- 2 Insert the bare wire (white/neutral) end through the center terminal block opening. Do not remove the ground strap connections.
- **3** Insert the two side bare wire ends into the lower left and the lower right terminal block openings.
- 4 Tighten the 3 screws securely into the terminal block. (approximately 35 50 IN-LB)



- Black
- 2 White
- 8 Red
- 4 Terminal Block
- 6 Wire Ends
- 6 Conduit Connection Plate

#### 4-Wire Connection: Conduit

#### 🛕 WARNING

• The white middle (neutral) wire of the power cord or 4-wire conduit has to be connected to the middle post of the main terminal block. The other two wires of the power cord or conduit have to be connected to the outside posts of the main terminal connection block. The 4th ground wire (green) must be connected to the frame of the range with the ground screw. Failure to do so can result in electrical shock, severe personal injury or death.

#### 🛕 WARNING

• If screws are not tightened securely, it can result in electrical spark and severe personal injury or death.

#### **Conduit Installations**

#### 

- Do not install the conduit without a strain relief.
- **1** Remove the cord/conduit connection plate from the rear of the oven and rotate it.
  - The conduit hole (1 1/8") must be used.
- **2** Prepare the conduit wires as shown below.



1 Cord/Conduit Connection Plate

2 Ground Wire

- **3** Install the conduit strain relief.
  - 1) Insert the strain relief in the 1 1/8 in. (2.8 cm) conduit hole.
  - Install the conduit through the body of the strain relief and fasten the strain relief with its ring.

#### NOTE

· For conduit installations, purchase a strain relief.

**4** Reinstall the cord/conduit connection plate.

#### **Conduit Connections**

If the wire in the conduit is copper it must be 8 or 10 AWG wiring.

If the wire in the conduit is aluminum it must be 6 or 8 AWG wiring.

- 1 Loosen the 2 lower left and right screws from the terminal block. Remove the lower 2 center screws. Do not discard any screws.
- **2** Remove the ground screw and bend the end of the ground strap up so the slot is over the hole of the center screw removed in step 1.
- **3** Attach the ground (green) bare wire end to the range frame and secure it in place with the ground screw.
- 4 Insert the bare wire (white/neutral) end through the center terminal block opening. The center screw now attaches the bent up ground strap to the block.
- 5 Insert the two side bare wire ends into the left and the right terminal block openings. Tighten the 3 screws securely into the terminal block. (approximately 35 - 50 IN-LB)



- Conduit Connection Plate
- 8 Ground Screw
- Ground Wire
- Bend strap up and attach.

# **Optional Rear Filler**

#### **Installing the Rear Filler**

If the counter does not bridge the opening at the rear wall, the rear filler kit that is provided with the slide-in range will be needed.

#### NOTE

- If the countertop depth is greater than 25 3/8" there will be a gap between the filler kit and the back wall.
- If the countertop depth is less than 24 3/4", the control panel will not sit flush with the countertop.
- **1** Using a screwdriver, remove the 3 screws holding the rear top plate in place.



2 Attach the rear top plate and filler assembly as shown, using the 3 screws removed in step 1.



Rear filler

# **Anti-tip Device**

**Installing the Anti-tip Device** 

#### Tip Hazard

#### 🛕 WARNING

• A child or adult can tip the range and be killed.



- Install the anti-tip device to the structure and/or the range. Verify the anti-tip device has been properly installed and engaged by following the guide on the anti-tip bracket template.
- Engage the range to the anti-tip device by following the guide on the anti-tip bracket template. Ensure the anti-tip device is reengaged when the range is moved by following the guide on the anti-tip bracket template.
- Re-engage the anti-tip device if the range is moved. Do not operate the range without the anti-tip device in place and engaged.
- See installation instructions for details.
- Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious burns to children or adults.
- Range must be secured with an approved antitip device.
- The range could be tipped by standing, sitting or leaning on an open door if the range or anti-tip device is not properly installed.
- The use of this device does not preclude tipping of the range when not properly installed.
- After installing the anti-tip device, verify that it is in place by carefully attempting to tilt the range forward.
- This range has been designed to meet all recognized industry tip standards for all normal conditions.
- The installation of the anti-tip device must meet all local codes for securing the appliance.

#### Using the Anti-tip Bracket Template

• The anti-tip bracket is packaged with an installation template. The instructions include necessary information to complete the installation. Read and follow the range installation instruction sheet.

• Screws 3 must enter wood or concrete.



Anti-tip Bracket

2 Wall Plate

#### **Engaging the Anti-tip Device**



- Anti-tip Bracket
- 2 Leveling Leg
- 1 Slide the range against the wall, making sure the back leg slides into and engages the antitip bracket.
- **2** Check for proper installation by grasping the front edge of the cooktop and carefully attempting to tilt the range forward.

# Test Run

#### Test the Range Before Use

Check if the range is properly installed and run a test cycle.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- Before using the cooktop for the first time, clean it with a ceramic cooktop cleaner. This helps protect the top and makes cleanup easier.
- 2 Turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position to start test.
- **3** Turn each knob to the **Hi** position to check that the surface heating elements are

working properly. The elements should glow red and radiate heat, and they should cycle on and off periodically even when the knob is in the **Hi** position. This cycling prevents the glass-ceramic from being cracked by thermal shock.

#### NOTE

- The Warm Zone does not consume enough power to glow red.
- 4 Now check the oven's operation. Turn the oven mode knob to select the Bake mode. 350 °F appears in the display. Press START.
- **5** The oven should finish preheating in 15 minutes, and the convection fan should operate while the oven is preheating.
- 6 After checking the oven's operation, turn the temperature up to 450 °F and leave the oven on for at least an hour to help remove any oil which might cause smoke and odors when first using the oven.

#### NOTE

• Smoke may come out of the range when it is first used.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- **1** Before using the cooktop for the first time, clean it with a ceramic cooktop cleaner. This helps protect the top and makes cleanup easier.
- 2 Turn each knob to the **Hi** position to check that the surface heating elements are working properly. The elements should glow red and radiate heat, and they should cycle on and off periodically even when the knob is in the **Hi** position. This cycling prevents the glass-ceramic from being cracked by thermal shock.

#### NOTE

• The Warm Zone does not consume enough power to glow red.

- 3 Now check the oven's operation. Press the **Bake**. 350 °F appears in the display. Press **Start**.
- **4** The oven should finish preheating in 15 minutes, and the convection fan should operate while the oven is preheating.
- **5** After checking the oven's operation, turn the temperature up to 450 °F and leave the oven on for at least an hour to help remove any oil which might cause smoke and odors when first using the oven.

#### NOTE

• Smoke may come out of the range when it is first used.

# **OPERATION**

# **Control Panel**

**Control Panel Features** 

Model: LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF



- 4 START
- G CLEAR/OFF
- 6 Cooktop Control

#### NOTE

- Flashing Clock
  - If the colon in the clock display flashes, press **Clock** and reset the time, or press any key to stop the flashing.

• For best results, press buttons in the center, even when activating a button's secondary function. The buttons may not work properly if pressed too far from the center.



#### **Knob Positions**

After cleaning the cooktop control knobs, make sure to replace each knob in the correct position. Failure to do so can result in improper operation of the burners.





Model LSEL6331\*



#### Burner On

The Burner On indicator light turns on when the knob is turned even if the cooktop element does not operate.

#### **2** Hot surface indicator

The hot surface indicator light glows as long as any surface cooking area is too hot to touch. It remains on after the element is turned off and until the surface has cooled to approximately 150 °F.

B Dual



#### 4 Single

Icon Type1	Icon Type2
•	0

6 Mode

# **Changing Oven Settings**

#### Clock

The clock must be set to the correct time of day in order for the automatic oven timing functions to work properly.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- **1** Set the oven mode knob to the **Off** position.
- 2 Press **Cook Time** for 3 seconds. **CLO** shows in the display.
- **3** Press **plus(+)** or **minus(-)** to select the desired time.
- 4 Press **START**.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

1 Press Clock

# 2 Press plus(+) or minus(-) to select the desired time.

**3** Press **START**.

#### NOTE

- The time of day cannot be changed during a timed baking or self-clean cycle.
- If no other keys are pressed within 25 seconds of pressing **Clock**, the display reverts to the original setting.
- If the display time is blinking, there may have been a power failure. Reset the time.

#### **Oven Light**

The interior oven light automatically turns on when the door is opened.

• Press Light to manually turn the oven light on.

#### NOTE

- The oven light cannot be turned on if the Self Clean function is active.
- The oven light turns off automatically after 90 seconds.

#### **Timer On/Off**

The Timer serves as an extra timer in the kitchen that beeps when the set time has run out. It does not start or stop cooking.

The Timer feature can be used during any of the other oven control functions.

1 Set the oven mode knob to the **Off** position. (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

- 2 Press Timer On/Off once to set hours: minutes. The display shows 0:00 with HR letters inside and Timer flashes. Press Timer On/Off twice to set minutes:seconds.
- **3** Press **plus(+)** or **minus(-)** to select the desired time.
- 4 Press **Timer On/Off** to start the Timer. The remaining time countdown appears in the display.

#### NOTE

- If **Timer On/Off** is not pressed, the timer returns to the time of day.
- **5** When the set time runs out, **End** shows in the display. The indicator tones sound every 15 seconds until **Timer On/Off** is pressed.

#### NOTE

• If the remaining time is not in the display, recall the remaining time by pressing **Timer On/Off**.

#### **Canceling the Timer**

1 Press Timer On/Off once. The display returns to the time of day.

#### Wi-Fi

The **Wi-Fi** button is used to connect the appliance to a home Wi-Fi network.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- **1** Set the mode knob to the OFF position.
- **2** Press and hold **Timer On/Off** for 3 seconds.
- **3** Follow the instructions in the **LG ThinQ** application to connect the appliance.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

**1** Press and hold **Remote Start** for 3 seconds.

**2** Follow the instructions in the **LG ThinQ** application to connect the appliance.

#### NOTE

• See the Smart Functions section in the owner's manual for more details.

Settings (Hour Mode, Convection Auto Conversion, Oven Thermostat, Preheat Alarm Light, Beeper Volume, Fahrenheit or Celsius, Cooktop On Alert Volume)

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

Set the oven mode knob to the **Off** position. Press and hold **Start Time** for 3 seconds. Then press the **Start Time** button repeatedly to toggle through and change oven settings.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds. Then press the **Clock** button repeatedly to toggle through and change oven settings.

The **Settings** button allows you to:

- set the hour mode on the clock (12 or 24 hours)
- enable/disable convection auto conversion (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)
- adjust the oven thermostat
- activate/deactivate the preheating alarm light
- · set the beeper volume
- switch the temperature scale between Fahrenheit and Celsius
- · set the cooktop on alert volume

#### Setting the Hour Mode

The control is set to use a 12-hour clock. To reset the clock to 24-hour mode, follow the steps below.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- 1 Set the oven mode knob to the **off** position. Press and hold **Start Time** for 3 seconds.
- **2** Press **+***I***-** to toggle between a 12-hour and 24-hour clock.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- **1** Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds.
- **2** Press **+***I***-** to toggle between a 12-hour and 24-hour clock.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Setting Convection Auto Conversion (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

When **Conv. Bake** and **Conv. Roast** are selected, Convection Auto Conversion automatically converts the standard recipe temperature entered to a convection temperature by subtracting 25 °F / 14 °C. This auto converted temperature shows on the display. For example, select **Conv. Bake**, enter 350 °F, and 325 °F shows on the display after preheat.

Convection Auto Conversion is enabled by default. To change the setting, follow these instructions.

- 1 Set the oven mode knob to the **Off** position.
- 2 Press and hold **Start Time** for 3 seconds. Then press the **Start Time** key repeatedly until **Auto** appears in the display.
- **3** Press **plus(+)** or **minus(-)** to enable or disable the feature.
- 4 Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Adjusting the Oven Thermostat

Your new oven may cook differently from the one it replaced. Use your new oven for a few weeks to become more familiar with it before changing the temperature settings. If after familiarizing yourself with the new oven, you still think that it is too hot or too cold, you can adjust the oven thermostat yourself.

To begin, either raise or lower the thermostat 15 °F (8 °C). Try the oven with the new setting. If the oven still needs adjustment, raise or lower the thermostat again, using the first adjustment as a gauge. For example, if the adjustment was too much, raise or lower the thermostat 10 °F (5 °C). If the adjustment was not enough, raise or lower the thermostat 20 °F (12 °C). Proceed in this way until the oven is adjusted to your satisfaction.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- Set the oven mode knob to the Off position. Press and hold Start Time for 3 seconds. Then press Start Time repeatedly until AdJU appears in the display.
- 2 Set the number of degrees to adjust: Press or press and hold the +/- buttons until the desired number of degrees appears in the display.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- 1 Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds. Then press **Clock** repeatedly until **AdJU** appears in the display.
- 2 Set the number of degrees to adjust: Press or press and hold the +/- buttons until the desired number of degrees appears in the display.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### NOTE

- This adjustment does not affect the broiling or Self Clean temperatures. The adjustment is retained in memory after a power failure. The oven temperature can be increased (+) or decreased (-) as much as 35 °F or 19 °C.
- Once the temperature is increased or decreased, the display shows the adjusted temperature until it readjusts.

#### Turning the Preheat Alarm Light On/Off

When the oven reaches its set-temperature, the preheating alarm light flashes 5 times or until the oven door is opened.

You can activate or deactivate the preheating alarm light.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- Set the oven mode knob to the Off position. Press and hold Start Time for 3 seconds. Then press Start Time repeatedly until PrE appears in the display.
- 2 Press +/- to turn the light on/off.
## **3** Press **START** to accept the change. **Model LSEL6331**\*

- 1 Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds. Then press **Clock** repeatedly until **PrE** appears in the display.
- 2 Press +/- to turn the light on/off.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Adjusting the Beeper Volume Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- 1 Set the oven mode knob to the Off position. Press and hold **Start Time** for 3 seconds. Then press the **Start Time** key repeatedly until **BEEP** appears in the display.
- 2 Press **plus(+)** or **minus(-)** to select the desired volume.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- 1 Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds. Then press **Clock** repeatedly until **Beep** appears in the display.
- 2 Press plus(+) or minus(-) to select the desired volume.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### **Selecting Fahrenheit or Celsius**

Set the oven temperature display to show either Fahrenheit (°F) or Celsius (°C) units. The oven defaults to Fahrenheit unless changed by the user.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

1 Set the oven mode knob to the Off position. Press and hold **Start Time** for 3 seconds. Then press **Start Time** repeatedly until **Unit** appears in the display. **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

### Model LSEL6331\*

- 1 Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds. Then press **Clock** repeatedly until **Unit** appears in the display.
- **2** Press +/- to select **F** (Fahrenheit) or **C** (Celsius).
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Adjusting Cooktop On Alert Volume Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- 1 Set the oven mode knob to the Off position. Press and hold **Start Time** for 3 seconds. Then press **Start Time** repeatedly until **CtOP** appears in display.
- 2 Press +/- to select Hi,Lo,Off.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- 1 Press and hold **Clock** for 3 seconds. Then press **Clock** repeatedly until **CtOP** appears in the display.
- 2 Press +/- to select Hi,Lo,Off.
- **3** Press **START** to accept the change.

## **Control Lock**

The **Control Lock** feature locks the control panel and oven mode knob (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF).

- 1 Set the oven mode knob to the **Off** position. (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)
- 2 Press and hold **Control Lock** for three seconds.

- 3 The lock melody sounds. **Loc** and the lock icon ⊕ appear in the display.
- 4 To deactivate the **Control Lock** feature, press and hold **Control Lock** for three seconds. The unlock melody sounds and the controls unlock.

• The **Burner On** indicator light turns on when the knob is turned even if the cooktop element does not operate.

## Start Time (Delayed Timed Cook, Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

The automatic timer of the Delayed Timed Cook function turns the oven on and off at the time you select. This feature can be used with the **Bake**, **Conv. Bake**, **Self Clean**, and **Conv. Roast** modes.

## 

- Use caution with the Delayed Timed Cook features. Use the automatic timer when cooking cured or frozen meats and most fruits and vegetables. Foods that can easily spoil, such as milk, eggs, fish, meat or poultry, should be chilled in the refrigerator first. Even when chilled, they should not stand in the oven for more than 1 hour before cooking begins, and should be removed promptly when cooking is complete. Eating spoiled food can result in sickness from food poisoning.
- Eating spoiled food can result in sickness from food poisoning.

#### Setting a Delayed Timed Cook

For example, to bake at 300 °F and delay the start of baking until 4:30, first set the clock for the correct time of day.

- **1** Turn the oven mode knob to select **Bake**. 350 °F appears in the display.
- 2 Set the temperature: Press **minus(-)** until 300 °F appears in the display.
- **3** Press **Cook Time** and set the baking time.

- 4 Press Start Time.
- **5** Set the start time: Press **plus(+)** until 4:30 appears in the display.
- 6 Press **START**. A short beep sounds and **Timed Delay** and the start time appear in the display. The oven begins baking at the set start time.

## NOTE

- To cancel the Delayed Timed Cook function, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position at any time.
- To change the cooking time, repeat step 3 and press **START**.
- If the oven clock is set as a 12-hour clock, you can delay the cook time for 12 hours. If the oven clock is set as a 24-hour clock, you can delay the cook time for 24 hours.

The oven will continue to cook for the set amount of time and then turn off automatically. When the cooking time has elapsed:

- **End** and the time of day show in the display.
- The cook end indicator tone sounds every 60 seconds until the oven mode knob is turned to the **OFF** position.

## Cook Time (Timed Cook)

Set the oven to cook for a specific length of time using the Timed Cook feature.

This feature can only be used with:

- Bake, Conv. Bake, Conv. Roast, Slow Cook, Air Fry and Frozen Meal modes on model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF.
- Bake mode on model LSEL6331\*.

#### Setting a Timed Cook

For example, to bake at 300 °F for 30 minutes, first set the clock to the correct time of day.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- **1** Turn the oven mode knob to select **Bake**. 350 °F appears in the display.
- 2 Set the temperature. For this example, press **minus(-)** until 300 °F appears in the display.

- **3** Press **Cook Time. Timed** flashes in the display. **Bake**, 0:00 and 300 °F appear in the display.
- **4** Set the baking time: Press plus(+) until 30:00 appears in the display.
  - The baking time can be set for any amount of time between 1 minute and 11 hours and 59 minutes
- 5 Press START.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- **1** Press **Bake**. 350 °F appears in the display.
- 2 Set the temperature. For this example, press **minus(-)** until 300 °F appears in the display.
- **3** Press **Cook Time**. **Timed** flashes in the display. **Bake**, 0:00 and 300 °F appear in the display.
- **4** Set the baking time: Press **plus(+)** until 30:00 appears in the display.
  - The baking time can be set for any amount of time between 1 minute and 11 hours and 59 minutes

## 5 Press START.

The oven will continue to cook for the set amount of time and then turn off automatically. When the cooking time has elapsed:

- **End** and the time of day show in the display.
- The cook end indicator tone sounds every 60 seconds until the oven mode knob is turned to the **OFF** position.

#### Changing the Cook Time during Cooking

For example, to change the cook time from 30 minutes to 1 hour and 30 minutes during cooking:

- 1 Press Cook Time.
- 2 Change the baking time: Press **plus(+)** until 1 hour and 30 minutes appears in the display.

**3** Press **START** to accept the change.

## Minimum & Maximum Default Settings

All of the features listed have a minimum and a maximum time or temperature setting that may be entered into the control. An entry acceptance beep sounds each time a control key is pressed.

An entry error tone (two short tones) sounds if the entry of the temperature or time is below the minimum or above the maximum setting for the feature.

† This feature is only available on some models.

Feature	Min.	Max.	Default
Timer	10 sec.	11 hr. 59 min.	
CookTime	1 min.	11 hr. 59 min.	
Conv. Bake <sup>†</sup>	300 ℉ (*275 ℉)	550 ℉ (*525 ℉)	350 °F (*325 °F) / 12 Hr.
Conv. Roast $^{\dagger}$	300 ℉ (*275 ℉)	550 ℉ (*525 ℉)	350 °F (*325 °F) / 12 Hr.
Broil	Lo	Hi	Hi / 3 Hr.
Bake	170 °F	550 °F	350 ℉ / 12 Hr.
Frozen Meal $^{\dagger}$	300 °F	550 °F	400 °F / 12 Hr.
Air Fry $^{\dagger}$	300 °F	550 °F	400 °F / 12 Hr.
Slow Cook $^{\dagger}$	Lo	Hi	Hi / 12 Hr.
Proof			12 Hr.
Warm			3 Hr.
Self Clean	3 Hr.	5 Hr.	4 Hr.
EasyClean <sup>®</sup>			10 min.

#### NOTE

<sup>• \* :</sup> Using auto conversion (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF\*)

• Default cook mode times are without setting cook time.

## Cooktop

## Before Using the Cooktop

## 🛕 WARNING

- Do not cook on a broken cooktop. If the cooktop is broken, cleaning solutions and spillovers may penetrate the broken cooktop and create a risk of electric shock. Contact a qualified technician immediately.
- Do not place or store items that can melt or catch fire on the glass cooktop, even when it is not being used.
- Never leave hot cookware or utensils near the control panel, as the heat could damage the control panel.
- Turn cookware handles inward so they don't extend over adjacent surface units. This reduces the risk of burns, ignition of flammable materials, and spillage due to unintentional contact with the cookware.
- Some cleaners can produce dangerous fumes if applied to a hot surface.
- Always place the pan in the center of the surface unit you are cooking on. Never leave surface units unattended at high heat settings. Proper contact of cookware to burner also will improve efficiency. Boilovers cause smoking and greasy spills that may catch on fire.
- Clean cooktop with caution. Do not use sponges or a cloth to wipe spills on a hot cooking area. Use a proper metal scraper. If a wet sponge or cloth is used to wipe spills on a hot cooking area, it can cause steam burns. Some cleaners can produce noxious fumes if applied to a hot surface.

## 

- Do not use the glass cooktop surface as a cutting board.
- Choose proper burner size. For smaller pots and pans, use the smaller heating elements. For larger pots and pans, use the larger heating elements. Select pans that have flat bottoms large enough to cover the heating elements. Using undersized pans exposes a portion of the

heating element to direct contact and may result in a burn or fire hazard.

- Glazed cookware. Only certain types of glass, glass-ceramic, ceramic, earthenware, or other glazed cookware are suitable for range-top service without breaking due to the sudden change in temperature.
- Never cook directly on the glass. Always use cookware.
- Always turn the surface units off before removing cookware.
- Immediately clean spills on the cooking area to prevent a tough cleaning chore later.
- Do not turn surface units on before placing cookware.
- Do not store heavy items above the cooktop surface that could fall and damage it.
- Do not place aluminum foil or plastic items such as salt and pepper shakers, spoon holders, or plastic wrappings or any other material on the range when it is in use.
- Do not use a steel-wool pad or scrub pad or abrasive cleaning pads. They can scratch the surface.

## **Cooking Areas**

The cooking areas on your range are identified by permanent circles on the glass cooktop surface. For the most efficient cooking, fit the pan size to the element size.

Pans should not extend more than 1/2 to 1-inch beyond the cooking area.

When a control is turned on, a glow can be seen through the glass cooktop surface.

#### NOTE

• It is normal for the surface elements to cycle on and off during cooking, even on higher settings. This will happen more frequently if cooking on a lower temperature setting.





#### 2 WARM ZONE

B DUAL

#### NOTE

• It is normal to see a very faint red ring around the outer edge of a dual or triple element when using it as a single element at a high heat setting. This is only a reflection from the bright glow of the center element and is not a malfunction.

## **Using the Cooktop Elements**

## 

- Only use cookware and dishes that are safe for oven and cooktop use.
- Always use oven mitts when removing food from the cooktop and oven.
- Do not place sealed containers on the cooktop.
- Do not use plastic wrap to cover food while on the cooktop. Plastic may melt onto the surface and be very difficult to remove.
- Never leave food on the cooktop unattended. Spillovers can cause smoke. Greasy spillovers may catch on fire.
- The surface element may appear to have cooled after it has been turned off. The element may still be hot and touching the element before it has cooled sufficiently can cause burns.
- Match the size of the cooktop element to the size of the cookware in use. Using a large element for a small pan wastes heating energy, and the exposed surface of the element is a burn or fire hazard.

#### NOTE

- Hot Surface Indicator
  - The hot surface indicator light glows as long as any surface cooking area is too hot to touch.
  - It remains on after the element is turned off and until the surface has cooled to approximately 150 °F.

#### **Turning on a Single Element**

**1** Push the Single element knob in ①.

- 2 Turn the knob in either direction to the desired setting ②.
  - The control knob clicks when it is positioned at both **OFF** and **HI**.





#### NOTE

- HI is the highest temperature available.
- LO is the lowest temperature available.

#### **Turning on a Dual Element**

Use the dual element as a dual or single element.

- **1** Push in the appropriate knob ①.
- 2 Turn the knob to use it as a single element or a dual element ②.
  - To use it as a single element, turn the knob counterclockwise.
  - To use it as a dual element, turn the knob clockwise.



	Icon Type 1	Icon Type 2
1 Dual	• •	Ø
Single	٠	0



## Turning on the Warm Zone

## 

- FOOD POISON HAZARD : Bacteria may grow in food at temperatures below 140 °F.
  - Always start with hot food. Do not use the warm setting to heat cold food.
  - Do not use the warm setting for more than 2 hours.

The Warm Zone, located in the back center of the glass surface, will keep hot, cooked food at serving temperature. Use the Warm Zone to keep food warm after it has already been cooked. Attempting to cook uncooked or cold food on the Warming Zone could result in a food-borne illness.

#### Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- 1 Push the **Warm Zone** element knob in ①.
- 2 Turn the knob in either direction to the desired setting ②.
  - The control knob clicks when it is positioned at **OFF** and **HI**.



#### Model LSEL6331\*

- 1 Press the COOKTOP Set/Off button. The Warm Zone indicator light flashes.
- **2** Use the **+**/- buttons to adjust the temperature setting.

**3** To turn off the **Warm Zone**, press the **Set/Off** button.

#### NOTE

- For best results, food on the warmer should be kept in its container or covered with a lid or aluminum foil to maintain food quality.
- The warmer will not glow red like the other cooking elements.

# The Recommended Surface Cooking Setting

Setting	Recommended Use
8.5-Hi	Bring liquid to a boil     Start cooking
	Start cooking
5.5-8.0	<ul> <li>Hold a rapid boil, frying, deep fat fry</li> </ul>
	Quickly brown or sear food
	Maintain a slow boil
3.5-5.0	<ul> <li>Fry or saute foods</li> </ul>
	Cook soups, sauces and gravies
2.2-3.0	• Stew or steam food
2.2-3.0	• Simmer
	• Keep food warm
Lo-2.0	Melt chocolate or butter
	• Simmer

## Using the Proper Cookware

The size and type of cookware will influence the settings needed for the best cooking results. Be sure to follow the recommendations for using proper cookware.

#### ΝΟΤΕ

• Match the size of the cookware to the amount of food being cooked to save energy when heating. Heating 1/2 quart of water requires more energy in a 3-quart pot than in a 1-quart pot.

Cookware should have flat bottoms that make good contact with the entire surface heating element. Check for flatness by placing a ruler across the bottom of the cookware. The ruler should touch the cookware across the entire bottom, with no gaps.

#### **Cookware Recommendations**

- Flat bottom and straight sides
- Heavy-gauge pans
- Pan sizes that match the amount of food to be prepared and the size of the surface element
- Weight of handle does not tilt pan. Pan is well balanced
- Tight-fitting lids
- Flat bottom woks

### **Cookware should not**

• have a curved or warped bottom.



• be smaller or larger than the surface burner.



• have a heavy handle that tilts the pan.



• be a wok with a ring stand.



- have loose or broken handles.
- have loose-fitting lids.

#### NOTE

- Do not use pans less than 7 inches in diameter on the front elements.
- Do not use foil or foil-type containers. Foil may melt onto the glass. Do not use the cooktop if metal has melted on it. Call an authorized LG Service Center.

## **Choosing Cookware**

The cookware material determines how evenly and quickly heat is transferred from the surface element to the pan bottom. The most popular materials available are:

- Aluminum Excellent heat conductor. Some types of food will cause it to darken (anodized aluminum cookware resists staining and pitting). If aluminum pans slide across the ceramic cooktop, they may leave metal marks which will resemble scratches. Remove these marks immediately.
- **Copper** Excellent heat conductor but discolors easily. May leave metal marks on glass-ceramic (see Aluminum above).
- **Stainless steel** Slow heat conductor with uneven cooking results. Is durable, easy to clean and resists staining.
- **Cast iron** A poor heat conductor but retains heat very well. Cooks evenly once cooking temperature is reached. Not recommended for use on ceramic cooktops.
- Porcelain-enamel on metal Heating characteristics will vary depending on base material. Porcelain-enamel coating must be smooth to avoid scratching ceramic cooktops.
- **Glass** Slow heat conductor. Not recommended for ceramic cooktop surfaces because it may scratch the glass.

## Home Canning Tips

Be sure that the canner is centered over the surface element and is flat on the bottom.

- The base must not be more than 1 inch larger than the element. Use of water bath canners with rippled bottoms may extend the time required to bring the water to a boil and may damage the cooktop.
- Some canners are designed with smaller bases for use on smooth surfaces.
- Use the high heat setting only until the water comes to a boil or pressure is reached in the canner.
- Reduce to the lowest heat setting that maintains the boil, or pressure. If the heat is not turned down, the cooktop may be damaged.

## Oven

## **Before Using the Oven**

#### NOTE

- Do not operate the oven without the charcoal heater mesh.
- Because the oven temperature cycles, an oven thermometer placed in the oven cavity may not show the same temperature that is set on the oven.
- It is normal for the convection fan to run while preheating during a regular bake cycle.
- The convection fan motor may run periodically during a regular bake cycle.
- The heat turns off if the door is left open during baking. If the door is left open for longer than 30 seconds during baking, the heat turns off. The heat turns back on automatically once the door is closed.
- Avoid opening the oven door more than necessary during use. This helps the oven maintain temperature, prevents unnecessary heat loss, and saves on energy use.

## **Oven Vent**

Areas near the vent may become hot during operation and may cause burns. Do not block the vent opening. Avoid placing plastics near the vent as heat may distort or melt the plastic.

It is normal for steam to be visible when cooking foods with high moisture content.



- Oven Vent
- 2 Vent trim

## **A** CAUTION

• The edges of the range vent are sharp. Wear gloves when cleaning the range to avoid injury.

## **Using Oven Racks**

The racks have a turned-up back edge that prevents them from being pulled out of the oven cavity.

## 

- Replace oven racks before turning the oven on to prevent burns.
- Do not cover the racks with aluminum foil, or any other material, or place anything on the bottom of the oven. Doing so will result in poor baking and may damage the oven bottom.
- Only arrange oven racks when the oven is cool.
- Do not place objects heavier than 33 lb (15 kg) on the racks. Do not place heavy objects on the corners of the racks. Doing so can damage the racks.

## **Removing Racks**

- **1** Pull the rack straight out until it stops.
- 2 Lift up the front of the rack and pull it out.

## **Replacing Racks**

- **1** Place the end of the rack on the support.
- **2** Tilt the front end up and push the rack in.

## Bake

Bake is used to prepare foods such as pastries, breads and casseroles.

The oven can be programmed to bake at any temperature from 170 °F (80 °C) to 550 °F (285 °C). The default temperature is 350 °F (175 °C).

#### Setting the Bake Function (For example, to bake at 375 °F) Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- **1** Turn the oven mode knob to select **Bake**.
- 2 Set the oven temperature: Press **plus(+)** until 375 °F appears in the display.

**3** Press **START**. The oven starts to preheat.

#### NOTE

- As the oven preheats, the temperature is displayed and rises in 5-degree increments.
   Once the oven reaches the set temperature, a tone sounds and the oven light blinks on and off.
- 4 When cooking is complete, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.
- **5** Remove the food from the oven.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- **1** Press **Bake**. 350 °F appears in the display.
- 2 Set the oven temperature: Press **plus(+)** until 375 °F appears in the display.
- **3** Press **START**. The oven starts to preheat.

#### NOTE

 As the oven preheats, the temperature is displayed and rises in 5-degree increments.
 Once the oven reaches the set temperature, a tone sounds and the oven light blinks on and off.

4 When cooking is complete, press CLEAR/OFF.

**5** Remove the food from the oven.

#### NOTE

• It is normal for the convection fan to operate periodically throughout a normal bake cycle in the oven. This is to ensure even baking results.

## **Baking Tips**

- Baking time and temperature will vary depending on the characteristics, size, and shape of the baking pan used.
- Check for food doneness at the minimum recipe time.
- Use metal bakeware (with or without a nonstick finish), heatproof glass-ceramic, ceramic or other bakeware recommended for oven use.

- Dark metal pans or nonstick coatings will cook food faster with more browning. Insulated bakeware will slightly lengthen the cooking time for most foods.
- The oven bottom has a porcelain-enamel finish. To make cleaning easier, protect the oven bottom from excessive spillovers by placing a cookie sheet on the rack below the rack you are cooking on. This is particularly important when baking a fruit pie or other foods with a high acid content. Hot fruit fillings or other foods that are highly acidic may cause pitting and damage to the porcelain-enamel surface and should be wiped up immediately.

## Convection Mode (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

The convection system uses a fan to circulate the heat evenly within the oven. Improved heat distribution allows for even cooking and excellent results while cooking with single or multiple racks.

#### **Setting the Convection Function**

#### (For example, cooking at 375 °F)

- Turn the oven mode knob to select Conv.
   Bake or Conv. Roast. The display flashes 350
   °F.
- 2 Set the oven temperature: Press **plus(+)** until 375 °F appears in the display.
- **3** Press **START**. The display shows **Conv. Bake** or **Conv. Roast** and the oven temperature starting at 100 °F.
  - As the oven preheats, the display shows increasing temperatures in 5-degree increments. Once the oven reaches the set adjusted temperature, a tone sounds and the oven light flashes on and off. The display shows the auto-converted oven temperature, 350 °F and the fan icon.
- **4** When cooking has finished or to cancel, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.

#### NOTE

• The oven fan runs while convection baking. The fan stops when the door is open. In some cases, the fan may shut off during a convection bake cycle.

### **Tips for Convection Baking**

- Use Convection Bake for faster and more even multiple-rack cooking of pastries, cookies, muffins, biscuits, and breads of all kinds.
- Bake cookies and biscuits on pans with no sides or very low sides to allow heated air to circulate around the food. Food baked on pans with a dark finish will cook faster.
- When using Convection Bake, place the oven racks in positions suggested in the charts in this manual.
- Multiple oven rack cooking may slightly increase cook times for some foods.
- Cakes, cookies and muffins have better results when using multiple racks.

#### **Tips for Convection Roasting**

The Convection Roast feature is designed to give optimum roasting performance. Convection Roast combines cooking with the convection fan to roast meats and poultry. The heated air circulates around the food from all sides, sealing in juices and flavors. Foods are crispy brown on the outside while staying moist on the inside. Convection roasting is especially good for large tender cuts of meat, uncovered.

Use a broiler pan and grid when preparing meats for convection roasting. The broiler pan catches grease spills and the grid helps prevent grease splatters.

- **1** Place the oven rack in the recommended position.
- **2** Place the grid in the broiler pan.
- **3** Place the broiler pan on the oven rack.





- Grid (sold separately)
- 2 Broiler pan (sold separately)

## A CAUTION

- Do not use a broiler pan without a grid.
- Do not cover the grid with aluminum foil.

• Position food (fat side up) on the grid.

## Recommended Baking and Roasting Guide

Baking results will be better if baking pans are centered in the oven as much as possible. If cooking on multiple racks, place the oven racks in the positions shown.

Multiple-rack cooking saves time and energy. Whenever possible, cook foods requiring the same cooking temperature together in one oven.

## Rack and Pan Placement







## **Baking Rack Guide**

	Rack position	
Cakes	Layer cakes Bundt cakes Angel food cake	4 3 3

	Food			
Cookies	Sugar cookies Chocolate chips Brownies	4 4 4		
Pizza	Fresh Frozen	3 3 or 2		
Pastry Crust	From scratch Refrigerated	4 4		
Breads	Biscuit, canned Biscuit, from scratch Muffins	3 3 5		
Desserts	Fruit crisps and cobblers, from scratch Pies, from scratch, 2- crust fruit	4 4		
Custards	Cheesecake, crème brulée	2		
Soufflés	Sweet or savory	2		
Casserole	Frozen lasagna	3		

## **Roasting Rack Guide**

	Food						
	Rare Rib Medium Well done		2 2 2				
Beef	Boneless rib, top sirloin	Rare Medium Well done	2 2 2				
	Tenderloin Rare Medium		2 2				
	Rib	2					
Pork	Bone-in, sirl	2					
	Ham, cooke	2					
	Whole chicken				Whole chicken		2
Poultry	Chicken pied	2					
	Turkey		2				

## Broil

The Broil function uses intense heat from the upper heating element to cook food. Broiling works best for tender cuts of meat, fish, and thinly cut vegetables. Some models may feature a hybrid broiler consisting of an inner broiler that utilizes a carbon heating element which provides instantaneous heat, and a traditional outer broiling element. During normal broiler operation, it is normal for either element to cycle off intermittently.

## 

- Do not use a broiler pan without a grid. Oil can cause a grease fire.
- Do not cover the grid and broiler pan with aluminum foil. Doing so will cause a fire.
- Always use a broiler pan and grid for excess fat and grease drainage. This will help to reduce splatter, smoke, and flare-ups.
- When using your broiler, the temperature inside the oven will be extremely high. Take care to avoid possible burns by:
  - Keeping the door closed when broiling
  - Always wearing oven mitts when inserting or removing food items

### NOTE

• This range is designed for closed-door broiling. Close the door to set the Broil function. If the door is open, the Broil function cannot be set and "door" appears on the display. Close the door and reset the Broil function. If the door is opened during broiling, the broil burner turns off after five seconds. The broiler turns back on automatically once the door is closed.

#### Setting the Oven to Broil Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- Turn the oven mode knob to select Broil.
   Press +/- on the control panel to switch between Hi and Lo.
- **2** Press **START**. The oven begins to heat.
- 3 Let the oven preheat for approximately five minutes before cooking the food if using **Broil**.
- 4 Place food in the oven.
- **5** Close the oven door. The oven door must be closed during broiling.

#### 40 OPERATION

**6** Turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position to cancel at any time or when cooking is complete.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- **1** Press **Broil**. Press **Broil** repeatedly to switch between **Hi** and **Lo**.
- **2** Press **START**. The oven begins to heat.
- Let the oven preheat for approximately five minutes before cooking the food if using Broil.
- 4 Place food in the oven.
- **5** Close the oven door. The oven door must be closed during broiling.
- **6** Press **CLEAR/OFF** to cancel at any time or when cooking is complete.

#### **Tips for Reducing Smoke**

Due to the intense heat associated with broiling, it is normal to experience smoke during the cooking process. This smoke is a natural byproduct of searing and should not cause you to worry. If you

## **Recommended Broiling Guide**

are experiencing more smoke than you are comfortable with, use the following tips to reduce the amount of smoke in your oven.

- Always use a broiler pan. Do not use saute pans or regular baking sheets for safety reasons.
- The broiler pan should always be thoroughly cleaned and at room temperature at the beginning of cooking.
- Always run your cooktop ventilation system or vent hood during broiling.
- Keep the interior of your oven as clean as possible. Leftover debris from prior meals can burn or catch fire.
- Avoid fatty marinades and sugary glazes. Both of these will increase the amount of smoke you experience. If you would like to use a glaze, apply it at the very end of cooking.
- If you are experiencing significant smoke with any food item, consider:
  - Lowering the broiler to the **Lo** setting.
  - Lowering the rack position to cook the food farther away from the broiler.
  - Using the **Hi** broil setting to achieve the level of searing you desire, and then either switching to the **Lo** broil setting, or switching to the Bake function.
- As a rule, fattier cuts of meat and fish will produce more smoke than leaner items.
- Adhere to the guidelines in the **Recommended Broiling Guide** section whenever possible.

The size, weight, thickness, starting temperature, and your preference of doneness will affect broiling times.

This guide is based on meats at refrigerator temperature. For best results when broiling, use a pan designed for broiling.



**1** Grid (sold separately)

2 Broiler pan (sold separately)

Food	Quantity and/or Thickness		Rack Position	First Side (min.)	Second Side (min.)	Comments
Hamburgers	4 patties ${}^{1}/_{2}$ to ${}^{3}/_{4}$ " thick (12.7 to 19.0 mm thick)		7	4-6	2-4	Space evenly. Up to 8 patties may be broiled at once.
	1" thick	Rare	7	3-5	2-4	
	(25.4 mm thick) 1 to 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> lbs.	Medium	7	4-6	2-4	Steaks less than 1"
Beef Steaks	(0.5 to 0.7 kg)	Well done	7	5-7	3-5	thick cook through before browning. Pan
Deel Sleaks	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " thick	Rare	5	7-9	4-6	frying is recommended. Slash
	(38.1 mm thick) 2 to $2^{1}/_{2}$ lbs.	Medium	5	9-11	6-8	fat.
	(0.9 to 1.1 kg)	Well done	5	11-13	8-10	
Toast	1 to 9 pieces		7	0.5-1	0.5	
Chicken	1 whole, 2 to 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> lbs. (0.9 to 1.1 kg), split lengthwise		5	8-10	4-6	Broil skin-side-down first.
	2 Breasts		5	8-10	5-7	
Lobster Tails	2–4 10 to 12 oz. (0.28 to 0.34 kg) each		5	9-12	Do not turn over	Cut through back of shell. Spread open. Brush with melted butter before broiling and halfway through broiling time.
Fish Fillets	$^{1}/_{4}$ to $^{1}/_{2}$ " thick (6.4 to 12.7 mm thick)		6	2-4	2-4	Handle and turn very carefully. Brush with lemon butter before and during cooking, if desired.
Ham Slices (precooked)	<sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " thick (12.7 mm thick)		5	2-4	2-4	Increase time 5 to 10 minutes per side for 1 1/2" thick or home- cured ham.
Pork Chops	$2(^{1}/_{2}"$ thick (12.7	mm thick))	6	3-6	4-7	
Well done	2 about 1lb. (0.5 kg) 1" thick (25.4 mm thick)		5	5-8	5-8	
	2 about 10 to 12	Medium	6	3-5	2-5	
Lamb Chops	oz. (0.28 to 0.34 kg) 1" thick (25.4 mm thick)	Well done	6	5-7	4-7	
	2 about 1lb. (0.5	Medium	6	7-9	7-9	]
	kg) 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " thick (38.1 mm thick)		6	9-11	7-9	

## 42 OPERATION

Food	Quantity and/or Thickness	Rack Position	First Side (min.)	Second Side (min.)	Comments
Salmon Steaks	2 1" thick (25.4 mm thick)	5	8-10	3-5	Grease pan. Brush steaks with melted
Samon Steaks	4 about 1 lb. (0.5 kg) 1" thick (25.4 mm thick)	5	9-11	4-6	butter.

• This guide is only for reference. Adjust cook time according to your preference.

#### NOTE

- The USDA advises that consuming raw or undercooked fish, meat, or poultry can increase your risk of food-borne illness.
- The USDA has indicated the following as safe minimum internal temperatures for consumption:
  - Ground beef: 160 °F (71.1 °C)
  - Poultry: 165 °F (73.9 °C)
  - Beef, veal, pork, or lamb: 145 °F (62.8 °C)
  - Fish / Seafood: 145 °F (62.8 °C)

#### **Tips for Broiling**

#### • Beef

- Steaks and chops should always be allowed to rest for five minutes before being cut into and eaten. This allows the heat to distribute evenly through the food and creates a more tender and juicy result.
- Pieces of meat that are thicker than two inches should be removed from the refrigerator 30 minutes prior to cooking. This will help them cook more quickly and evenly, and will produce less smoke when broiling. Cooking times will likely be shorter than the times indicated in the Broiling Chart.
- For bone-in steaks or chops that have been frenched (all meat removed from around the bone), wrap the exposed sections of bone in foil to reduce burning.
- Seafood
  - When broiling skin-on fish, always use the Lo broil setting and always broil the skin side last.
  - Seafood is best consumed immediately after cooking. Allowing seafood to rest after cooking can cause the food to dry out.
  - It is a good idea to rub a thin coating of oil on the surface of the broiling pan before cooking to reduce sticking, especially with fish and seafood. You can also use a light coating of non-stick pan spray.

#### Vegetables

- Toss your vegetables lightly in oil before cooking to improve browning.

## Proof

This feature maintains a warm oven for rising yeast-leavened products before baking.

#### Setting the Proof Function Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

**1** Use rack position 2 or 3 for proofing.



2 Turn the oven mode knob to select **Proof/** Warm.



- **3** Press **START**.
- **4** Turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position when proofing is finished.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

**1** Use rack position 2 or 3 for proofing.



## 2 Press Proof/Warm.



**3** Press **START**.

## **4** Press **CLEAR/OFF** when proofing is finished.

### NOTE

- To avoid lowering the oven temperature and lengthening proofing time, do not open the oven door unnecessarily. Check bread products early to avoid over proofing.
- Do not use the Proofing mode for warming food or keeping food hot. The proofing oven temperature is not hot enough to keep foods at safe temperatures. Use the Warm feature to keep food warm. Proofing does not operate when the oven is above 125 °F. **Hot** shows in the display.
- It is normal for the fan to operate during the Proof function.

## Warm

This function maintains an oven temperature of 170 °F. The Warm function may be used without any other cooking operations.

#### Setting the Warm Function Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- 1 Turn the oven mode knob to select **Proof/** Warm.
- 2 Press +/- on the control panel to switch between **Proof** and **Warm**.



- **3** Press **START**.
- **4** To cancel the Warm function, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

1 Press **Proof/Warm** repeatedly to switch between **Proof** and **Warm**.



- 2 Press START.
- **3** To cancel the Warm function, press **CLEAR**/**OFF**.

• The Warm function is intended to keep food warm. Do not use it to cool food down.

## Keep Warm

This function maintains an oven temperature of 170 °F. The Keep Warm function will keep cooked food warm for serving up to 3 hours after cooking has finished. The Keep Warm function should be used with any other cooking except **Broil** and **Proof**. The Keep Warm function can be used after cooking has finished using a Timed Cook.

#### Setting the Keep Warm Function after a Timed Cook Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- **1** Select the cooking mode.
- 2 Enter the oven temperature using the +/- keys.
- **3** Press **Cook Time** and enter the cook time using the **+**/- keys.
- 4 Press Keep Warm. Warm appears in the display.



#### NOTE

• To cancel the Keep Warm setting, press **Keep Warm** again.

- 5 Press START.
- **6** To cancel the Keep Warm operation, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

- **1** Select the cooking mode.
- 2 Enter the oven temperature using the +/- keys.
- **3** Press **Cook Time** and enter the cook time using the **+**/- keys.
- 4 Press **Proof/Warm**. **Warm** appears in the display.



#### NOTE

- To cancel the Keep Warm setting, press **Proof/ Warm** again.
- 5 Press START.
- 6 To cancel the Keep Warm operation, press CLEAR/OFF.

#### NOTE

- The **Keep Warm** function is intended to keep food warm. Do not use it to cool food down.
- It is normal for the fan to operate during the **Keep Warm** function.
- The Keep Warm function will be maintained for up to 3 hours unless you turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position or press **CLEAR/OFF**.

## Air Fry (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

This feature automatically increases the entered temperature for optimal performance when using Air Fry.

The Air Fry function is specially designed for oil-free frying.

## **Setting the Air Fry Function**

- Turn the oven mode knob to select Air Fry.
   400 °F appears in the display.
- 2 Set the oven temperature. (Range: 300 °F ~ 550 °F)
- **3** Press **START**.
- 4 When cooking is complete, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.

#### NOTE

- No preheating is required when using the Air Fry mode.
- If cooking multiple batches, the later batches may take less time to cook.
- Wet batters and coatings will not crisp or set when using the Air Fry mode.

## **Tips for Air Fry**

- For best results, use the provided air fry tray.
  - The mesh section of the air fry tray can be cleaned in a dishwasher.



Air Fry Tray

- 2 Standard Rack
- If you don't have the air fry tray, place food on a wire rack inside a foil-lined broiler pan.



Broiler Pan

• For best results, cook food on a single rack placed in positions suggested in the chart in this manual.

- The mesh section of the air fry tray can be cleaned in a dishwasher.
- Spread the food out evenly in a single layer.
- Use either the optional air fry tray available from LG or a dark baking tray with no sides or short sides that does not cover the entire rack. This allows for better air circulation.
- If desired, spray the baking tray or air fry tray with a pan spray. Use an oil that can be heated to a high temperature before smoking, such as avocado, grapeseed, peanut or sunflower oil.
- Place a foil-lined baking tray on a rack in position 2 to catch the oil falling from the food. For high-fat foods like chicken wings, add a few sheets of parchment paper to absorb the fat.
- Check food often and shake it or turn it over for crisper results.
- Prepared frozen foods may cook faster with the Air Fry mode than stated on the package. Reduce the cooking time by about 20 percent, check food early, and adjust cooking time as needed.
- Use a food thermometer to make sure food has reached a safe temperature for consumption. Eating undercooked meats can increase your risk of food-borne illness.
- For the crispiest results, dredge fresh chicken wings or tenders in seasoned flour. Use 1/3 cup flour for 2 pounds of chicken.

## Recommendations When Air Frying High-Fat Foods

Foods high in fat will smoke when using the Air Fry mode. For best results, follow these recommendations when air frying foods that are high in fat, such as chicken wings, bacon, sausage, hot dogs, turkey legs, lamb chops, ribs, pork loin, duck breasts, or some plant-based proteins.

## 

- Never cover slots, holes, or passages in the oven bottom or cover entire racks with materials such as aluminum foil. Doing so blocks airflow through the oven and can result in carbon monoxide poisoning. Aluminum foil can also trap heat, causing a fire hazard or poor oven performance.
- Clean the grease filters on your exhaust hood regularly.
- Turn on your exhaust hood at a high fan setting before you start Air Fry and leave it on for 15 minutes after you're done.

#### 46 OPERATION

- Open a window or sliding glass door, if possible, to make sure the kitchen is well-ventilated.
- Keep the oven free from grease buildup. Wipe down the interior of the oven before and after air frying (once the oven has cooled).
- Run oven cleaning cycles (Easy Clean or SelfClean) regularly, depending on how often and what types of food you Air Fry.
- Avoid opening the oven door more than necessary to help maintain the oven temperature, prevent heat loss, and save energy.
- Air-frying fresh chicken pieces such as wings or drumsticks with the skin left on can produce smoke as the fat renders at high temperatures. If the smoke is excessive, use the Convection Roast mode instead of Air Fry.

## **Recommended Air Frying Guide**

- Arrange food evenly in a single layer.
- Put a foil-lined baking pan on a rack in position 2 to catch drips. If needed, add parchment paper to absorb oil and reduce smoking.
- Flip food over during cooking to avoid burning it.
- <sup>†</sup> High-fat items may produce more smoke when cooked using Air Fry. For less smoke, cook using Convection Roast mode.

Recommended Items	Quantity (oz/ kg)	Temp. (°F/ °C)	Rack Position	Time	Guide			
POTATOES-Frozen								
Frozen French Fries (Shoestring)	20 / 0.6	425 / 220	4	20-30	-			
Frozen French Fries (Crinkle cut, 3/8" or 10 mm)	35 / 1.0	425 / 220	4	25-35	-			
Frozen Sweet Potato Fries	25 / 0.7	425 / 220	4	20-35	-			
Frozen Tater Tots	50 / 1.4	450 / 230	4	22-32	-			
Frozen Hash Browns	40 / 1.1	450 / 230	4	25-35	-			
POTATOES-Fresh/Homem	ade							
Homemade French Fries (3/8" x 3/8" or 10 x 10 mm)	25 / 0.7	450 / 230	4	35-45	Cut the potatoes and soak for 30 minutes in hot tap water. Drain and pat dry.			
Homemade Potato Wedges	60 / 1.7	450 / 230	4	35-45	Brush or lightly spray with 3 tbsp. of oil. Add salt and pepper to taste.			
CHICKEN-Frozen				•				
Frozen Chicken Nuggets, Crispy	30 / 0.9	450 / 230	4	18-28	-			
Frozen Chicken Strips	35 / 1.0	450 / 230	4	30-40	-			
Frozen Hot Wings, Bone- in	50 / 1.4	450 / 230	4	30-40	-			
CHICKEN-Fresh, Skin on								

ENGLISH

Recommended Items	Quantity (oz/ kg)	Temp. (°F/ °C)	Rack Position	Time	Guide
Fresh Chicken Wings <sup>†</sup>	40 / 1.1	450 / 230	4	30-35	Brush or lightly spray with 3 tbsp. of oil. Add salt and
Fresh Chicken Drumsticks <sup>†</sup>	70 / 2.0	450 / 230	4	35-45	pepper to taste.
Thighs	40 / 1.1	450 / 230	4	30-35	
Breasts	40 / 1.1	450 / 230	4	30-35	
OTHER					
Frozen Onion Rings, Breaded	20 / 0.6	450 / 230	4	20-30	-
Frozen Spring Rolls (0.7 oz each)	50 / 1.4	425 / 220	4	28-38	-
Thin Sausage <sup>†</sup> (2.5 oz each, diameter 0.8")	90 / 2.6	450 / 230	4	25-35	-
Frozen Coconut Shrimp	25 / 0.7	425 / 220	4	30-40	Brush or lightly spray the surface of food with oil.
Fresh Scallops on the half shell (35.3 oz)	35 / 1.0	425 / 220	4	20-30	Melt 4 tbsp. of butter and brush on scallops. Mix 1/2 cup bread crumbs, 1 tbsp. minced garlic, 1/4 cup grated parmesan cheese and season to taste. Sprinkle mixture over scallops.
Fresh Shrimp	50 / 1.4	450 / 230	4	20-30	-
Mixed Vegetables	35 / 1.0	450 / 230	4	17-28	Brush or lightly spray with 4 tbsp. of olive oil. Add salt and pepper to taste.

## Frozen Meal (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

The Frozen Meal function is specially designed for cooking frozen prepared meals. It heats from both the top and bottom to brown food more evenly.

This system is designed to give the optimum cooking performance by automatically selecting a combination of the broil and bake heating systems. No preheating is required when using the Frozen Meal mode. For best results with frozen pizza, cook food on a single rack placed in position 5 at 400 °F.

## Setting the Frozen Meal Function

1 Turn the oven mode knob to select **Frozen Meal. Frozen** appears in the display.

- 2 Enter the cook temperature using the +/- keys.
- **3** Press **START**. The Frozen Meal function starts operation.
- 4 When cooking is complete, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.

#### NOTE

• To cancel the Frozen Meal function during use, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position at any time.

## Slow Cook (Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF)

The Slow Cook function is specially designed for grilling beef, pork and poultry. It is common for the surface of the food to darken after the completion of the Slow Cook. No preheating is required when using the Slow Cook mode.

## **Setting the Slow Cook Function**

- 1 Turn the oven mode knob to select **Slow Cook**. **Hi** appears in the display.
- 2 Press plus(+) or minus (-) to select Hi and Lo.
  - Hi: 275 °F
  - Lo: 220 °F
- **3** Press **START**.
  - The Slow Cook function starts operation.
- 4 When cooking is complete, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position.

## NOTE

- To cancel Slow Cook during use, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position at any time.
- For best results, use a single rack in position 1 or 2.

## **Remote Start**

If the appliance is connected to a home Wi-Fi network, this function starts preheating and then holds the temperature for up to 12 hours (including preheating time). If the appliance is not connected to the network, **OFF** appears in the display. Follow the instructions in the Smart Functions section to connect the appliance to the network.

## Setting Remote Start Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

1 Open the oven door to make sure the oven is empty and ready for pre-heating. Close the oven door.

- 2 Turn the oven mode knob to select **Remote Start**.
- **3** Follow the directions in the smart phone application to set the cook mode, temperature, and run time (preheating time plus holding time).

#### Model LSEL6331\*

1 Open the oven door to make sure the oven is empty and ready for pre-heating. Close the oven door.

## 2 Press Remote Start.

**3** Follow the directions in the smart phone application to set the cook mode, temperature, and run time (preheating time plus holding time).

## Using the Sabbath Mode

Sabbath mode is typically used on the Jewish Sabbath and Holidays. When the Sabbath mode is activated, the oven does not turn off until the Sabbath mode is deactivated. In Sabbath mode, all function buttons are inactive. 5b will appear in the display.

## Model LSEL6333\*, LSEL633CF

- **1** Turn the oven mode knob to select **Bake**.
- 2 Set the Bake temperature using the +/- keys.
- **3** Press **START**.
- Press and hold Start Time for three seconds.
   5b appears in the display when the Sabbath mode is activated.
- **5** To stop Sabbath mode, press and hold **Start Time** for three seconds. To cancel the Bake function, set the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position at any time.

#### Model LSEL6331\*

1 Press Bake.

- 2 Set the Bake temperature using the +/- keys.
- **3** Press **START**.
- 4 Press and hold **Clock** for three seconds. 5b appears in the display when the Sabbath mode is activated.
- **5** To stop the Sabbath mode, press and hold **Clock** for three seconds. To cancel the Bake function, set the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position at any time.

- If a cook time is set, the oven turns off automatically at the end of the cook time, without chiming. The oven remains in Sabbath mode, but is turned off.
- If no cook time is set, the oven will not automatically turn off.
- After a power failure, the display will turn back on in Sabbath mode, but the oven will be off.
- Always close the oven door before engaging Sabbath Mode.

## **SMART FUNCTIONS**

## LG ThinQ Application

This feature is only available on models with Wi-Fi.

The **LG ThinQ** application allows you to communicate with the appliance using a smartphone.

## LG ThinQ Application Features

#### • Smart Diagnosis™

- This function provides useful information for diagnosing and solving issues with the appliance based on the pattern of use.
- Settings
  - Allows you to set various options on the oven and in the application.
- Scan to Cook
  - Scan the barcode on a ready-made meal using the LG ThinQ application and send the recommended or customized cooking instructions straight to your oven. Remote Start must be activated on the oven to use Scan to Cook.
- Monitoring
  - This function helps you check the current status, remaining time, cook settings and end time in one place.
- Product Notifications
  - Turn on the Push Alerts to receive appliance status notifications. The notifications are triggered even if the **LG ThinQ** application is off.
- Timer
  - You can set the timer from the application.
- Firmware Update
  - Keep the appliance updated.

#### NOTE

- If you change your wireless router, Internet service provider, or password, delete the connected appliance from the **LG ThinQ** application and connect it again.
- This information is current at the time of publication. The application is subject to change for product improvement purposes without notice to users.
- Scan to Cook cannot be used while the timer is running. Cancel the timer operation to use Scan to Cook.

## Installing LG ThinQ Application and Connecting an LG Appliance

## Models with QR Code

Scan the QR code attached to the product using the camera or a QR code reader application on your smartphone.



## Models without QR Code

- **1** Search for and install the **LG ThinQ** application from the Google Play Store or Apple App Store on a smartphone.
- 2 Run the LG ThinQ application and sign in with your existing account or create an LG account to sign in.
- **3** Touch the add (+) button on the **LG ThinQ** application to connect your LG appliance. Follow the instructions in the application to complete the process.

## NOTE

- To verify the Wi-Fi connection, check that the <sup></sup>

   icon on the control panel is lit.
- The appliance supports 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi networks only. To check your network frequency, contact your Internet service provider or refer to your wireless router manual.
- LG ThinQ is not responsible for any network connection problems or any faults, malfunctions, or errors caused by network connection.
- The surrounding wireless environment can make the wireless network service run slowly.
- If the distance between the appliance and the wireless router is too far, the signal becomes weak. It may take a long time to connect or fail to install the application.
- If the appliance is having trouble connecting to the Wi-Fi network, it may be too far from the

router. Purchase a Wi-Fi repeater (range extender) to improve the Wi-Fi signal strength.

- The network connection may not work properly depending on the Internet service provider.
- The Wi-Fi may not connect or the connection may be interrupted because of the home network environment.
- If the appliance cannot be connected due to problems with the wireless signal transmission, unplug the appliance and wait about a minute before trying again.
- If the firewall on your wireless router is enabled, disable the firewall or add an exception to it.
- The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)
- Smartphone user interface (UI) may vary depending on the mobile operating system (OS) and the manufacturer.
- If the security protocol of the router is set to **WEP**, network setup may fail. Change the security protocol (**WPA2** is recommended), and connect the product again.
- To disable the **Wi-Fi** function, press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button for 3 seconds. The **Wi-Fi** indicator will be turned off.
- To reconnect the appliance or add another user, press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button for 3 seconds. Run the **LG ThinQ** application and follow the instructions in the application to connect the appliance.

## Wireless LAN Module Specifications

Frequency Range	2412 - 2462 MHz
Output Power (Max)	< 30 dBm

## FCC Statement

The following notice covers the transmitter module contained in this product.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This transmitter must not be colocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm (7.8 inches) between the antenna and your body. Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

## Open Source Software Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligation to disclose source code, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents, please visit https:// opensource.lge.com. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com.

This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

## Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> Feature

This feature is only available on models with the log or logo.

Use this feature to help you diagnose and solve problems with your appliance.

#### NOTE

- For reasons not attributable to LGE's negligence, the service may not operate due to external factors such as, but not limited to, Wi-Fi unavailability, Wi-Fi disconnection, local app store policy, or app unavailability.
- The feature may be subject to change without prior notice and may have a different form depending on where you are located.

## Using LG ThinQ to Diagnose Issues

If you experience a problem with your Wi-Fi equipped appliance, it can transmit troubleshooting data to a smartphone using the **LG ThinQ** application.

• Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis feature in the menu. Follow the instructions provided in the LG ThinQ application.

## Using Audible Diagnosis to Diagnose Issues

Follow the instructions below to use the audible diagnosis method.

- Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis feature in the menu. Follow the instructions for audible diagnosis provided in the LG ThinQ application.
- **1** Press the **START** button for 3 seconds.
  - If the display has been locked, you must deactivate the lock and then reactivate it.

**2** Hold the mouthpiece of your phone in front of the Smart Diagnosis logo located on the control panel.



• Max: 3/8" (10 mm)

**3** Keep the phone in place until the tone transmission has finished. The display will count down the time. Once the countdown is over and the tones have stopped, the diagnosis will be displayed in the application.

#### NOTE

• For best results, do not move the phone while the tones are being transmitted.

## MAINTENANCE

## Cleaning

## 

- Do not clean this appliance with bleach.
- To prevent burns, wait until the cooktop has cooled down before touching any of its parts.
- Always wear gloves when cleaning the cooktop.

## Interior

Do not use oven cleaners to clean the oven cavity. Use the product's **EasyClean** function regularly to clean light soil. For stubborn soil, use the **Self Clean** function (on some models) or clean manually using the following tips.

- A plastic spatula can be used as a scraper to scrape off any chunks or debris before and during oven cleaning.
- Using the rough side of a non-scratch scouring pad may help to take off burnt-on stains better than a soft sponge or towel.
- Certain non-scratch scrubbing sponges, such as those made of melamine foam, available at local stores, can also help improve cleaning.

## **CAUTION**

- Do not use oven cleaners, harsh chemical cleaners, bleach, vinegar, steel scouring pads, or abrasive pads or cleansers to clean the oven, as they can permanently damage the oven surface.
- Do not clean the gasket.

## Exterior

## **Control Panel**

To prevent activating the control panel during cleaning, disconnect power to the appliance. Clean up splatters with a damp cloth using a glass cleaner. Remove heavier soil with warm, soapy water. Do not use abrasives of any kind.

## Front Manifold Panel and Knobs

It is best to clean the manifold panel after each use of the range. For cleaning, use a damp cloth and mild soapy water or a 50/50 solution of vinegar and water. Rinse with clean water and polish dry with a soft cloth.

## 

- Do not use abrasive cleansers, strong liquid cleaners, plastic scouring pads or oven cleaners on the manifold panel. Doing so will damage the finish.
- Do not try to bend the knobs by pulling them up or down, and do not hang a towel or other objects on them. This can damage the gas valve shaft.
- The control knobs may be removed for easy cleaning.
- To clean the knobs, make sure that they are in the **OFF** position and pull them straight off the stems.
- To replace the knobs, make sure the knob has the **OFF** position centered at the top, and slide the knob directly onto the stem.

#### NOTE

• To prevent scratching, do not use abrasive cleaners on any of these materials.

## Painted and Decorative Trim

For general cleaning, use a cloth with hot soapy water. For more difficult soil and built-up grease, apply a liquid detergent directly onto the soil. Leave it on for 30 to 60 minutes. Rinse with a damp cloth and dry. Do not use abrasive cleaners.

## **Stainless Steel Surfaces**

To avoid scratches, do not use steel wool pads.

- 1 Place a small amount of stainless steel appliance cleaner or polish on a damp cloth or paper towel.
- **2** Clean a small area, rubbing with the grain of the stainless steel if applicable.
- **3** Dry and buff with a clean, dry paper towel or soft cloth.
- **4** Repeat as necessary.

- To clean the stainless steel surface, use warm sudsy water or a stainless steel cleaner or polish.
- Always wipe in the direction of the metal surface finish.
- Stainless steel appliance cleaner or polish can be purchased online or from most retailers of appliances or home goods.

## Oven Door

## **A** CAUTION

- Do not use harsh cleaners or harsh abrasive cleaning materials on the outside of the oven door. Doing so can cause damage.
- Use soapy water to thoroughly clean the oven door. Rinse well. Do not immerse the door in water.
- You may use a glass cleaner on the outside glass of the oven door. Do not spray water or glass cleaner on the door vents.
- Do not use oven cleaners, cleaning powders, or harsh abrasive cleaning materials on the outside of the oven door.
- Do not clean the oven door gasket. The oven door gasket is made of a woven material that is essential for a good seal. Care should be taken not to rub, damage, or remove this gasket.



- 1 Don't hand clean oven door gasket
- 2 Do hand clean door

## **Broiler Pan and Grid**



• Do not store a soiled broiler pan or grid anywhere in the range.

- Do not clean the broiler pan or grid in a self cleaning mode. (Available on some models)
- Remove the grid from the pan. Carefully pour out the grease from the pan into a proper container.
- Wash and rinse the broiler pan and grid in hot water with a soap-filled or plastic scouring pad.
- If food has burned on, sprinkle the grid with cleaner while hot and cover with wet paper towels or a dishcloth. Soaking the pan will remove burned-on foods.
- Both the broiler pan and grid may be cleaned with a commercial oven cleaner or in the dishwasher.

### **Oven Racks**

Remove the oven racks before operating the Self Clean cycle (on some models) and EasyClean.

- 1 Clean with a mild, abrasive cleaner.
  - Food spilled into the tracks could cause the racks to become stuck.
- **2** Rinse with clean water and dry.

#### NOTE

- For models with Self Clean function:
  - If the racks are cleaned using the Self Clean cycle (not recommended), the color will turn slightly blue and the finish will become dull. After the Self Clean cycle is complete, and the oven has cooled, rub the sides of the racks with wax paper or a cloth containing a small amount of oil. This will make the racks glide more easily into the rack tracks.

#### **Vent Louvers**

• The appearance of the range may differ from model to model.

Use a vacuum cleaner with a brush or crevice attachment to clean the vent louvers **①**. Do not remove the panel covering the range.



## **Cooktop Surface**

## **Glass-Ceramic Cooktop**

## 🛕 WARNING

• To protect hands from burns, always wear oven mitts or use pot holders while using a scraper on the hot cooking surface.

## 

- If any sugar or food containing sugar spills, or plastic or foil melts on the cooktop, remove the material IMMEDIATELY with a metal razor scraper while the cooking surface is still hot to avoid the risk of damage to the glass-ceramic surface. When used correctly, the scraper will not damage the cooktop surface.
- If water or food containing water spills, remove the spill IMMEDIATELY with a dry paper towel.
- Do not use scrub pads or abrasive cleaning pads. They may damage your cooktop surface.

Use ceramic cooktop cleaner on the glass cooktop. Other cleaners may not be as effective or may scratch, damage or stain the cooktop surface.

To maintain and protect the surface of the glass cooktop, follow these steps:

- **1** Before using the cooktop for the first time, clean it with a ceramic cooktop cleaner. This helps protect the top and makes cleanup easier.
- **2** Use ceramic cooktop cleaner daily to help keep the cooktop looking new.
- **3** Shake the cleaner well. Apply a few drops of cleaner directly to the cooktop.
- **4** Use a paper towel to clean the entire cooktop surface.
- **5** Rinse with clear water and use a dry cloth or paper towel to remove all cleaning residue.

- Any damage or failure of the product resulting from the items below may not be covered under the LIMITED WARRANTY.
  - Sugary spillovers (such as preserves, ketchup, tomato sauce, jellies, fudge, candy, syrups, or chocolate) or melted plastics can cause pitting on the surface of your cooktop.
  - If food or water containing calcium (such as baking powder, wine, milk, spinach, or broccoli) is spilled on the cooktop, it can permanently stain or discolor the surface.

#### **Burned-On Residue**

**1** While the cooktop is still warm, remove any burnt on deposits or spilled food from the glass-ceramic cooking surface with a suitable metal razor scraper.



#### NOTE

- Do not use a dull or nicked blade.
- Hold the scraper at approximately a 30° angle to the cooktop.
- The razor scraper will not damage the markings on the cooking surface.
- Take care to avoid damaging the seal when cleaning the cooktop with a metal razor scraper.
- **2** When the cooking surface has completely cooled, apply a few fingertip-sized dabs of a glass-ceramic cooktop cleaner in each burner area. Spread the cleaner over the cooktop surface with a damp paper towel. Leave the cleaner on for 10 minutes before rinsing it off.



**3** Rinse with clean water and wipe the cooktop surface with a clean, dry paper towel.



#### **Cooktop Seal**

- **1** To remove burned-on soil from the seal around the outside of the glass-ceramic cooktop, cover the area with a warm, wet cloth to soften the soil.
- **2** After a few minutes, wipe the area clean with a mild, nonabrasive cleaner.

## 

- Do not use a knife or any sharp object to clean the seal around the outside of the glass-ceramic cooktop.
- Take care to avoid damaging the seal when cleaning the cooktop with a metal razor scraper.

#### **Maintaining the Cooktop**

## 

- Do not use chlorine bleach, ammonia, or other cleaners not specifically recommended for use on glassceramic cooktops.
- Let your glass-ceramic cooking surface cool off before cleaning.

-	Wipe off with a damp towel and mild detergent	Use a metal scraper	Apply cooktop cleaner. Rub with a towel.	Rinse with a damp towel, then wipe dry.
Regular (Recommended after each use)		-	-	-
Occasional (Recommended every week)	-	-		
Thorough (Recommended for tough stains or burnt-on food)	-			

#### NOTE

· For additional product information, visit our website at www.lg.com

#### **Metal Marks and Scratches**

## 

• Always use heavier gauge, high-quality cookware on the cooking elements and do not slide it on the ceramic cooktop surface. Even high-quality cookware can scratch the cooktop surface.



- Any cookware that has a rough or dirty bottom can mark and scratch the cooktop surface. Always start with clean cookware.
- Do not use cookware if there is foreign matter on the cooktop surface. Always clean the cooktop surface before cooking.

- Any damage or failure of the product resulting from the items below may not be covered under the LIMITED WARRANTY.
  - Be careful not to slide pots and pans across the cooktop. Doing so will leave metal markings on the cooktop surface. To help remove these marks, use a ceramic cooktop cleaner with a cleaning pad for ceramic cooktops.
  - If pots with a thin overlay of aluminum or copper are allowed to boil dry, the overlay may leave a black discoloration on the cooktop. This should be removed immediately before heating again or the discoloration may be permanent.

## EasyClean

This feature is only available on some models.

LG's EasyClean enamel technology provides two cleaning options for the inside of the range. The EasyClean feature takes advantage of LG's new enamel to help lift soils without harsh chemicals, and it runs using ONLY WATER for just 10 minutes in low temperatures to help loosen LIGHT soils before hand cleaning.

While EasyClean is quick and effective for small and LIGHT soils, the Self Clean feature can be used to remove HEAVY, built up soils. The intensity and high heat of the Self Clean cycle may result in smoke which will require the opening up of windows to provide ventilation. Compared to the more intense Self Clean process, your LG oven gives you the option of cleaning with LESS HEAT, LESS TIME, and virtually NO SMOKE OR FUMES. You can reduce energy use by cleaning light oven soils with the EasyClean feature instead of Self Clean.

When needed, the range still provides the Self Clean option for longer, more thorough oven cleaning for heavier, built up soils. (On some models)

• For hard to reach areas such as the back surface of the oven, it is better to use the Self Clean cycle.

## **Benefits of EasyClean**

- Helps loosen light soils before hand-cleaning
- EasyClean only uses water; no chemical cleaners
- Makes for a better Self Clean experience (On some models)
  - Delays the need for a Self Clean cycle
  - Minimizes smoke and odors
  - Can allow shorter Self Clean time

### NOTE

- · For models without Self Clean option
  - The EasyClean feature may not be effective in removing heavy, built-up soils. Because the range does not include a Self Clean option, clean the oven regularly using the EasyClean feature to prevent heavy, burnt-on soil from building up in the oven.

## When to Use EasyClean

Example of oven soiling



#### Case 1

- Soil pattern: Small drops or spots
- Types of soils: Cheese or other ingredients
- Common food items that can soil your oven: Pizza

#### Case 2

- Soil pattern: Light splatter
- Types of soils: Fat/grease
- Common food items that can soil your oven: Steaks, broiled / Fish, broiled / Meat roasted at low temperatures

## EasyClean Instruction Guide

#### NOTE

 Allow the oven to cool to room temperature before using the EasyClean cycle. If your oven cavity is above 150 °F (65 °C), Hot will appear in the display, and the EasyClean cycle will not be activated until the oven cavity cools down.

- The range should be level to ensure that the bottom surface of the oven cavity is entirely covered by water at the beginning of the EasyClean cycle.
- For best results, use distilled or filtered water. Tap water may leave mineral deposits on the oven bottom.
- Soil baked on through several cooking cycles will be more difficult to remove with the EasyClean cycle.
- Do not open the oven door during the EasyClean cycle. Water will not get hot enough if the door is opened during the cycle.
- 1 Remove oven racks and accessories from the oven.
- **2** Scrape off and remove any burnt-on debris with a plastic scraper.



- Suggested plastic scrapers:
  - Hard plastic spatula
  - Plastic pan scraper
  - Plastic paint scraper
  - Old credit card
- **3** Fill a spray bottle (10 oz or 300 ml) with water and use the spray bottle to thoroughly spray the inside surfaces of the oven.
- **4** Use at least 1/5 (2 oz or 60 ml) of the water in the bottle to completely saturate the soil on both the walls and in the corners of the oven.



**5** Spray or pour the remaining water (8 oz or 240 ml) onto the bottom center of the oven cavity. The indentation on the oven bottom should be fully covered to submerge all soils. Add water if necessary.

#### NOTE

- If cleaning multiple ovens, use an entire bottle of water to clean each oven. Do not spray water directly on the door. Doing so will result in water dripping to the floor.
- **6** Close the oven door.
  - Turn the oven mode knob to select **EasyClean** or press **EasyClean**. Press **START**.

## **CAUTION**

- Some surfaces may be hot after the EasyClean cycle. Wear rubber gloves while cleaning to prevent burns.
- During the EasyClean cycle, the oven becomes hot enough to cause burns. Wait until the cycle is over before wiping the inside surface of the oven. Failure to do so may result in burns.
- Avoid leaning or resting on the oven door glass while cleaning the oven cavity.
- **7** A tone will sound at the end of the 10 minute cycle.
  - Turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position or press **CLEAR/OFF** to clear the display and end the tone.
- 8 After the cleaning cycle and during handcleaning, enough water should remain on the oven bottom to completely submerge all soils.

Add water if necessary. Place a towel on the floor in front of the oven to capture any water that may spill out during hand-cleaning.

**9** Clean the oven cavity immediately after the EasyClean cycle by scrubbing with a wet, non-scratch scouring sponge or pad. (The scouring side will not scratch the finish.) Some water may spill into the bottom vents while cleaning, but it will be captured in a pan under the oven cavity and will not hurt the burner.



### NOTE

- Do not use any steel scouring pads, abrasive pads or cleaners as these materials can permanently damage the oven surface.
- **10** Once the oven cavity is cleaned, wipe any excess water with a clean dry towel. Replace racks and any other accessories.
- **11** If some light soils remain, repeat the above steps, making sure to thoroughly soak the soiled areas.
  - For models with Self Clean function
    - If stubborn soils remain after multiple EasyClean cycles, run the Self Clean cycle. Be sure that the oven cavity is empty of oven racks and other accessories, and that the oven cavity surface is dry before running the Self Clean cycle. Consult the Self Clean section of your owner's manual for further details. If a Self Clean option is not available, scrape off and remove stubborn soil using a scraper.

#### NOTE

- If you forget to saturate the inside of the oven with water before starting EasyClean, turn the oven mode knob to the OFF position or press CLEAR/OFF to end the cycle. Wait for the range to cool to room temperature and then spray or pour water into the oven and start another EasyClean cycle.
- The cavity gasket may be wet when the EasyClean cycle finishes. This is normal. Do not clean the gasket.

- If mineral deposits remain on the oven bottom after cleaning, use a cloth or sponge soaked in vinegar to remove them.
- It is normal for the fan to operate during the EasyClean cycle.
- Using commercial oven cleaners or bleach to clean the oven is not recommended. Instead, use a mild liquid cleanser with a pH value below 12.7 to avoid discoloring the enamel.

## Self Clean

This feature is only available on some models.

The Self Clean cycle uses extremely hot temperatures to clean the oven cavity. While running the Self Clean cycle, you may notice smoking or an odor. This is normal; especially if the oven is heavily soiled. During Self Clean, the kitchen should be well ventilated to minimize the odors from cleaning.

## **Before Starting Self Clean**

- Clean only parts listed in manual. Remove the oven racks, broiler pan, broiler grid, all cookware, aluminum foil or any other material from the oven.
  - If oven racks are left in the oven cavity during the Self Clean cycle, they will discolor and become difficult to slide in and out.
- The kitchen should be well ventilated to minimize the odors from cleaning. Open a window or turn on a ventilation fan or hood before self-cleaning.
- Wipe any heavy spillovers on the bottom of the oven.
- Make sure that the oven light lamp cover is in place and the oven light is off.
- Clean the frame of the oven and door with hot soapy water. Rinse well.

## 🛕 WARNING

- If the oven is heavily soiled with oil, self-clean the oven before using the oven again. The oil could cause a fire.
- If there is a fire in the oven during self-clean, turn the oven off and wait for the fire to go out. Do not force the door open. Introduction of fresh air at self-clean temperatures may lead to a burst of flame from the oven. Failure to follow this instruction may result in severe burns.

## 

- Do not use oven cleaners. Commercial oven cleaner or oven liner protective coating of any kind should not be used in or around any part of the oven.
- The oven displays an F error code and sounds three long beeps during the self-cleaning process if it malfunctions in the self-clean mode. Switch off the electrical power to the main fuse or breaker and have the oven serviced by a qualified technician.
- If the self cleaning mode malfunctions, turn the range off and disconnect the power supply. Have it serviced by a qualified technician.
- It is normal for parts of the oven to become hot during a Self Clean cycle. Avoid touching the cooktop, door, window or oven vent area during a Self Clean cycle.
- Do not leave small children unattended near the appliance. During the Self Clean cycle, the outside of the range can become very hot to the touch.
- If you have pet birds, move them to another well-ventilated room. The health of some birds is extremely sensitive to the fumes given off during the Self Clean cycle of any range.
- Do not line the oven walls, racks, bottom or any other part of the range with aluminum foil or any other material. Doing so will destroy heat distribution, produce poor baking results and cause permanent damage to the oven interior (aluminum foil will melt to the interior surface of the oven).
- Do not force the door open. This can damage the automatic door locking system. Use care when opening the oven door after the Self Clean cycle. Stand to the side of the oven when opening the door to allow hot air or steam to escape. The oven may still be VERY HOT.

#### NOTE

- The oven light cannot be turned on during a Self Clean cycle. The oven light cannot be turned on until the oven temperature has cooled below 500 °F (260 °C) after a Self Clean cycle is complete.
- During the Self Clean cycle, the cooktop elements and warming drawer cannot be used.
- Clean the frame of the oven and door with hot soapy water. Rinse well.
- Do not clean the gasket. The fiberglass material of the oven door gasket cannot withstand abrasion. It is essential for the gasket to remain

intact. If you notice it becoming worn or frayed, replace it.

- It is normal for the fan to operate during the Self Clean cycle.
- As the oven heats, you may hear sounds of metal parts expanding and contracting. This is normal and will not damage the oven.
- You may notice some white ash in the oven.
   Wipe it off with a damp cloth or a soap-filled steel wool pad after the oven cools. If the oven is not clean after one Self Clean cycle, repeat the cycle.
- If oven racks were left in the oven and do not slide smoothly after a Self Clean cycle, wipe racks and rack supports with a small amount of vegetable oil to make them glide more easily.
- After a Self Clean cycle, fine lines may appear in the porcelain because it went through heating and cooling. This is normal and will not affect performance.
- The Self Clean cycle cannot be started if the Control Lock feature is active.
- Once the Self Clean cycle is set, the oven door locks automatically. You will not be able to open the oven door until the oven is cooled. The lock releases automatically.
- Once the door has been locked, the lock indicator light stops flashing and remains on. Allow about 15 seconds for the oven door lock to activate.
- If the clock is set for a 12-hour display (default) the Delayed Self Clean can never be set to start more than 12 hours in advance.
- After the oven is turned off, the convection fan keeps operating until the oven has cooled down.

#### When to Use Self Clean

Example of oven soiling



#### Case 1

- Soil pattern: Medium to heavy splatter
- Types of soils: Fat/grease
- Common food items that can soil your oven: Meat roasted at high temperatures

#### Case 2

- Soil pattern: Drops or spots
- Types of soils: Filling or sugar based soils
- Common food items that can soil your oven: Pies

## Case 3

- Soil pattern: Drops or spots
- Types of soils: Cream or tomato sauce
- Common food items that can soil your oven: Casseroles

## NOTE

• The Self Clean cycle can be used for soil that has been built up over time.

## **Setting Self Clean**

The Self Clean function has cycle times of 3, 4, or 5 hours.

### Self Clean Soil Guide

Soil Level	Cycle Setting
Lightly Soiled Oven Cavity	3-Hour Self Clean
Moderately Soiled Oven Cavity	4-Hour Self Clean
Heavily Soiled Oven Cavity	5-Hour Self Clean

- 1 Remove all racks and accessories from the oven.
- 2 Turn the oven mode knob to select Self Clean or press Self Clean. The oven defaults to the recommended four-hour Self Clean for a moderately soiled oven. Press plus(+) or minus(-) to select a self clean time from 3 to 5 hours.
- **3** Press **START**.
- 4 Once the Self Clean cycle is set, the oven door locks automatically and the lock icon ⊕ displays. You will not be able to open the oven door until the oven has cooled. The lock releases automatically when the oven has cooled.

## 

• Do not force the oven door open when the lock icon is displayed. The oven door remains locked until the oven temperature has cooled. Forcing the door open will damage the door.

## Setting Self Clean with a Delayed Start

- **1** Remove all racks and accessories from the oven.
- 2 Turn the oven mode knob to select **Self Clean** or press **Self Clean**. The oven defaults to the recommended four-hour self clean for a moderately soiled oven. Press **plus(+)** or **minus(-)** to select a self clean time from 3 to 5 hours.
- **3** Press **Start Time**.
- 4 Set the time of day you would like the Self Clean to start by pressing **plus(+)** or **minus(-)**.

## 5 Press START.

#### NOTE

• It may become necessary to cancel or interrupt a Self Clean cycle due to excessive smoke or fire in the oven. To cancel the Self Clean function, turn the oven mode knob to the **OFF** position or press **CLEAR/OFF**.

## Removing/Assembling Lift-Off Oven Doors

## ΝΟΤΕ

• Parts may be changed due to product improvement and may look different than shown in images.

## **Door Care Instructions**

Most oven doors contain glass that can break.

## **CAUTION**

• Do not close the oven door until all the oven racks are fully in place.

- Do not hit the glass with pots, pans, or any other object.
- Scratching, hitting, jarring, or stressing the glass may weaken its structure causing an increased risk of breakage at a later time.

## **Removing Doors**

- **1** Fully open the door.
- 2 Lift up the hinge lock ② and flip it towards the hinge arm ④ completely. Repeat on other side.



- Slot
- 2 Hinge Lock
- Oven Frame
- 4 Hinge Arm
- **3** Firmly grasp both sides of the door at the top.
- Partially close the door to approximately 5 degrees ①. If the position is correct, the hinge arms will move freely.



- 1 about 5°
- **5** Lift and pull the door towards you until the hinge latches are completely loosened.

## **Assembling Doors**

- **1** Firmly grasp both sides of the door at the top.
- Fully insert the hinge arms 1 into the slots 2 until the indentations 3 on the hinge arms rest on the bottom edges of the slots.



- Indentation
- **3** Slowly open the door fully. Make sure that the hinge arms are properly engaged in the slots.
- 4 Lift up the hinge lock 2 and flip it towards the oven 3 until it clicks into position. Repeat on other side.



- 4 Hinge Arm
- **5** Close the oven door.

## **Removing/Assembling Drawers**

## **Removing Drawers**

## 

• Disconnect the electrical power to the range at the main fuse or circuit breaker panel. Failure to do so can result in severe personal injury, death, or electrical shock.

Most cleaning can be done with the drawer in place; however, the drawer may be removed if further cleaning is needed. Use warm water to thoroughly clean.

- **1** Fully open the drawer.
- **2** Unscrew the screw **1** on the back of the drawer.



**3** Locate the glide lever on each side of the drawer. Push down on the left glide lever and pull up on the right glide lever.



- Pull up with finger
- **4** Pull the drawer away from the range.

## **Assembling Drawers**

**1** Pull the bearing glides to the front of the chassis glide.

- **2** Align the glide on each side of the drawer with the glide slots on the range.
- **3** Push the drawer into the range until levers click (approximately 2 inches).
- **4** Insert and tighten the screws on the back of the drawer.
- **5** Pull the drawer open again to seat the bearing glides into position.

## Periodic Maintenance

## Changing the Oven Light

The oven light is a standard 40-watt halogen appliance bulb. It turns on when the oven door is open. When the oven door is closed, press **Light** to turn it on or off.

## **WARNING**

- Make sure that the oven and lamp are cool.
- Disconnect the electrical power to the range at the main fuse or circuit breaker panel. Failure to do so can result in severe personal injury, death, or electrical shock.
- **1** Unplug the range or disconnect power.
- 2 Turn the glass lamp cover in the back of the oven **counterclockwise** to **remove**.
- **3** Remove the halogen lamp from the socket.




- **4** Insert a new halogen lamp.
- 5 Insert the glass lamp cover and turn it clockwise.



1 To Assemble



Plug in the range or reconnect the power.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

# FAQs

### **Frequently Asked Questions**

### Q: What types of cookware are recommended for use with the cooktop?

- A: The pans must have a flat bottom and straight sides.
  - Only use heavy-gauge pans.
  - The pan size must match the amount of food to be prepared and the size of the surface element.
  - Use tight fitting lids.
  - Only use flat-bottom woks.
- Q: Why do the heating elements appear to be turning ON and OFF during use of the cooktop or oven?
- A: Depending on your cooktop element setting or the temperature selected in your oven, it is normal for the cooking elements to cycle on and off.

# Q: My new oven doesn't cook like my old one. Is there something wrong with the temperature settings?

A: No. Your oven has been factory tested and calibrated. For the first few uses, follow your recipe times and temperatures carefully. If you still think your new oven is too hot or too cold, you can adjust the oven temperature yourself to meet your specific cooking needs. Refer to the Changing Oven Settings section in this manual for easy instructions on how to adjust your thermostat.

### Q: Is it normal to hear a clicking noise coming from the back of my oven when I am using it?

A: Your new range is designed to maintain a tighter control over your oven's temperature. You may hear your oven's heating elements click on and off more frequently on your new oven. This is normal.

### Q: Why is the time flashing?

A: This means that the product has just been plugged in, or that it has experienced a power interruption. To clear the flashing time, touch any button and reset the clock if needed.

### Q: During convection cooking the fan stops when I open the door. Is that normal?

A: Yes, this is normal. When the door is opened, the convection fan will stop until the door is closed.

### Q: Can I use aluminum foil to catch drippings in my oven cavity?

A: Never use aluminum foil to line the bottom or sides of the oven or the warming drawer (on some models). The foil will melt and stick to the bottom surface of the oven and will not be removable. Use a foil-lined sheet pan placed on a lower oven rack to catch drippings instead. (If foil has already melted onto the bottom of the oven, it will not interfere with the oven's performance.)

### Q: Can I use aluminum foil on the racks?

A: Do not cover racks with aluminum foil. Covering entire racks with foil restricts air flow, leading to poor cooking results. Use a sheet pan lined with foil under fruit pies or other acidic or sugary foods to prevent spillovers from damaging the oven finish.

### 

• Foil may be used to wrap food in the oven or warming drawer, but do not allow the foil to come into contact with the exposed heating/broiling elements in the oven. The foil could melt or ignite, causing smoke, fire, or injury.

#### Q: Can I leave my racks in the oven when running a Self Clean cycle? (On some models)

A: No. Although it will not damage the racks, it will discolor them and may make them hard to slide in and out during use. Remove all items from the oven before starting a Self Clean cycle.

#### Q: What should I do if my racks are sticky and have become hard to slide in and out?

A: Over time, the racks may become hard to slide in and out. Apply a small amount of olive oil to the sides of the racks. This will work as a lubricant for easier gliding.

#### Q: What should I do for hard to remove stains on my cooktop?

A: The cooktop should be cleaned after every use to prevent permanent staining. When cooking foods with high sugar content, such as tomato sauce, clean the stain off with a scraper while the cooktop is still warm. Use an oven mitt when scraping to prevent burns. Refer to the MAINTENANCE section of this owner's manual for further instruction.

#### Q: Why aren't the function buttons working?

A: Make sure that the range is not in Control Lock / Lockout mode. The lock  $\bigcirc$  will show in the display if Control Lock / Lockout is activated. To deactivate Control Lock / Lockout, refer to the Control Lock / Lockout section. The unlock melody sounds and **Loc** appears in the display until the controls are unlocked. On models with Sabbath mode, make sure that the range is not in Sabbath mode. See the Sabbath Mode section of the manual for instructions.

#### Q: My range is still dirty after running the EasyClean cycle. What else should I do?

A: The EasyClean cycle only helps to loosen light soils in your oven range to assist in hand-cleaning of your oven. It does not automatically remove all soils after the cycle. Some scrubbing of your oven range is required after running the EasyClean cycle.

#### Q: I tried scrubbing my oven after running EasyClean, but some soils still remain. What can I do?

- A: The EasyClean feature works best when the soils are fully soaked and submerged in water before running the cycle and during hand-cleaning. If soils are not sufficiently soaked in water, it can negatively affect the cleaning performance. Repeat the EasyClean process using sufficient water.
  - For models with Self Clean function:

Sugar-based and certain greasy soils are especially hard to clean. If some stubborn soils remain, use the Self Clean feature to thoroughly clean your oven.

#### Q: Soils on my oven walls are not coming off. How can I get the oven walls clean?

A: Soils on the side and rear walls of your oven range may be more difficult to fully soak with water. Try repeating the EasyClean process with more than the ¼ cup (2 oz or 60 ml) of spray recommended.

#### Q: Will EasyClean get all of the soils and stains out completely?

- A: It depends on the soil type. Sugar-based and certain grease stains are especially hard to clean. Also, if stains are not sufficiently soaked in water, this can negatively affect cleaning performance.
  - · For models with Self Clean function:

If stubborn or built-up stains remain, use the Self Clean feature. Refer to the Self Clean section of your owner's manual.

#### Q: Are there any tricks to getting some of the stubborn soils out?

- A: Scraping the soils with a plastic scraper before and during hand-cleaning is recommended. Fully saturating soils with water is also recommended.
  - For models with Self Clean function:

Certain types of soils are harder to clean than others. For these stubborn soils, the Self Clean cycle is recommended. Consult the Self Clean section of your owner's manual for details.

#### Q: Is it safe for my convection fan or heater element to get wet during EasyClean?

### 68 TROUBLESHOOTING

A: Yes. The convection fan or heater element may get a little wet during cleaning. However, direct spray onto the broil burner and heater elements is not necessary because these are self-cleaning during regular use.

#### Q: Do I need to use all 1 ¼ cups (10 oz or 300 ml) of water for EasyClean?

A: Yes. It is highly recommended that 1 cup (8 oz or 240 ml) of water be sprayed or poured on the bottom and an additional ¼ cup (2 oz or 60 ml) of water be sprayed on walls and other soiled areas to fully saturate the soils for better cleaning performance.

#### Q: I see smoke coming out of my oven range's cooktop vents during EasyClean. Is this normal?

A: This is normal. This is not smoke. It is actually water vapor (steam) from the water in the oven cavity. As the oven heats briefly during EasyClean, the water in the cavity evaporates and escapes through the oven vents.

#### Q: How often should I use EasyClean?

A: EasyClean can be performed as often as you wish. EasyClean works best when your oven is LIGHTLY soiled from such things as LIGHT grease splatter and small drops of cheese. Please refer to the EasyClean section in your owner's manual for more information.

#### Q: What is required for EasyClean?

A: A spray bottle filled with 1¼ cups (10 oz or 300 ml) of water, a plastic scraper, a non-scratch scrubbing pad and a towel. You should not use abrasive scrubbers such as heavy-duty scouring pads or steel wool.

#### Q: How can I help keep children safe around the range?

A: Children should be supervised around the range whenever it is in use, and after use until surfaces have cooled. You can also use the Control Lock / Lockout feature to help prevent children from accidentally turning on the cooktop or oven. The Control Lock / Lockout feature disables most control panel buttons and the cooktop control knobs. On some models, it also locks the oven door. Consult the Control Lock / Lockout section of your owner's manual for details. (In models without a Self Clean option, the Control Lock / Lockout feature locks the controls but does not lock the oven door.)

### Q: Why isn't the Instaview working? (On some models only)

A: Level the range by adjusting the leveling legs with a wrench.

# **Before Calling for Service**

Review this section before calling for service; doing so will save you both time and money. For detailed information or videos, visit <u>www.lg.com</u> for the troubleshooting page.

### Cooking

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Oven will not work	Plug on range is not completely inserted in the electrical outlet.	
	• Make sure electrical plug is plugged into a live, properly grounded outlet.	
	A fuse in your home may be blown or the circuit breaker tripped.	
	Replace the fuse or reset the circuit breaker.	
	Oven controls improperly set.	
	See the "Oven" section in the Operation chapter.	
	Oven too hot.	
	Allow the oven to cool to below locking temperature.	

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Steam is exhausted	Cooking foods with high moisture produces steam.	
through the oven vent.	• This is normal.	
Appliance does not	Cord is not plugged in correctly.	
operate.	Make sure cord is plugged correctly into outlet. Check circuit breakers.	
	Service wiring is not complete.	
	Contact your electrician for assistance.	
	Power outage.	
	Check house lights to be sure. Call your local electric company for service.	
	Sabbath mode is activated (on some models). 5b appears in the display and all function buttons are inactive.	
	• Press and hold the Settings button for 3 seconds or until 5b disappears from the display.	
Oven smokes	Control not set properly.	
excessively during broiling.	Follow instructions under Setting Oven Controls.	
bronnig.	Meat too close to the element.	
	• Reposition the rack to provide proper clearance between the meat and the element. Preheat broil element for searing.	
	Meat not properly prepared.	
	Remove excess fat from meat. Cut remaining fatty edges to prevent curling.	
	Insert on broiler pan wrong side up and grease not draining.	
	• Always place the grid on the broiler pan with ribs up and slots down to allow grease to drip into the pan.	
	Grease has built up on oven surfaces. Old grease or food spatters cause excessive smoking.	
	Regular cleaning is necessary when broiling frequently.	
Food does not bake	Oven controls improperly set.	
or roast properly	See the "Oven" section in the Operation chapter.	
	Rack position is incorrect or the rack is not level.	
	See the "Oven" section in the Operation chapter.	
	Incorrect cookware or cookware of improper size being used.	
	See the "Oven" section in the Operation chapter.	
	Oven sensor needs to be adjusted.	
	• See the "Calibrating the Oven Temperature" section in the Operation chapter.	
Food does not broil	Oven controls improperly set.	
properly	• Make sure you select the <b>Broil</b> mode properly.	
	Improper rack position being used.	
	• See the Broiling Guide.	
	Cookware not suited for broiling.	
	Use broiling pan and grid.	
	Aluminum foil used on the broiling pan and grid has not been fitted properly and slit as recommended.	
	• See the "Oven" section in the Operation chapter.	
	In some areas the power voltage may be low.	

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Oven temperature	Oven sensor needs to be adjusted.	
too hot or too cold	• See the "Calibrating the Oven Temperature" section in the Operation chapter.	
Excessive smoking	Excessive soil.	
during a Self Clean cycle (On some models)	• Turn off the Self Clean function. Open the windows to rid the room of smoke. Wait until the Self Clean mode is cancelled. Wipe up the excess soil and reset the clean.	
Burning or oily odor	This is normal in a new oven.	
emitting from the vent	• This will disappear in time. To speed the process, set a Self Clean cycle for a minimum of 3 hours. See the Self Clean section. (On some models)	
Moisture collects on	This happens when cooking foods high in moisture.	
oven window or steam comes from	This is normal.	
oven vent	Excessive moisture was used when cleaning the window.	
	• Do not use excessive moisture when cleaning the window.	

## **Parts & Features**

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Range is not level.	Poor installation.		
	<ul> <li>Place oven rack in center of oven. Place a level on the oven rack. Adjust leveling legs at base of range until the oven rack is level.</li> </ul>		
	• Be sure floor is level and strong and stable enough to adequately support range.		
	• If floor is sagging or sloping, contact a carpenter to correct the situation.		
	Kitchen cabinet alignment may make range appear unlevel.		
	• Be sure cabinets are square and have sufficient room for range clearance.		
Cannot move	Cabinets not square or are built in too tightly.		
appliance easily. Appliance must be	Contact builder or installer to make appliance accessible.		
accessible for	Carpet interferes with range.		
service.	Provide sufficient space so range can be lifted over carpet.		
	Anti-tip device engaged.		
	<ul> <li>Uninstall the anti-tip device to move the range. Reengage the anti-tip device after pulling the range out for cleaning, service, or any other reason.</li> </ul>		
Surface units will not	Improper cookware being used.		
maintain a rolling boil or cooking is not	• Use pans which are flat and match the diameter of the surface unit selected.		
fast enough.	In some areas, the power(voltage) may be low.		
	Cover pan with a lid until desired heat is obtained.		
Surface units do not	A fuse in your home may be blown or the circuit breaker tripped.		
work properly.	Replace the fuse or reset the circuit breaker.		
	Cooktop controls improperly set.		
	• Check to see the correct control is set for the surface unit you are using.		

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Surface unit stops	The unit is still on and hot.		
glowing when changed to a lower setting.	• This is normal.		
_	Food millowers not close of hofers most use		
Areas of discoloration on the	<ul><li>Food spillovers not cleaned before next use.</li><li>See the "Glass-Ceramic Cooktop" section in the MAINTENANCE chapter.</li></ul>		
cooktop			
	Hot surface on a model with a light-colored cooktop.		
	<ul> <li>This is normal.The surface may appear discolored when it is hot. This is temporary and will disappear as the glass cools.</li> </ul>		
Frequent cycling on	The element will cycle on and off to maintain the heat setting.		
and off of surface units	• This is normal.		
Scratches or abrasions on	Coarse particles such as salt or sand between cooktop and utensils can cause scratches.		
cooktop surface	<ul> <li>Be sure the cooktop surface and bottoms of utensils are clean before using. Small scratches do not affect cooking and will become less visible with time.</li> </ul>		
	Cleaning materials not recommended for glass-ceramic cooktop have been used.		
	• See the "Glass-Ceramic Cooktop" section in the MAINTENANCE chapter.		
	Cookware with rough bottom has been used.		
	Use smooth, flat-bottomed cookware.		
Metal marks	Scraping of metal utensils on cooktop surface.		
	<ul> <li>Do not slide metal utensils on cooktop surface. Use a glass-ceramic cooktop cleaning creme to remove the marks. See the "Glass-Ceramic Cooktop" section in the MAINTENANCE chapter.</li> </ul>		
Brown streaks or	Boilovers are cooked onto surface.		
specks	<ul> <li>Use a blade scraper to remove soil. See the "Glass-Ceramic Cooktop" section in the MAINTENANCE chapter.</li> </ul>		
Areas of	Mineral deposits from water and food.		
discoloration on cooktop	<ul> <li>Remove using a glass-ceramic cooktop cleaning creme. Use cookware with clean, dry bottoms.</li> </ul>		
Oven control beeps	Electronic control has detected a fault condition.		
and displays any F code error.	• Turn off the oven function you are using to clear the display and stop beeping. Reprogram oven. If fault recurs, record fault number and contact a service agent.		
	- [Case 1]		
	Code: F-3		
	Cause: Key short error		
	- [Case 2] Code: F-9		
	Cause: Oven not heating		
Oven control	This code is not an error code. It indicates that the product's Sabbath mode 5b is		
displays Sb/5b/S6/56	activated.		
error code.	• See the "Using the Sabbath Mode" section in the Operation chapter.		
Displayed colon in the clock is flashing	This means that the product has just been plugged in, or that it has experienced a power interruption.		
	This is normal. Reset the clock or press any button to stop the flashing.		
CLEAN and door	The Self Clean cycle has been selected, but the door is not closed.		
flash in the display (On some models)	Close the oven door.		

### 72 TROUBLESHOOTING

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Loc is on in the	The oven is locked because of the Control Lock / Lockout feature.	
display when you want to cook (On some models)	Deactivate the <b>Control Lock / Lockout</b> feature.	
Oven light does not	It is time to replace the lamp or the lamp is loose.	
work.	• Replace or tighten lamp. See "Changing the Oven Light" section in this Owner's Manual.	
Convection fan stops. (During	Convection fan stops during a convection bake cycle. It is done to allow for more even heating during the cycle.	
Conv.Bake mode)	• This is not a failure of the range and should be considered normal operation.	
Fan operation	This is to ensure even baking results.	
(During Bake mode)	• It is normal for the fan to operate periodically throughout a normal bake cycle in the oven.	
Oven will not Self	The oven temperature is too high to set a Self Clean operation.	
Clean. (On some models)	Allow the range to cool and reset the controls.	
,	Oven controls improperly set.	
	• See the Self Clean section.	
	A Self Clean cycle cannot be started if the oven Control Lock / Lockout feature is active.	
	See the "Control Lock / Lockout" in "Changing Oven Settings" section.	
Oven door does not	Oven is too hot.	
open after a Self Clean cycle (On some	Allow the oven to cool below locking temperature.	
models)	The control and door may be locked.	
	<ul> <li>Allow about one hour for the oven to cool after the completion of a Self Clean cycle. The door can be opened when the lock</li></ul>	
The oven is not clean	Oven controls not properly set.	
after a Self Clean cycle (On some models)	See the Self Clean section.	
	Oven was heavily soiled.	
	• Clean up heavy spillovers before starting the clean cycle. Heavily soiled ovens may need to Self Clean again or for a longer period of time.	
Oven racks are	The shiny, silver-colored racks were cleaned in a Self Clean cycle.	
difficult to slide (On some models)	<ul> <li>Apply a small amount of vegetable oil to a paper towel and wipe the edges of the oven racks with the paper towel.</li> </ul>	

# Noises

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
"Crackling" or "popping" sound	This is the sound of the metal heating and cooling during both the cooking and Self Clean functions.	
	• This is normal.	
Fan noise	A convection fan may automatically turn on and off.	
	• This is normal.	
A chime sounds	When any cooktop burner is activated, a chime sounds to indicate the cooktop is in use.	
when surface elements are turned	• This is normal.	
on.		

# Wi-Fi

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Trouble connecting	The password for the Wi-Fi network was entered incorrectly.
appliance and smartphone to Wi-Fi	Delete your home Wi-Fi network and begin the connection process again.
network	Mobile data for your smartphone is turned on.
	• Turn off the <b>Mobile data</b> on your smartphone before connecting the appliance.
	The wireless network name (SSID) is set incorrectly.
	<ul> <li>The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)</li> </ul>
	The router frequency is not 2.4 GHz.
	• Only a 2.4 GHz router frequency is supported. Set the wireless router to 2.4 GHz and connect the appliance to the wireless router. To check the router frequency, check with your Internet service provider or the router manufacturer.
	The appliance and the router are too far apart.
	• If the appliance is too far from the router, the signal may be weak and the connection may not be configured correctly. Move the router closer to the appliance or purchase and install a Wi-Fi repeater.
	During Wi-Fi setup, the app is requesting a password to connect to the product (on certain phones).
	<ul> <li>Locate the network name which starts with "LG" under Settings &gt; Networks. Note the last part of the network name.</li> </ul>
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XX-XX-XX, enter lge12345.
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XXXX, enter XXXX twice as your password. For example, if the network name appears as LGE_Appliance_8b92, then you would enter 8b928b92 as your password. In this instance, the password is case sensitive and the last 4 characters are unique to your appliance.

# LIMITED WARRANTY

# USA

### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

#### ARBITRATION NOTICE: THIS LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINS AN ARBITRATION PROVISION THAT REQUIRES YOU AND LG ELECTRONICS ("LG") TO RESOLVE DISPUTES BY BINDING ARBITRATION INSTEAD OF IN COURT, UNLESS YOU CHOOSE TO OPT OUT. IN ARBITRATION, CLASS ACTIONS AND JURY TRIALS ARE NOT PERMITTED. PLEASE SEE THE SECTION TITLED "PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES" BELOW.

Should your LG Electric Range ("Product") fail due to a defect in materials or workmanship under normal and proper use, during the warranty period set forth below, LG will, at its option, repair or replace the Product. This limited warranty is valid only to the original retail purchaser of the Product ("You") and applies only when purchased lawfully and used within the United States including U.S. Territories.

Warranty Period	Scope of Warranty	HOW SERVICE IS HANDLED
One (1) year from date of original retail purchase	Parts and Labor (internal / functional parts only)	LG will provide, free of charge, all labor and in-home service to replace defective part(s).

• Replacement Products and parts are warranted for the remaining portion of the original warranty period or ninety (90) days, whichever is greater.

- Replacement Products and parts may be new, reconditioned, refurbished, or otherwise factory remanufactured.
- Replaced Product or part(s) will be the property of LG.
- Proof of original retail purchase specifying the Product model and date of purchase is required to obtain warranty service under this limited warranty.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ON THE PRODUCT IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL LG OR ITS U.S. DISTRIBUTORS/DEALERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST GOODWILL, LOST REVENUES OR PROFITS, WORK STOPPAGE, IMPAIRMENT OF OTHER GOODS, COST OF REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT, LOSS OF USE, OR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. LG'S TOTAL LIABILITY, IF ANY, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

### THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

- Service trips to deliver, pick up, or install, educate how to operate, correct wiring, or correct unauthorized repairs.
- Damage or failure of the Product to perform during power failures and interrupted or inadequate electrical service.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by leaky or broken water pipes, frozen water pipes, restricted drain lines, inadequate or interrupted water supply or inadequate supply of air.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from operating the Product in a corrosive atmosphere or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by accidents, pests and vermin, lightning, wind, fire, floods, acts of nature, or any other causes beyond the control of LG.

- Damage or failure of the Product caused by unauthorized modification or alteration, or if the Product is used for other than the intended purpose, or any water leakage where the Product was not properly installed.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by incorrect electrical current, voltage, or plumbing codes.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by transportation, storage, and/or handling, including scratches, dents, chips, and/or other damage to the finish of the Product, unless such damage is reported within one (1) week of delivery.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from misuse, abuse, improper installation, repair, or maintenance. Improper repair includes the use of parts not authorized by LG. Improper installation or maintenance includes installation or maintenance contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by the use of parts, components, accessories, consumable cleaning products, or any other products or services that were not authorized by LG.
- Damage or missing items to any display or open box Product.
- Refurbished Product or any Product sold "As Is", "Where Is", "With all Faults", or similar disclaimer.
- Products with original serial numbers that have been removed, altered, or cannot be readily determined.
- Increases in utility costs and additional utility expenses.
- Any noises associated with normal operation.
- Products used for other than normal and proper household use (e.g., commercial or industrial use) or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Costs associated with removal and reinstallation of the Product for repairs, or the removal and reinstallation of the Product if it is installed in an inaccessible location or not installed in accordance with the Product Owner's manual.
- Accessories, removable components, or consumable parts (e.g. Shelves, door bins, drawers, water/air filters, racks, light bulbs, batteries, etc., as applicable), except for internal/functional parts covered under this limited warranty.

Problem	Possible Cause & Prevention		
Cooktop crack	Cooktop crack caused by impact of object		
	• A: Out of warranty		
	- ① Mechanical breakage		
	• B: In warranty		
	- 2 Primary crack 3 Secondary crack		
	• DO NOT store heavy items above the cooktop surface as they could fall and damage it.		
	• DO NOT scratch the cooktop or the cooktop could crack.		
	Clean the cooktop before and after using.		
	NOTE		
	Damage caused after delivery (Not covered by warranty)		
Cooktop enamel chipping off	Improper usage		
	• Do not hit enamel cooktop.		
Pitting of the cooktop glass	If not removed immediately, sugary spillovers (such as preserves, ketchup, tomato sauce, jellies, fudge, candy, syrups, or chocolate) or melted plastic or foil can cause surface pitting of the cooktop. (Not covered by warranty)		
	• Remove the molten material IMMEDIATELY with a metal razor scraper.		
	• For safety, wear an oven mitt or hot pad while scraping the hot surface.		

# Not Covered by this Limited Warranty



Problem	Possible Cause & Prevention
Surface is not level Oven is tipping	Range not leveled
	Check with installer first.
	• Use carpenter's level <b>①</b> to check level.
	Anti-tip device not installed correctly
	Approximately 0.65" (16.5 mm)
	2 Level both sides of range
	Screw must enter wood or concrete
	Anti-tip bracket
	မှာ Wall plate
	Check with installer first.

The cost of repair or replacement under these excluded circumstances shall be borne by You.

TO OBTAIN WARRANTY SERVICE AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Call <u>1-800-243-0000</u> and select the appropriate option from the menu.

Or visit our website at <u>http://www.lg.com</u>

Or by mail: LG Electronics Customer Service P.O. Box 240007 Huntsville, AL 35813 ATTN: CIC

# **PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:**

ALL DISPUTES BETWEEN YOU AND LG ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE PRODUCT SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT IN A COURT OF GENERAL JURISDICTION. BINDING ARBITRATION MEANS THAT YOU AND LG ARE EACH WAIVING THE RIGHT TO A JURY TRIAL AND TO BRING OR PARTICIPATE IN A CLASS ACTION.

**Definitions.** For the purposes of this section, references to "LG" mean LG Electronics U.S.A., Inc., its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, beneficiaries, predecessors in interest, successors, assigns and suppliers; references to "dispute" or "claim" shall include any dispute, claim or controversy of any kind whatsoever (whether based in contract, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, fraud, misrepresentation or any other legal or equitable theory) arising out of or relating in any way to the sale, condition or performance of the product or this Limited Warranty.

**Notice of Dispute.** In the event you intend to commence an arbitration proceeding, you must first notify LG in writing at least 30 days in advance of initiating the arbitration by sending a letter to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632 USA. You and LG agree to engage in good faith discussions in an attempt to amicably resolve your claim. The notice must provide your name, address, and telephone number; identify the product that is the

subject of the claim; and describe the nature of the claim and the relief being sought. If you and LG are unable to resolve the dispute within 30 days, either party may proceed to file a claim for arbitration.

**Agreement to Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver.** Upon failure to resolve the dispute during the 30 day period after sending written notice to LG, you and LG agree to resolve any claims between us only by binding arbitration on an individual basis, unless you opt out as provided below. Any dispute between you and LG shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's product or claim. More specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, any dispute between you and LG shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class or representative action. Instead of arbitration, either party may bring an individual action in small claims court, but that small claims court action may not be brought on a class or representative basis.

**Arbitration Rules and Procedures.** To begin arbitration of a claim, either you or LG must make a written demand for arbitration. The arbitration will be administered by the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") and will be conducted before a single arbitrator under the AAA's Consumer Arbitration Rules that are in effect at the time the arbitration is initiated (referred to as the "AAA Rules") and under the procedures set forth in this section. The AAA Rules are available online at www.adr.org/consumer. Send a copy of your written demand for arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632 USA. If there is a conflict between the AAA Rules and the rules set forth in this section will govern. This arbitration provision is governed by the Federal Arbitration Act. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. All issues are for the arbitrator to decide, except that issues relating to the scope and enforceability of the arbitration provision and to the arbitrator is bound by the terms of this provision.

**Governing Law.** The law of the state of your residence shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between us except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal law.

**Fees/Costs.** You do not need to pay any fee to begin an arbitration. Upon receipt of your written demand for arbitration, LG will promptly pay all arbitration filing fees to the AAA unless you seek more than \$25,000 in damages, in which case the payment of these fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for herein, LG will pay all AAA filing, administration and arbitrator fees for any arbitration initiated in accordance with the AAA Rules and this arbitration provision. If you prevail in the arbitration, LG will pay your attorneys' fees and expenses as long as they are reasonable, by considering factors including, but not limited to, the purchase amount and claim amount. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable law allows for an award of reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, an arbitrator can award them to the same extent that a court would. If the arbitrator finds either the substance of your claim or the relief sought in the demand is frivolous or brought for an improper purpose (as measured by the standards set forth in Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 11(b)), then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. In such a situation, you agree to reimburse LG for all monies previously disbursed by it that are otherwise your obligation to pay under the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for, LG waives any rights it may have to seek attorneys' fees and expenses from you if LG prevails in the arbitration.

**Hearings and Location.** If your claim is for \$25,000 or less, you may choose to have the arbitration conducted solely on the basis of (1) documents submitted to the arbitrator, (2) through a telephonic hearing, or (3) by an in-person hearing as established by the AAA Rules. If your claim exceeds \$25,000, the right to a hearing will be determined by the AAA Rules. Any in-person arbitration hearings will be held at a location within the federal judicial district in which you reside unless we both agree to another location or we agree to a telephonic arbitration.

**Opt Out.** You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. If you opt out, neither you nor LG can require the other to participate in an arbitration proceeding. To opt out, you must send notice to LG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the product by either: (i) sending an e-mail to <u>optout@lge.com</u>, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out" or (ii) calling <u>1-800-980-2973</u>. You must include in the opt out e-mail or provide by telephone: (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the product was purchased; (c) the product model name or model number; and (d) the serial number (the serial number can be found (i) on the product; or (ii) online by accessing <u>https://www.lg.com/us/support/repair-service/schedule-repair-continued</u> and clicking on "Find My Model & Serial Number").

You may only opt out of the dispute resolution procedure in the manner described above (that is, by e-mail or telephone); no other form of notice will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the full benefits of the Limited Warranty. If you keep this product and do not opt out, then you accept all terms and conditions of the arbitration provision described above.

Memo 81

82 Memo



LG Customer Information Center	Centro de Información al Cliente LG	Centre de Service à la Clientèle de LG
For inquiries or comments, visit <b>www.lg.com</b> or call: 1-800-243-0000 U.S.A. 1-888-542-2623 CANADA	Para consultas o comentarios, visite www.lg.com o llame por teléfono: 1-800-243-0000 EE.UU. 1-888-542-2623 CANADÁ	Pour des questions ou des commentaires, visitez www.lg.com/ca_fr ou appelez : 1-800-243-0000 ÉTATS-UNIS 1-888-542-2623 CANADA
Register your product Online!	¡Registre su producto en línea!	Enregistrez votre produit en ligne!
www.lg.com	www.lg.com	www.lg.com/ca_fr

Scan to see the online manual.





# OWNER'S MANUAL **MICROWAVE OVEN**

Read this owner's manual thoroughly before operating the appliance and keep it handy for reference at all times.

ENGLISH

MVEM182\*\*



MFL06317621 Rev.07\_032125 www.lg.com Copyright © 2022-2025 LG Electronics. All Rights Reserved

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

### 3 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- 3 READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE
- 3 WARNING

### 7 INSTALLATION

- 7 Product Overview
- 7 Installation Requirements
- 8 Before Installing
- 10 Installing the Microwave Oven

### **19 OPERATION**

- 19 Control Panel
- 20 Before Use
- 22 Quick Start and Stop
- 22 Manual Cooking
- 23 Cooking Mode
- 27 Cookware Guide
- 29 Cooking Guide

### **31 SMART FUNCTIONS**

- 31 LG ThinQ Application
- 33 Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> Feature

### **34 MAINTENANCE**

- 34 Cleaning
- 35 Replacing Parts

### **36 TROUBLESHOOTING**

36 FAQs

38 Before Calling for Service

### **40 LIMITED WARRANTY**

### 40 USA

### PRECAUTIONS TO AVOID POSSIBLE EXPOSURE TO EXCESSIVE MICROWAVE ENERGY

- (a) Do not attempt to operate this oven with the door open since open-door operation can result in harmful exposure to microwave energy. It is important not to defeat or tamper with the safety interlocks.
- (b) Do not place any object between the oven front face and the door or allow soil or cleaner residue to accumulate on sealing surfaces.
- (c) Do not operate the oven if it is damaged. It is particularly important that the oven door close properly and that there is no damage to the: (1) Door (bent), (2) hinges and latches (broken or loosened), (3) door seals and sealing surfaces.
- (d) The oven should not be adjusted or repaired by anyone except properly qualified service personnel.

# **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

# **READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE**

# **Safety Messages**

### Your safety and the safety of others are very important.

We have provided many important safety messages in this manual and on your appliance. Always read and follow all safety messages.

This is the safety alert symbol.

This symbol alerts you to potential hazards that can kill or injure you and others. All safety messages will follow the safety alert symbol and either the word WARNING or CAUTION.

These words mean:



### WARNING

You may be killed or seriously injured if you do not follow instructions.



### CAUTION

You may be injured or cause damage to the product if you do not follow instructions.

All safety messages will tell you what the potential hazard is, tell you how to reduce the chance of injury, and tell you what may happen if the instructions are not followed.

# WARNING

# **WARNING**

• To reduce the risk of explosion, fire, death, electric shock, injury or scalding to persons when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

# **Technical Safety**

- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.
- To reduce the risk of burns, electric shock, fire, injury to persons or exposure to excessive microwave energy when using the microwave oven, read all instructions before using the appliance.
- Children must not be allowed to play with accessories or hang down from the door or any part of the oven. Doing so can cause serious injury and damage. As with any appliance, close supervision is necessary when used by children.
- Read and follow the specific PRECAUTIONS TO AVOID POSSIBLE EXPOSURE TO EXCESSIVE MICROWAVE ENERGY found on page 2.
- This appliance must be grounded. Connect only to properly grounded outlet. See **"GROUNDING INSTRUCTIONS"** found on **Installation Requirements** section.
- Use this appliance only for its intended use as described in the manual. Do not use corrosive chemicals or vapors in this appliance. This type of oven is specifically designed to heat, cook, or dry food. It is not designed for industrial or laboratory use.
- To avoid electric shock:
  - Do not operate this appliance if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly or if it has been damaged or dropped.

### 4 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- Do not immerse cord or plug in water. Keep cord away from heated surfaces.
- Do not let cord hang over edge of table or counter.
- To reduce the risk of fire in the oven cavity:
  - Do not overcook food. Carefully attend appliance when paper, plastic, or other combustible materials are placed inside the oven to facilitate cooking.
  - Remove wire twist-ties from paper or plastic bags before placing bag in oven.
  - If materials inside the oven ignite, keep oven door closed, turn oven off, and disconnect the power cord, or shut off power at the fuse or circuit breaker panel.
  - Do not use the cavity for storage purposes. Do not leave paper products, cooking utensils, or food in the cavity when not in use.
- Install or locate this appliance only in accordance with the provided installation instructions.
- Some products such as whole eggs and sealed containers for example, closed glass jars are able to explode and should not be heated in this oven.
- Liquids, such as water, coffee, or tea are able to be overheated beyond the boiling point without appearing to be boiling. Visible bubbling or boiling when the container is removed from the microwave oven is not always present.
- THIS COULD RESULT IN VERY HOT LIQUIDS SUDDENLY BOILING OVER WHEN THE CONTAINER IS DISTURBED OR A SPOON OR OTHER UTENSIL IS INSERTED INTO THE LIQUID.

To reduce the risk of injury to persons:

- Do not overheat the liquid. Stir the liquid both before and halfway through heating it.
- Do not use straight-sided containers with narrow necks. Use extreme care when inserting a spoon or other utensil into the container.
- After heating, allow the container to stand in the microwave oven for a short time before removing the container.
- Do not cover or block any openings on the appliance.
- Do not store this appliance outdoors. Do not use this product near water for example, near a kitchen sink, in a wet basement, near a swimming pool, or similar locations.
- This appliance should be serviced only by qualified service personnel. Contact the nearest authorized service facility for examination, repair, or adjustment.
- When cleaning surfaces of door and oven that comes together on closing the door, use only mild, nonabrasive soaps or detergents applied with a sponge or soft cloth.
- HOT CONTENTS CAN CAUSE SEVERE BURNS. DO NOT ALLOW CHILDREN TO USE THE MICROWAVE. Use caution when removing hot items.

# Operation

- Do not use this oven for commercial purposes. It is made for household use only.
- Do not run the oven while it is empty.
- If your oven is dropped or damaged, have it thoroughly checked by a qualified service technician before using it again.
- Take care when the door is opened to avoid injury.
- To avoid improperly cooking some foods:
  - Do not heat any type of baby bottle or baby food. Uneven heating may occur and possibly cause personal injury.
  - Do not heat small-necked containers, such as syrup bottles.
  - Do not deep-fat fry in the microwave oven.
  - Do not attempt home canning in the microwave oven.
- Do not use the oven for the purpose of dehumidification (for example, operating the microwave oven with wet newspapers, clothes, toys, electric devices, plants, soil, pets or any other living matter inside it).

The oven must only be used for heating or cooking food. The results of misuse can include safety risks such as fire, burns, or death due to electric shock.

- The appliance and its accessible parts become hot during use. Care should be taken to avoid touching heating elements inside the oven. Children must be kept away unless continuously supervised.
- Do not use recycled paper products. They may contain impurities which may cause sparks and/or fires when used in cooking.
- The door or the outer surface may get hot when the appliance is operating.
- Liquids heated in certain shaped containers (especially cylindrical-shaped containers) may become overheated. The liquid may splash out with a loud noise during or after heating or when adding ingredients (instant coffee, etc.), resulting in harm to the oven and possible injury. In all containers, for best results, stir the liquid several times before heating. Always stir liquid several times between reheatings.
- DO NOT TOUCH HEATING ELEMENTS AND/OR INTERIOR SURFACES OF THE MICROWAVE OVEN.
  - While using the microwave oven or after use or while cleaning the microwave oven, do not allow flammable materials to come into contact with the heating elements and/or interior surfaces of the microwave oven until they have had sufficient time to cool down. Other surfaces, such as the windows of the microwave oven door, the oven lamp, and the cooktop light, can also get hot and may cause burns if not allowed to cool.

# Maintenance

- If the door or door seals are damaged, the oven must not be operated until it has been repaired by an authorized service person.
- The oven should be cleaned regularly and any food deposits should be removed. Failure to maintain the oven in a clean condition could lead to deterioration of the surface that could adversely affect the life of the appliance and possibly result in a hazardous situation.
- Do not rinse trays and racks by placing them in water immediately after cooking. This may cause breakage or damage. Improper use could result in damage to the oven.
- Oversized food or oversized metal utensils should not be inserted in a microwave oven as they may create a fire or risk of electric shock.
- Do not clean with metal scouring pads. Pieces can burn off the pad and touch electrical parts involving a risk of electric shock.
- Do not store any materials, other than manufacturer's recommended accessories, in this oven when not in use.
- Do not cover racks or any other part of the oven with metal foil. This will cause overheating of the oven.
- Do not allow water to spill into the ventilation openings to prevent damage to the internal working parts of the oven. Doing so may cause a fire or create a risk of electric shock.

### **Microwave Oven**

- Must be installed following the provided installation instructions.
- Secure the cord in the cabinet above the oven.
- Do not tamper with the built-in safety switches on the oven door. The oven has several built-in safety switches to make sure the power is off when the door is open.
- Preserve the oven floor:
  - Do not heat the oven floor excessively.
  - Do not allow the gray film on special microwave-cooking packages to touch the oven floor. Put the package on a microwavable dish.
  - Do not cook anything directly on the oven floor or turntable. Use a microwavable dish.
- Keep a browning dish at least 3/16 inch above the oven floor. Carefully read and follow the instructions for the browning dish. If you use a browning dish incorrectly, you could damage the oven floor.

# Ventilation

- Burn Hazard: If a range or cooktop located below the microwave is operating, use caution when operating the microwave. **External components of the microwave may become very hot and cause burns or other injury if touched**.
- Clean Ventilating Hoods Frequently Grease should not be allowed to accumulate on hood or filter.
- When flaming foods under the hood, turn the fan on.
- Use care when cleaning the vent-hood filter. Corrosive cleaning agents, such as lye-based oven cleaners, may damage the filter.
- Suitable for use above both gas and electric cooking equipment 36 inches wide or less.

# Radio/TV/Wireless Equipment Interference

- Operating the microwave oven near equipment-such as a radio, TV, wireless LAN, Bluetooth devices, medical equipment, or wireless equipment which uses the same frequency, may cause interference. This interference is not an indication of a defect in the product or its operation. The product is safe to use.
- Do not use medical equipment near the microwave oven, as the interference could affect the medical equipment's operation.
- When there is interference, it may be reduced or eliminated by taking the following measures:
  - Clean the door and the sealing surfaces of the oven.
  - Reorient the receiving antenna of the radio, TV, Bluetooth, or other equipment.
  - Relocate the microwave oven in relation to the radio, TV, Bluetooth, or other equipment.
  - Move the microwave oven away from the receiver.
  - Plug the microwave oven into a different outlet so that the microwave oven and receiver are on different branch circuits

# FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION RADIO FREQUENCY INTERFERENCE STATEMENT (U.S.A. ONLY)

- This equipment generates and uses ISM frequency energy and if not installed and used properly, that is in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, may cause interference to radio and television reception. It has been type tested and found to comply with limits for ISM Equipment pursuant to part 18 FCC Rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following:
  - Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna of the radio or television.
  - Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
  - Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
  - Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modification to this equipment. It is the responsibility of the user to correct such interference.

# SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

# **Product Overview**

# **Front View**

The appearance or components of the appliance may differ from model to model.



- 1 Vent Grille
- 2 Location of Model Number
- 3 Control Panel
- ④ Grease Filter
- G Cooking Guide
- 6 Cooktop Light
- Glass Turntable
- 8 Window with Metal Shield
- Safety Door Lock System

# Accessories

Accessories will vary depending on the model purchased.



Glass Tray

2 Rotating Ring

# WARNING

Do not operate the oven when it is empty or without the glass tray. It is best to leave a glass of water in the oven when not in use. The water will safely absorb all microwave energy, if the oven is accidentally started.

# CAUTION

- To avoid risk of personal injury or property damage, do not use stoneware, metal cookware, or metal rimmed cookware in the oven.
- Keep aluminum foil at least 1 inch from the oven walls and other pieces of foil. Foil can cause arcing if it gets too close to the oven walls during cooking.

### NOTE

- This microwave oven is designed for household use only. It is not recommended for commercial use.
- Do not overcook food. The microwave oven can be damaged.
- A beep sounds each time you press a key. A melody signals the end of a timer or a cooking cycle.

# **Specifications**

### MVEM182\*\* Model

- Power Supply: 120 V AC, 60 Hz
- Rated Power Consumption: 1600 W (Microwave oven with cooktop lamp and ventilation fan)
- Microwave Output: Max. 1000 W<sup>†</sup>
- Rated Current: 14 A
- Dimensions (W x H x D): 29 7/8" x 16 7/16" x 15 7/8"
- Capacity of Oven Cavity: 1.8 cu.ft.
- Net Weight: 50 lbs.
- † IEC 60705 RATING STANDARD. Specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

# **Installation Requirements**

# Installation Location

Make sure you have enough space and support.

 Mount the oven against a flat, vertical wall, so it is supported by the wall. The wall should be



### 8 INSTALLATION

constructed of a minimum of 2" x 4" wood studding and 3/8" thick drywall or plaster/lath.

- Attach the 2 lag screws supporting the oven to a vertical, 2" x 4" wall stud.
- DO NOT mount the microwave oven to an island or peninsula cabinet.
- Be sure that the upper cabinet and rear wall structures can support 150 lb. plus the weight of any items you place inside the oven or upper cabinet.
- Locate the oven away from areas with strong drafts, such as near windows, doors, and large heating vents.
- Make sure that you have enough space. See the clearance diagrams in the installation manual for the minimum vertical and horizontal clearances.
- Refer to the **Installation Instructions** for details.

### **Electrical Requirements**

The oven is designed to operate on a standard 120 V/60 Hz household outlet. Be sure that the circuit is at least 15 A or 20 A and the microwave oven is the only appliance on the circuit. It is not designed for 50 Hz or any circuit other than a 120 V/60 Hz circuit. No other electrical appliances or lighting circuits should be on this line. If in doubt, consult a licensed electrician.

### **Voltage Warning**

The voltage used at the wall socket must be the same as specified on the oven name plate located on the back or on the side of the control panel of the oven. Using a higher voltage is dangerous and may result in a fire or other type of accident causing oven damage. Low voltage will cause slow cooking. If the microwave oven does not perform normally in spite of proper voltage, unplug and reconnect the power cord.

### **Do Not Block Air Vents**

All air vents should be kept clear during cooking. If air vents are covered during oven operation the oven may overheat. To prevent damage to the oven, a sensitive safety device detects overheating and automatically turns the oven off. The oven cannot be used until it has cooled sufficiently.

# **Grounding Instructions**

This appliance must be grounded. In the event of an electrical short circuit, grounding reduces the risk of electric shock by providing an escape wire for the electric current. This appliance is equipped with a cord having a grounding wire with a grounding plug. The plug must be plugged into an outlet that is properly installed and grounded.

- Consult a qualified electrician or service person if the grounding instructions are not completely understood, or if doubt exists as to whether the appliance is properly grounded.
  - Do not use an extension cord. If the power supply cord is too short, have a qualified electrician or service person install an outlet near the appliance.
- Ensure that the product is properly grounded before use.



- Keep the electrical power cord dry and do not pinch or crush it in any way.
- For a permanently connected appliance: This appliance must be connected to a grounded, metallic, permanent wiring system, or

grounded, metallic, permanent wiring system, or an equipment grounding conductor should be run with the circuit conductors and connected to the equipment grounding terminal or lead on the appliance.

### **WARNING**

- Improper use of the grounding can result in a risk of electric shock.
- Do not use an extension cord. If the power supply cord is too short, have a qualified electrician or service person install an outlet near the appliance.
- A short power supply cord is provided to reduce the risks resulting from becoming entangled in or tripping over a longer cord.

### NOTE

 Because this appliance fits under the cabinet, it has a short power supply cord. See the separate installation instructions for directions on properly placing the cord.

# **Before Installing**

### **Before You Start**

Be sure to read the following safety instructions

Read the entire manual before you begin. The model number plate **1** is located on the oven front.

The mounting plate **2** is located in the upper packing material.



### NOTE

• Vent grille appearance varies by model.

Make sure you have enough space and support.

- Mount the oven against a flat, vertical wall, so it is supported by the wall. The wall should be constructed of a minimum of 2" x 4" wood studding and 3/8" thick drywall or plaster/lath.
- Attach the two lag screws supporting the oven to a vertical, 2" x 4" wall stud.
- Do not mount the microwave oven to an island or peninsula cabinet.
- Be sure the upper cabinet and rear wall structures can support 150 lbs., plus the weight of any items you place inside the oven or upper cabinet.
- Locate the oven away from areas with strong drafts, such as windows, doors, and strong heating vents.
- Be sure you have enough space (minimum vertical and horizontal clearance).



Maximum 13": cabinet depth

- 2 Minimum 30": cabinet opening width
- Minimum 30": clearance from bottom of cabinet to cooking surface or countertop

before installation. (Use templates included with installation instructions.)

- Grounded Outlet (inside upper cabinet)
- Power Supply Cord Hole

### **WARNING**

- If you do not mount the oven as instructed, you risk personal injury and/or property damage.
- If your range has cooktop controls in the front, unplug the range before covering the cooktop to prevent risk of fire and damage if the knobs are accidentally activated while installing the OTR.
- The product is heavy. Use at least 2 people when lifting or installing the appliance to avoid injury or product damage.

# 

• Before you begin installing the oven, place a piece of the carton or other heavy material (a blanket) over the countertop or cooktop to protect it. Do not use a plastic cover. Failure to protect these surfaces could result in property damage.

Parts

### **Included Parts**

### ΝΟΤΕ

• Depending on your ventilation requirements, you may not use all of these parts.



- Power cord clamp bushing (1ea): for the cord hole in a metal upper cabinet
- 2 1/4" x 2" lag screw (2ea): for wall stud holes

### **10** INSTALLATION

- 1/4" x 3" toggle bolts (2ea): for drywall holes
   Spring toggle heads (2ea): for the toggle bolts
- 1/4" x 3" bolts (2ea): for securing to the upper cabinet
- Tapping screws (2ea): for attaching the damper duct connector
- Power cord clamp (1ea) and dark-colored mounting screw (1ea): to hold the power cord
- Mounting plate (1ea): for supporting the microwave oven
- Back-draft damper: 2 pieces must be assembled as shown. (for roof venting or wall venting installation, not for room venting installation)
- Opper cabinet template (1ea)
- Rear wall template (1ea): 1 piece mounting plate only

### NOTE

• You need to install at least one lag screw into a 2" x 4" stud and three anchor bolts into the wall. The mounting area must meet the 150 lb. weight requirement.

# **Tools and Materials**

You will need the following tools and materials for the installation:



- Phillips screwdriver (for the screws)
- 2 Flat blade screwdriver (for the toggle bolts)
- Small side cutters (nipper) or tin snips
- 4 Measuring tape (metal preferred)
- Stud finder
- 6 Plumb line
- Pencil
- **8** Clear tape (for taping the templates to the wall)
- Saber saw (for cutting vent holes for roof or wall venting)
- Electric drill
- **1** 3/8" and 3/4" wood drill bits
- 1/2" and 3/16" drill bits
- B Keyhole saw (for the power cord hole)
- Ouct tape
- Caulking gun and caulk
- Gloves

### NOTE

- If you have brick or masonry walls, you will need special hardware and tools.
- The ductwork you need for the installation is not included. All wall and roof caps must have a back-draft damper (shown in Parts section).
- Wear proper gloves to protect your hands from injury.

# Installing the Microwave Oven

Step 1: Prepare the Electrical Connection

 Locate the grounded electrical outlet 2 for this oven in the upper cabinet 1.

### NOTE

• The outlet should be on a circuit dedicated to the microwave oven (120 V, 60 Hz., AC only) with a 15 or 20 A fused electrical supply.

- Important: If you do not have the proper wall outlet, you MUST have one installed by a qualified electrician.
- 2 You will cut the hole ③ for the power supply cord later when you prepare the wall and upper cabinet in Step 4.

### NOTE

• Do not use an extension cord. Keep the power cord dry and do not pinch or crush it.



## MARNING

- Avoid electric shock. This appliance must be grounded.
- Improper grounding could result in electric shock or other personal injury.

Do not, under any circumstances, remove the power supply cord grounding prong.

# Step 2: Prepare the Venting System

### 🛕 WARNING

• This oven must be properly vented.

You may vent your ductwork in one of three ways. Do not vent into a wall cavity, an attic, or an unused area.

### Room Venting

The oven is located on an inside wall of your house.





Oven

# Wall Venting

The oven is located on an outside wall of your house: 3 1/4" x 10" duct ③ or minimum 6" diameter round duct ⑤.



- 3 1/4" x 10" duct
- 4 Wall cap
- 6 Elbow
- 6 Minimum 6" diameter round duct
- 3 1/4" x 10" to 6" round duct transition

## **Roof Venting**

The oven is located on an outside wall near the roof: 3 1/4" x 10" duct ④ or minimum 6" diameter round duct ⑤.





- Oven
- 8 Roof Cap
- 4 3 1/4" x 10" duct
- **5** Minimum 6" diameter round duct
- **6** 3 1/4" x 10" to 6" round duct transition

### NOTE

• If you choose the rear exhaust method (wall venting or roof venting), be sure there is enough clearance within the wall for the exhaust duct.

# When Installing Venting

- Keep the length of the ductwork and the number of elbows to a minimum to ventilate your oven efficiently. See examples in next section.
- Keep the size of the ductwork the same.
- Do not install two elbows together.
- Use duct tape to seal all joints in the duct system.
- Use caulking to seal the exterior wall or roof opening around the cap.
- After installation, check the outside hood opening and operation.
- For the outside hood opening and size refer to the upper cabinet template or rear wall template.

### NOTE

• The ductwork you need for outside ventilation is not included with your oven. See the standard ductwork fittings.

### **Standard Ductwork Fittings**

If the existing duct is round, you must use a rectangular-to-round adapter, with a rectangular 3" extension duct installed between the damper assembly and the adapter to prevent the exhaust damper from sticking.

### **Duct Length**

The total length of the duct system, including straight duct, elbows, transitions, and wall or roof caps must not exceed 140 feet.

For best performance, do not use more than three 90 degree elbows, and keep the length as short as possible.

Below are the standard fittings and their equivalent length in feet.

3 1/4" x 10" to 6" transition = 5 ft
3 1/4" x 10" roof cap = 24 ft
3 1/4" x 10" 90° elbow = 25 ft
90° elbow = 10 ft
3 1/4" x 10" wall cap = 40 ft
45° elbow = 5 ft
3 1/4" x 10" flat elbow = 10 ft

To calculate the equivalent length of each duct piece used, see the examples below.

For 3 1/4" x 10" systems



# Step 3: Prepare the Venting Blower

Your microwave oven is shipped with the blower assembled for room venting. You need to adjust the blower if you want wall-venting or roof-venting installation.

# 🛕 WARNING

- Electric shock hazard! Unplug unit before working on it.
- Do not pull or stretch the blower wiring. Pulling and stretching the blower wiring could result in electric shock.
- To avoid risk of property damage, unplug the microwave oven or disconnect the power at the source by removing the fuse or throwing the circuit breaker.
- To avoid risk of personal injury, wear protective gloves when handling the mounting plate.

## Installation

**1** Remove any shipping materials and parts from inside the microwave oven. Set them aside for later use.

**2** Cover the countertop or cooktop with a thick, protective covering to protect it from damage and dirt.



Blanket, cardboard or other covering

### NOTE

- If you have a free-standing range, disconnect it, move it onto a piece of cardboard or hardboard and pull it away from the wall, so that you can get closer to the upper cabinet and back wall for easier measuring and drilling.
- **3** Locate the exhaust adapter, grease filters and hardware packet.
- 4 At this point, remove any adhesive tape (if there is any), on the exhaust adapter, the grease filters and the power supply cord.

### Room-Venting (Recirculating) Installation

This oven is shipped assembled for room-venting.

### **Wall-Venting Installation**

Remove one or several blower plate mounting screw(s) ① and one or two blower unit mounting screw(s) ③. Remove the blower plate ④ from the cabinet.



**2** Carefully lift the blower unit out of the microwave oven.



3 Use side cutters or tin snips to cut out and remove the knockouts 2 from the back plate
①. Be careful not to distort the back plate. Discard the knockouts.



**4** To avoid pinching the blower wire, make sure that it is channeled underneath and between the two exhaust ports when they are rotated.



Rotate and reinstall the blower unit ① so that the exhaust ports ② face the rear of the cabinet and are aligned with the rear knockouts. When you insert the blower unit, the blower wire ③ must be routed as shown.



Attach the blower plate 4 to the microwave oven so the blower unit exhaust ports 3 and blower plate opening are aligned. Attach one or two blower unit mounting screw(s) 6 and

then one or several blower plate mounting screw(s) **1**.



7 Insert the tabs on each side of the damper into the holes at the inside rear of the adapter. Attach the exhaust adapter ① to the back plate wall side. Push in securely until it is past the top locking tabs ③ and in the lower locking tabs ③. Make sure that the damper hinge is at the top and that the damper swings freely.



Damper (hinge side up)
Guides on back plate
Slide exhaust adapter into guides on back plate.

# **Roof-Venting Installation**

- **1** Follow steps 1 and 2 under Wall-Venting Installation.
- 2 Rotate and reinstall the blower unit ① so that the exhaust ports ② face the top of the cabinet. When you insert the blower unit, the blower wire ③ must be routed as shown.



Attach blower plate 4 to microwave oven.Attach the one or two blower unit mounting screw(s) 6 and then the one or several blower plate mounting screw(s) 1.



- 2 Blower unit
- Knockouts
- Back plate
- 4 Insert the tabs on each side of the damper into the holes at the inside rear of the adapter. Attach the exhaust adapter 1 to the blower plate 2 with the two tapping screws provided. Make sure that the damper 3 swings freely.



# 🛕 WARNING

• Fire hazard! Correctly install the vent fan before use.

When changing the vent fan position for wall venting or roof venting:

• Properly align the ventilation fan openings and blower plate knockouts.

- Ventilation fan openings should be completely exposed to the outside.
- After installation, check the air ventilation path. Refer to step 2 for proper vent selection.

Improper installation can cause problems such as:

- Inability to assemble the blower plate or ventilation motor correctly
- Abnormal noise during product operation
- Weak ventilation
- Product overheating and the possibility of product breakdown or fire

# Step 4: Prepare the Wall and Upper Cabinet

# 🛕 WARNING

• To avoid personal injury or property damage, do not attempt to install this microwave oven if you cannot find a wall stud. Consult a carpenter or contractor.

# **Measure and Attach Templates**

**1** Using a plumb line and (metal) measuring tape, find and mark the vertical center line on the back wall of the opening.



- 2 Find and mark one or two points where the studs are on the wall. (Studs are normally 16 inches apart.) Then measure and mark the stud locations. If you cannot find any wall studs, consult a local building contractor.
- **3** Draw a vertical line on the wall at the center of the 30" wide opening.

### NOTE

• Be sure the minimum width is 30 inches.

4 Center the rear wall template ② in the space by lining up the plumb line on the wall with the centerline on the template. Then securely tape or tack the rear wall template in place. Make sure the minimum width is 30 inches and that the top of the rear wall template is located a minimum of 30 inches above the cooking surface.

Measure the bottom of the upper cabinet frame. Trim edges A, B, and C on the upper cabinet template **1** so that the template will fit on the bottom of the upper cabinet. If the upper cabinet has a recessed frame, trim the template so it fits inside the recessed area. If needed, the template can be trimmed inside the printed trim lines, as long as you are able to align the centerline correctly. Align the centerline of the upper cabinet template with the centerline of the rear wall template, then securely tape or tack the upper cabinet template in place.



### 🛕 WARNING

• To avoid risk of personal injury, electric shock or death:

- Note where electrical outlets and electrical wires are before you drill into the wall.

- Locate and disconnect power to any electrical circuits that could be affected by installing this oven.

• To avoid risk of personal injury, electric shock or death, cover the edge of the power supply cord hole with the power supply cord bushing.

### **Drill Holes in Wall and Cabinet**

1 Drill holes on the circles. If there is a stud, drill a 3/16" hole for lag screws. If there is no stud, drill a 3/4" hole for toggle bolts. Make sure to use at least 1 lag screw in a stud, and 2 toggle screws in the drywall or the plaster. **2** Drill a 3/8" hole at points J and K on the upper cabinet template.

If the bottom of the upper cabinet is recessed 3/4" or more, you will need 2"x 2" filler blocks (not included) to provide additional support for the bolts.



### Cabinet front

Cabinet bottom shelf

Mark the center of each filler block and drill a 3/8" diameter hole at the marks.

Align filler blocks **2** over the two openings in the top of the microwave oven cabinet and attach to the cabinet with masking tape.



- 3 Cut or drill a 2" diameter hole at the area marked "M power supply cord hole" on the upper cabinet template. If the upper cabinet is metal, you will need to cover the edge of the hole with the power supply cord bushing (supplied) to prevent damage to the cord from the rough metal edge.
- 4 Cut out the venting areas (with the saber saw)
  - Roof-venting: cut out the shaded area marked L on the upper cabinet template.
  - Wall-venting: cut out the shaded area marked F on the rear wall template.
  - Room-venting: go to Step 5: Install the Mounting Plate.
- **5** Complete whichever venting system you have chosen. Use caulking compound to seal the exterior wall or roof opening around the wall cap or roof cap.
## Step 5: Install the Mounting Plate

The oven must be connected to at least one wall stud.

1 Center the rear wall template in the space by lining up the plumb line on the wall with the centerline on the template. Then securely tape or tack the rear wall template in place. Make sure the minimum width is 30 inches and that the top of the rear wall template is located a minimum of 30 inches above the cooking surface.

#### NOTE

- If the cabinets are not plumb, adjust the rear wall template to the cabinets. If the front edge of the cabinet is lower than the back edge, adjust the template to be level with the cabinet front.
- 2 Drill holes at points A and B. Drill the third hole inside area C, through one of the bottom holes to match the location of a stud. If there is a stud, drill a 3/16 hole for lag screws. If there is no stud, drill a 5/8 hole for toggle bolts. These holes must be used for mounting. If the holes are not used, the installation will not be secure. The installer must use these holes for proper installation. Use toggle bolts through these holes, unless one of them lines up with a stud. Use a lag screw for studs. Make sure to use at least 1 lag screw in a stud, and 2 toggle bolts in the drywall or the plaster.



- 1 Minimum 66" from the floor
- Por wall venting only
- Oraw lines on studs
- Draw center Line
- **5** Mounting plate
- 6 Support tab

#### NOTE

- Cut out the shaded area marked F on the rear wall template for wall-venting.
- **3** Remove the template from the rear wall.
- 4 Attach the plate to the wall S. To use spring toggle head bolts 4: Remove the toggle wings from the bolts. Insert the bolts into the mounting plate and replace the spring toggle head to 3/4 of the length past the bolt ends. Insert the spring toggle head into the holes in the wall to mount the plate. You may pull forward on the plate to help in tightening the toggle bolts. Tighten all bolts.



2 Space more than wall thickness6 Bolt end

## Step 6: Attach the Oven to the Wall

### 🛕 WARNING

- To avoid risk of personal injury or property damage, you will need two people to install this microwave oven.
- Carefully lift the microwave oven and hang it on the support tabs at the bottom of the mounting plate. Reaching through the upper cabinet, thread the power supply cord through the power supply cord hole in the bottom of the upper cabinet.



#### 18 INSTALLATION

- 2 Rotate the microwave oven upward so the top of the oven is against the bottom of the upper cabinet or cabinet frame.
- 3 Then insert a bolt down through each hole 1 in the upper cabinet bottom. Tighten the bolts until the gap between the upper cabinet and microwave oven is closed.





**4** Roof venting installation: Install the ductwork through the vent opening in the upper cabinet. Use a caulking gun to seal the exterior roof opening around the exhaust cap.



1 Damper





6 Grasp the filter screen with one hand holding the ring and the other hand holding the opposite end. Insert the end of the filter screen without the ring into the opening and slide towards the side of the microwave oven. Insert the ring end of the filter screen into the opening and slide the entire screen towards the center of the microwave until the screen is securely in position. Repeat for the other filter screen.

## **OPERATION**

## **Control Panel**

The actual control panel may differ from model to model.

## **Control Panel Features**



#### Display

Shows the time of day, cooking time settings, and selected cooking functions.

#### SENSOR COOKING

Select various functions of the Sensor Cooking. See **Cooking Mode** section.

#### Defrost Weight/Time

Press **Defrost Weight/Time** followed by number buttons to thaw frozen meat by weight.

#### 4 Soften/Melt

- **Soften**: Soften butter, icecream, cream cheese, frozen juice.
- **Melt**: Melt butter or margarine, chocolate, cheese, and marshmallows.

#### G Clock

Set the time of day.

#### 6 Cook Time

Set a cooking time.

#### Power Level

Select a cooking power level.

#### 8 Settings

- Adjust the default values for **Wi-Fi**. **Wi-Fi**
- Press and hold **Settings** for 3 seconds to connect to a Wi-Fi network.

#### Number Pads and More/Less

- Number Pads: Press the buttons to set cooking time, power level, quantity, or weight. (Press 1 through 6 for Express Cook.)
- **More/Less**: Adjust the pre-programmed cook time.
  - **More (+)**: Press this button to add ten seconds of cooking time each time you press it.
  - Less (-): Press this button to subtract ten seconds of cooking time each time you press it.

#### O START/Enter

Start all oven functions or enter settings

#### STOP/Clear

• Stop cooking or clear all entries.

#### **Control Lock**

• Press and hold button for three seconds to activate **Control Lock**.

#### ⑦ Timer On/Off

Set the kitchen timer.

#### Turntable On/Off On/O

Turn the turntable on/off. This option is not available in Sensor Cook, Defrost, Soften and Melt modes.

#### Light Hi/Low/Off

Turn the the cooktop light on high/low or off.

#### +30 seconds

Add 30 seconds of cooking time each time you press it.

#### Ø Vent Functions

- Press **On/Off** to turn the vent fan on or off. (default: high)
- Press **2 Speed** to set the vent fan speed.
- Press **Auto Timeset** to set ventilation time. (Turns off after 1, 3, 5, 10 or 30 minutes)

## **Before Use**

## **Setting the Clock**

Set the current time to operate the microwave oven.

- 1 Press **STOP/Clear** and press **Clock**.
- 2 Press the number keys to set the correct time of day, and press **START/Enter**.

#### NOTE

• To reset the clock mode, unplug the power cord and plug it back in.

## Child Lock

Use this safety feature to lock the control panel before cleaning the oven or to prevent children from unsupervised use of the oven.

### Setting Child Lock to ON

- 1 Press STOP/Clear.
- 2 Press and hold **STOP/Clear** until **Loc** appears in the display (approximately 3 seconds).

#### **Canceling Child Lock**

Press and hold **STOP/Clear** until **Loc** disappears in the display (approximately 3 seconds).

#### NOTE

- If set, the time of day reappears in the display after 3 second.
- If the oven is locked, **Loc** appears in the display when any key is pressed.
- Unlock the oven to resume normal use.

## **Kitchen Timer**

The Timer function serves as an extra kitchen timer up to 99 minutes, 99 seconds. It chimes when the set time runs out. It does not start or stop cooking.

#### **Setting Timer for 3 Minutes**

- 1 Press Timer On/Off.
- 2 Press the number keys to set the time (3, 0, and 0), and press **START/Enter**.
  - The timer starts immediately and the time counts down in the display.
- **3** To cancel the timer, press **Timer On/Off**.

#### NOTE

• When the time is over, the oven beeps continuously until you press **Timer On/Off**.

## Setting the Cooktop Light

Use the Light settings to adjust the light for the cooktop below the microwave.

- 1 Press **Hi/Low/Off** once to set the light to high.
- 2 Press Hi/Low/Off twice to set the light to low.
- **3** Press **Hi/Low/Off** again to turn the light off.

## Setting the Turntable

Use this button to turn the turntable off or on. For best results, leave the turntable on unless using cookware that is too large to turn.

- **1** Press **Turntable On/Off** to turn the turntable off.
- **2** Press **Turntable On/Off** again to turn the turntable on.

#### NOTE

• This option is not available in Sensor Cook, Defrost, Soften or Melt modes.

• Be careful when touching the glass turntable during and after cooking. The glass turntable can become hot.

## **Setting Ventilation Functions**

Use this button to set the vent fan speed. The vent removes steam and other vapors from the cooking surface.

#### Turning the Vent Fan On or Off

- 1 Press **On/Off** once to turn the vent fan on.
- **2** Press **On/Off** again to turn the vent fan off.

#### Setting the Vent Fan Speed

When the fan is on, press **2 Speed** repeatedly to change the vent fan speed.

• The fan speed will change in sequence from High to Low.

#### **Setting the Timed Ventilation**

Press **Auto Timeset** repeatedly to set the time before the vent fan automatically turns off.

• The ventilation time will change in sequence from 1 to 3, 5, 10, and 30 minutes.

#### NOTE

- Turn the microwave's vent fan on whenever you use the cooktop below it. The fan captures smoke, steam, and odors and also prevents the heat from the cooktop from damaging microwave components.
- If the microwave is cooking, the vent fan turns on automatically if the sensors detect too much heat from the cooktop. This is designed to prevent microwave component damage.

## **Custom Setting**

Adjust the default values for Wi-Fi

#### **Setting Menu**

Refer to the information below to adjust the settings.

Item	Option
Wi-Fi	・1 Wi-Fi On
	・2 Wi-Fi Off

#### Setting the Wi-Fi on

- 1 Press Settings.
- 2 Press 1 to set the Wi-Fi on.

#### **Microwave Power Levels**

This microwave oven is equipped with 10 power levels to give you maximum flexibility and control over cooking.

• When operating at 100 % power levels for prolonged periods, the output power will be reduced gradually to help prevent the unit from electrically overheating.

Power Level	Use
<b>High 10</b> (100 %)	<ul> <li>Boiling water.</li> <li>Browning ground beef.</li> <li>Making candy.</li> <li>Cooking whole poultry, poultry pieces, fish &amp; vegetables.</li> <li>Cooking tender cuts of meat.</li> </ul>
<b>9</b> (90%)	Reheating rice, pasta & vegetables.
<b>8</b> (80%)	<ul><li> Reheating prepared foods quickly.</li><li> Reheating sandwiches.</li></ul>
<b>7</b> (70%)	<ul> <li>Cooking egg, milk and cheese dishes.</li> <li>Cooking cakes and breads.</li> <li>Melting chocolate.</li> </ul>
<b>6</b> (60%)	<ul><li>Cooking veal.</li><li>Cooking whole fish.</li><li>Cooking puddings and custard.</li></ul>
<b>5</b> (50%)	<ul> <li>Cooking ham, whole poultry and lamb.</li> <li>Cooking rib roast and sirloin tip.</li> </ul>
<b>4</b> (40%)	• Thawing meat, poultry and seafood.
<b>3</b> (30%)	• Cooking less tender cuts of meat.

### 22 OPERATION

Power Level	Use
<b>2</b> (20%)	<ul><li> Taking chill out of fruit.</li><li> Softening butter.</li></ul>
<b>1</b> (10%)	<ul> <li>Keeping casseroles and main dishes warm.</li> <li>Softening butter and cream cheese.</li> </ul>
<b>0</b> (0%)	• Standing time

### Wi-Fi

Connect the appliance to a home Wi-Fi network to use smart functions. See **SMART FUNCTIONS** for more details. Wi-Fi on the appliance can be turned on or off within the Settings menu.

### Setting Up Wi-Fi

- 1 Press and hold the **Settings** button for three seconds. The Wi-Fi icon <sup></sup> ⇒ appears at the top of the display when Wi-Fi is turned on.
- 2 Follow the instructions in the LG ThinQ application.

#### NOTE

• The Wi-Fi icon on the display shows the status of the appliance's network connection. If the Wi-Fi icon is not shown, use the smart phone app to select the Wi-Fi network or connect the product again.

## **Quick Start and Stop**

## **Using Quick Start**

This feature allows you to start the microwave function without pressing the **START/Enter** button.

#### **Cooking for 2 Minutes on High Power** Press +30 seconds four times.

- The oven starts immediately and the time counts down in the display.
- Press +30 seconds repeatedly to extend the cook time by 30 seconds every time the button is pressed (up to 99 min 59 seconds).

## **Interrupting Cooking**

- To stop the oven during a cycle, open the door or Press **STOP/Clear**.
- To restart cooking, close the door and press **START/Enter**.
- To stop the oven and clear the settings during a cycle, press **STOP/Clear**.

## **Manual Cooking**

## **Using Manual Cooking**

Unless you are using the auto cooking functions, the cook time and power level must be set manually.

## Cooking for 5 Minutes, 30 Seconds at 80% Power

- 1 Press Cook Time.
- 2 Press the number keys to set the cook time (5:30).
- 3 Press Power Level.
- 4 Press 8 to select power level 8, and press START/Enter.
  - When cooking is complete, a chime sounds and **End** appears in the display window.

#### NOTE

• If a power level is not selected, the oven defaults to 100% power.

## Using Express Cook

Press the **1** through **6** number buttons to immediately start the microwave function on High for the selected number of minutes.

### Cooking for 3 Minutes at High

- **1** Press **3** to start cooking
  - When cooking is complete, a chime sounds and **End** appears in the display window.

## Using Multi-Stage Cooking

Program an item to cook in 2 stages with different power levels and cooking times.

• 3 stages can be programmed if the first stage is the Defrost cycle.

## Cooking for 3 Minutes at 100% Power and then at 80% for 7 Minutes

- 1 Press **Cook Time** and enter the first cook time (**3**, **0**, and **0**).
- 2 Press **Cook Time** and enter the second cook time (**7**, **0**, and **0**).
- Press Power Level and enter the power level (8).
- 4 Press START/Enter.

## **Cooking Mode**

Cook your favorite foods without having to select cooking times and power levels.

## **Using the Sensor Functions**

The sensor features offer convenient cooking or reheating of popular food items automatically using preprogrammed settings.

The Sensor system works by detecting built up steam so there is no need to set cook times or power levels.

- Make sure the door remains closed.
- Opening the door or pressing the **STOP/Clear** button before the steam is detected will stop the process and the oven.
- Appropriate containers and coverings help assure good sensor cooking results.
  - Always use microwavable containers and cover them with lids or vented plastic wrap.
  - Never use tight-sealing plastic covers. They can prevent steam from escaping and cause food to overcook.
  - Match the amount to the size of the container.
  - Fill containers at least half full for best results.
  - Be sure the outside of the cooking container and the inside of the microwave oven are dry before placing food in the oven. Beads of

moisture turning into steam can mislead the sensor.

## Sensor Reheat Mode

This feature reheats single servings of previously cooked foods or a plate of leftovers.

- 1 Press Reheat.
- 2 Use the number keys or press **Reheat** to enter the desired menu code from the **Sensor Reheat Menu**.

#### **3** Press **Start/Enter**.

• When the cook time ends, a melody sounds and **End** appears in the display.

#### NOTE

 Do not use recycled paper products in the microwave oven. They sometimes contain impurities that cause arcing and sparking.

#### Sensor Reheat Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- 1 Dinner Plate (1 2 servings)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe plate
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Cover with lid or vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 2 Soup / Sauce (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, stir and let stand for 3 minutes.
- 3 Casserole (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 4 Pizza (1 3 slices)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe dish
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Unwrap and place food on a microwave-safe dish.

#### 24 OPERATION

- 5 Baked Goods (1 4 pieces)
  - Cookware: Paper towel
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Place on paper towel. Do not cover.

## MARNING

• Be careful when handling containers. Microwave heating of beverages can result in delayed eruptive boiling. Therefore, care must be taken when handling containers.

## Sensor Cook Mode

Cook your favorite foods automatically using preset programs.

- 1 Press Cook.
- 2 Use the number keys or press **Cook** to enter the desired menu code from the **Sensor Cook Menu**.

### **3** Press **START/Enter**.

• When the cook time ends, a melody sounds and **End** appears in the display.

#### Sensor Cook Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- 1 Rice (0.5 2 cups)
  - Cookware: Deep and large microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Put the rice and water in the bowl as below.

Rice 0.5 cup (96 g), water 1-1/3 cups (314 g) Rice 1 cup (192 g), water 2-1/4 cups (531 g) Rice 1.5 cups (288 g), water 3-1/4 cups (789 g) Rice 2 cups (384 g), water 4-1/2 cups (1062 g) Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand 5-10 minutes.

- 2 Frozen Lasagna (10 21 oz)
  - Food temperature: Frozen
  - Instructions: Remove outer packaging. Slit cover. If not in a microwave-safe container, transfer it to a microwave-safe plate covered

with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand in microwave oven for 3 minutes.

- 3 Fish Fillets (4 16 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe plate
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 5 minutes.
- 4 Shrimp (4 16 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe plate
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 2 minutes.
- 5 Chicken Pieces (4 32 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe plate
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 6 Ground Meat (4 -16 oz.)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. Stir after cooking.
- 7 Casserole (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 8 Boiling Water (1 2 cups (240 ml/cup))
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe cup
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: After cooking, stir to complete reheating

## 

 Be careful when handling the container. Microwave heating of beverages can result in delayed eruptive boiling. Therefore, care must be taken when handling the container.

## Sensor Popcorn Mode

Prepare microwave popcorn simply and easily, one bag at a time.

1 Press Popcorn.

### 2 Press START/Enter.

• When the cook time ends, a melody sounds and **End** appears in the display.

## 

- Only pop popcorn in a microwavable container or in commercial packages designed for microwave ovens.
- Do not reuse popcorn bags.
- Do not leave microwave unattended while popping corn.
- Follow directions on bag.

#### Sensor Popcorn Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- Popcorn(PoP) (2.0 3.5 oz)
  - Pop only one package at a time. For best results, use a fresh bag of popcorn. Place a bag of prepackaged microwave popcorn on the center of the glass tray.

## Sensor Potato Mode

### **Setting the Potato Function**

- 1 Press Potato.
- 2 Press START/Enter.
- **3** Press **STOP/Clear** to cancel the sensor potato function at any time.

#### Sensor Potato Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- Potato(Pot) (1 4 ea (approx. 7 9 oz each))
  - Cookware: Paper towel on the glass tray
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Pierce skin with a fork and place on paper towel on the glass tray. Do not cover. After cooking, let stand for 5 minutes.

## Sensor Vegetable Mode

#### **Setting the Vegetable Function**

- 1 Press Vegetable.
- **2** Use the number keys or press **Vegetable** to enter a category from the menu below.

#### **3** Press **START/Enter**.

4 Press **STOP/Clear** to cancel the sensor vegetable function at any time.

### Sensor Vegetable Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- 1 Fresh vegetable (Hard) (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Hard vegetables: Carrots, beets, etc.
  - Instructions: Add water (1 2 cups: 2 tbsp water, 3 - 4 cups: 4 tbsp water). Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 2 Fresh vegetable (Soft) (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl or casserole
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Soft vegetables: Cauliflower, broccoli, spinach, etc.
  - Instructions: Add water (1 2 cups: 2 tbsp water, 3 - 4 cups: 4 tbsp water). Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 3 Frozen vegetable (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl or casserole
  - Food temperature: Frozen
  - Instructions: Add water (1 2 cups: 2 tbsp water, 3 - 4 cups: 4 tbsp water). Cover with vented plastic wrap. After cooking, let stand for 3 minutes.
- 4 Canned vegetable (1 4 cups)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl or casserole
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Cover with vented plastic wrap. Stir thoroughly after cooking.

## Sensor Beverage Mode

### Setting the Sensor Beverage Function

- 1 Press Beverage.
- 2 Press START/Enter.
- **3** Press **STOP/Clear** to cancel the sensor beverage function at any time.

### Sensor Beverage Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- Tea (tEA) (1 2 cups, 8 oz/240 ml per cup)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe cup
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Pour tea into a mug or microwave-safe cup. After heating, stir to complete reheating.

## MARNING

• Be careful when handling the container. Microwave heating of beverages can result in delayed eruptive boiling. Therefore, care must be taken when handling the container.

## **Defrost Mode**

#### **Using Defrost Menu**

The oven has 4 preset defrost cycles. The **Defrost Menu** shows the suggested defrost cycle for various foods.

- **1** Press **Defrost Weight/Time** repeatedly to select the desired menu code.
- 2 Press the number keys from 1 to 9 to toggle through the preset amounts. Then press **START/Enter**.
  - At the chime, open the oven door and turn the food over. Remove any food that has thawed. Return the items which are still frozen to the oven, and press **START/Enter** to complete the defrost cycle.

#### **Setting Defrost Time**

Use this feature to manually set the defrost time.

- **1** Press **Defrost Weight/Time** five times.
- 2 Enter the desired defrosting time using the number keys. (For 2 minutes: **2**, **0**, and **0**)

### **3** Press **START/Enter**.

#### NOTE

- The countdown appears in the display after **START/Enter** is pressed. The oven chimes once during the defrost cycle.
- When using Defrost, enter the net weight in pounds and tenths of pounds (the weight of the food minus the container).

### **Defrost Menu**

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- 1 Meat (0.1 6.0 lbs)
  - Beef: Ground beef, round steak, stew cubes, tenderloin steak, pot roast, rib roast, rump roast, chuck roast, hamburger patties
  - Lamb: Chops (1 inch thick), rolled roast
  - Pork: Chops (0.5 inch thick), hot dogs, spareribs, country-style ribs, rolled roast, sausage
  - Veal: Cutlets (1 lb, 0.5 inch thick)

When the oven beeps, turn food over. After defrosting, let stand for 5-15 minutes.

- 2 Poultry (0.1 6.0 lbs)
  - Poultry: Whole, cut-up, breast (boneless) Rinse chicken cavity with tap water before cooking and let stand for 60 minutes after cooking for better results.
  - Cornish hens: Whole
  - Turkey: Breast

When the oven beeps, turn food over. After defrosting, let stand for 30 minutes.

- 3 Fish (0.1 6.0 lbs)
  - Fish: Fillets, whole steaks
  - Shellfish: Crab meat, lobster tails, shrimp, scallops

When the oven beeps, turn food over. After defrosting, let stand for 5-10 minutes.

- 4 Bread (0.1 1.0 lbs)
  - Muffins, rolls, cake

When the oven beeps, turn food over. After defrosting, let stand for 1-2 minutes.

#### • 5 Set time

- To defrost by time rather than weight, press **Defrost Weight/Time** five times, enter the amount of time you wish to defrost, then press **START/Enter**.

### Soften/Melt Mode

The oven uses low power to soften foods (butter, ice cream, cream cheese, frozen juice) and melt foods (butter/margarine, chocolate, cheese, marshmallows).

- 1 Press **Soften/Melt** repeatedly to enter the desired menu code from the **Soften or Melt Menu**.
- 2 Press the number keys from 1 to 9 to toggle through the preset amounts. Then press **START/Enter**.

#### Soften Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- 1 Butter (1, 2 or 3 sticks (4 oz/1 stick))
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe dish
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Unwrap and place food in oven. Butter will be at room temperature and ready for use in a recipe. When using ½ stick, press
     Cook Time and press the number keys to set the cooking time (0:40). Press Power Level and press 2 to select power level 2. Press
     START/Enter.
- 2 Ice Cream (Pint, Quart, Half Gallon)
  - Food temperature: Frozen
  - Instructions: Remove lid and cover. Place food in oven. Ice cream will be soft enough to make scooping easier.
- 3 Cream Cheese (3 or 8 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe dish
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Unwrap and place food in oven. Cream cheese will be at room temperature and ready for use in a recipe.
- 4 Frozen Juice (6, 12 or 16 oz)
  - Food temperature: Frozen
  - Instructions: Remove top. Frozen juice will be soft enough to mix easily with water.

#### Melt Menu

Refer to the information below to set the desired menu item and see the recommended amounts.

- 5 Butter / Margarine (1, 2 or 3 sticks (4 oz/1 stick))
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Unwrap and place food in oven. After heating, stir to complete melting. When using ½ stick, press Cook Time and press the number keys to set the cooking time (0:30). Press Power Level and press 10 to select power level 10. Press START/Enter.
- 6 Chocolate (4 or 8 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Chocolate chips or squares of baking chocolate may be used. Unwrap and place food in oven. After heating, stir to complete melting.
- 7 Cheese (8 or 16 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Refrigerated
  - Instructions: Use processed cheese food only. Unwrap and cut into cubes. Place food in oven. Stir the food at the beep. After heating, stir to complete melting.
- 8 Marshmallows (5 or 10 oz)
  - Cookware: Microwave-safe bowl
  - Food temperature: Room
  - Instructions: Unwrap and place food in oven. After heating, stir to complete melting.

## Cookware Guide

#### Microwave-Safe Cookware

Use microwavable cookware.

- Ovenproof Glass
  - Ovenproof glassware that is treated for high intensity heat so it is heat-resistant is microwave-safe.
  - Use utility dishes, loaf dishes, pie plates, cake plates, liquid measuring cups, casseroles and bowls without metal rims.
  - Do not use delicate glassware, such as tumblers or wine glasses, as these might shatter when heated.

#### ・ China

- Use bowls, cups, serving plates, pottery, stoneware, ceramic, and platters without metal rims or handles. Many containers made of these materials are microwave-safe, but test them before use.

#### • Plastic

- **Plastic Storage Containers**: Use plastic dishes, cups, semi-rigid freezer containers and plastic bags only for short cooking times. Do not use them when cooking food for long periods or at high power levels, as the hot food will eventually warp or melt the plastic.
- **Plastic wrap (as a cover):** Lay the plastic wrap loosely over the dish and press it to the sides. Vent plastic wrap by turning back one edge slightly to allow excess steam to escape. The dish should be deep enough so that the plastic wrap will not touch the food. As the food heats it may melt the plastic wrap wherever the wrap touches the food.
- **Plastic Cooking Bags**: Provided they are specially made for cooking, cooking bags are microwave safe. Remember to make a slit in the bag so that steam can escape. Never use ordinary plastic bags for cooking in the microwave oven, as they will melt and rupture.
- **Plastic Microwave Cookware**: A variety of shapes and sizes of microwave cookware are available. You may be able to use items you already have on hand rather than investing in new kitchen equipment.
- Paper
  - Use paper towels, waxed paper, paper napkins, and paper plates with no metal rims or design. Look for the manufacturer's label for use in the microwave oven.
  - Paper plates and containers are convenient and safe to use in the microwave oven, provided that the cooking time is short and the foods to be cooked are low in fat and moisture. Paper towels are also very useful for wrapping foods and for lining baking trays in which greasy foods such as bacon are cooked.
  - Avoid colored paper products as the color may run. Do not use recycled paper products in the microwave oven. They may contain impurities which could cause arcing or fires when used in the microwave.
- Tableware
  - Many containers made of pottery, stoneware and ceramic are also microwave-safe. If in doubt consult the manufacturer's literature or perform the microwave test.

- Do not put plates with painted decoration in the oven, as the paint may contain metal and cause arcing.

### Microwave-Unsafe Cookware

- Metal Containers/Metal Decoration
  - Never use metal or metal-rimmed cookware in the microwave oven.
  - Microwaves cannot penetrate metal. They will bounce off any metal object in the oven and cause arcing, an alarming phenomenon that resembles lightning.
  - Metal shields the food from microwave energy and produces uneven cooking. Also avoid metal skewers, thermometers, foil trays, metal-rimmed or metal-banded dinnerware, casserole dishes, etc. The metal rim interferes with normal cooking and may damage the oven.
- Aluminum Foil
  - Avoid large sheets of aluminum foil because they hinder cooking and may cause harmful arcing.
  - Use small pieces of foil to shield poultry legs and wings.
  - Keep ALL aluminum foil at least 1 inch from the side walls and door of the oven.
- Wood
  - Wood bowls and boards will dry out and may split or crack when you use them in the microwave oven.
  - Baskets react in the same way.
- Tightly Covered Cookware
  - Be sure to leave openings for steam to escape from covered containers.
  - Pierce plastic pouches of vegetables or other food items before cooking.
  - Tightly closed pouches could explode.
- Brown Paper
  - Avoid using brown paper bags.
  - They absorb too much heat and could burn.
- Flawed or Chipped Cookware
  - Any container that is cracked, flawed, or chipped may break in the oven.
- Metal Twist Ties
  - Remove metal twist ties from plastic or paper bags.
  - They become hot and could cause a fire.

## Testing Cookware before Use

Most heat resistant and non-metallic cookware is safe for use in your oven. However, some cookware may contain materials that are not suitable for microwave use. Follow the steps below to find out if cookware can be used in the microwave.

- **1** Place the container in question and a glass measuring cup filled with water next to each other inside the oven.
- **2** Heat the container and glass measuring cup for 1 minute at HIGH power.
  - If the water heats up but the container remains cool to the touch, the container is microwave-safe.
  - If the temperature of the water does not change but the container becomes warm, it is not safe for use in the microwave oven.

## 

- Some items with high lead or iron content are not suitable for microwave cooking.
- Cookware should be checked to ensure that it is suitable for use in the microwave.
- Always be careful when taking cookware out of the oven. Some dishes absorb heat from the cooked food and may be hot.

## **Cooking Guide**

## **Cooking Tips**

Carefully monitor the food in the microwave oven while it is cooking. Directions given in recipes to elevate, stir, etc., are the minimum steps recommended. If food is overcooked (dry), undercooked, or unevenly cooked, make adjustments before or during cooking to correct the problem. Ensure food reaches an internal temperature of 165 °F for safe consumption when cooking and reheating.

- Overcooked or Dry Food
  - **Sprinkling**: Sprinkle low-moisture foods such as roasts and vegetables with water before cooking, or cover them to retain moisture.
  - **Density**: Light, porous food such as cakes and breads cook more quickly than heavy, dense foods such as roasts and casseroles.

- **Shielding**: Cover the corners of square dishes with small strips of aluminum foil to prevent overcooking. Don't use too much foil, and secure the foil to the dish. Foil can cause arcing if it gets too close to the oven walls during cooking.
- **Bones and Fat**: Bones conduct heat, and fat cooks more quickly than meat. Take care with bony or fatty cuts of meat.
- Undercooked Food
  - **Covering**: Cover food with a microwave-safe lid, parchment paper (not waxed paper), or plastic wrap to trap heat and steam and cook food more quickly.
  - **Standing Time**: Let food stand for several minutes after being removed from the oven to allow it to finish cooking and help flavors blend and develop.
  - **Quantity**: The more food you place in the oven, the longer the required cooking time.
  - **Temperature**: Ice-cold ingredients take much longer to cook than room temperature ingredients.
- Unevenly Cooked Food
  - **Stirring**: Stir food from the outside toward the center during cooking, as food at the outside of the dish heats more quickly.
  - **Arranging**: Turn food over several times during cooking. The upper portion of thick foods cooks more quickly than the lower portion.
  - **Shaping**: Place the thickest portions of foods like meat, poultry or fish toward the outside of the cookware to help them cook more evenly. If possible, shape foods into thin rounds or rings.
- Foods with Skin, Shell or Membrane
  - **Skin or Membrane**: Pierce the outsides of foods like potatoes, sausages, or egg whites or yolks before cooking.
  - **Shell**: Pierce or remove the shells from eggs, clams, oysters, or other shelled foods before cooking.
- Defrosting Tips
  - Remove fish, shellfish, meat, and poultry from its original wrapping paper or plastic package. Otherwise, the wrap close to the foods will hold steam and heat, which can cause the outer surface of the foods to be cooked.
  - Remove any metal twist ties.
  - Always slit or pierce plastic pouches or packaging.

- Open containers such as cartons before they are placed in the oven.
- If food is foil wrapped, remove foil and place the food in a suitable container.
- The length of defrosting time varies depending on the shape of the food and on how solidly the food is frozen.
- As food begins to defrost, separate the food into pieces so that they can defrost more easily.
- Turn over food during defrosting or standing time. Separate into pieces and remove food as required.
- Let food stand after defrosting. Food should still be somewhat icy in the center when removed from the oven.
- When using Defrost, the weight to be entered is the net weight in pounds and tenths of pounds (the weight of the food minus the container).
- Slit the skins of frozen food such as sausage.
- Bend plastic pouches of food to ensure even defrosting.
- Place food in a shallow container or in a microwave roasting dish to catch the drippings.
- Always underestimate defrosting time. Food should still be somewhat icy in the center when removed from the oven. If defrosted food is still frozen solid in the center, return it to the microwave oven for more defrosting.
- Depending on the shape of the food, some areas may defrost more quickly than others.
- The shape of the package affects how quickly food will defrost. Shallow packages will defrost more quickly than a deep block.
- For best results, shape ground meat into the form of a doughnut before freezing. When defrosting, scrape off thawed meat when the beep sounds and continue defrosting.
- Use small pieces of aluminum foil to shield parts of food such as chicken wings, leg tips, fish tails, or areas that start to get warm. Make sure the foil does not touch the sides, top, or bottom of the oven. The foil can damage the oven lining.

## Precautions

#### 🛕 WARNING

- Do not use your microwave oven to cook eggs in the shell. Pressure can build up inside the shell, causing it to burst.
- Never operate the oven when it is empty. Food or water should always be in the oven during operation to absorb the microwave energy.
- To program the oven, press the center of each button firmly. When a button is pressed correctly, a beep sounds and the oven is activated. Do not press several buttons at once.
- Do not strike the control panel with silverware, utensils, etc. It may be damaged or broken.
- Always be careful when taking cookware out of the oven. Some dishes absorb heat from the cooked food and may be hot. See the Cookware Guide section for more information.
- To avoid breakage, allow cookware to cool before rinsing or submerging in water. Always allow the turntable to cool before removing it from the oven.
- Do not use the oven to dry newspapers or clothes. They may catch fire.
- Use thermometers that have been approved for microwave oven cooking.
- The turntable must always be in place when you operate the oven.

## **SMART FUNCTIONS**

## LG ThinQ Application

This feature is only available on models with Wi-Fi.

The **LG ThinQ** application allows you to communicate with the appliance using a smartphone.

## LG ThinQ Application Features

#### • Settings

- Allows you to set various options on the oven and in the application.
- Smart Diagnosis<sup>™</sup>
  - This function provides useful information for diagnosing and solving issues with the appliance based on the pattern of use.
- Scan to Cook
  - Scan the barcode on a ready-made meal using the LG ThinQ application and send the recommended or customized cooking instructions straight to your oven.
- Monitoring
  - This function helps you check the current status, remaining time, cook settings and end time in one place.
- Product Notifications
  - Turn on the Push Alerts to receive appliance status notifications. The notifications are triggered even if the **LG ThinQ** application is not open.
- Timer
  - You can set the timer from the application.
- Firmware Update
  - Keep the appliance updated.

## NOTE

- In the following cases, you must update the network information for each appliance in the LG ThinQ application under Device Cards → Settings → Change Network.
  - wireless router is changed
  - wireless router password is changed
  - Internet service provider is changed
- This information is current at the time of publication. The application is subject to change for product improvement purposes without notice to users.

## Installing LG ThinQ Application and Connecting an LG Appliance

## Models with QR Code

Scan the QR code attached to the product using the camera or a QR code reader application on your smartphone.



## Models without QR Code

- 1 Search for and install the LG ThinQ application from the Google Play Store or Apple App Store on a smartphone.
- 2 Run the LG ThinQ application and sign in with your existing account or create an LG account to sign in.
- **3** Touch the add (+) button on the **LG ThinQ** application to connect your LG appliance. Follow the instructions in the application to complete the process.

### NOTE

- To verify the Wi-Fi connection, check that the  $\widehat{\widehat{\gamma}}$  icon on the control panel is lit.
- The appliance supports 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi networks only. To check your network frequency, contact your Internet service provider or refer to your wireless router manual.
- LG ThinQ is not responsible for any network connection problems or any faults, malfunctions, or errors caused by network connection.
- The surrounding wireless environment can make the wireless network service run slowly.
- If the distance between the appliance and the wireless router is too far, the signal becomes weak. It may take a long time to connect or fail to install the application.

#### NOTE

- If the appliance is having trouble connecting to the Wi-Fi network, it may be too far from the router. Purchase a Wi-Fi repeater (range extender) to improve the Wi-Fi signal strength.
- The network connection may not work properly depending on the Internet service provider.
- The Wi-Fi may not connect or the connection may be interrupted because of the home network environment.
- If the appliance cannot be connected due to problems with the wireless signal transmission, unplug the appliance and wait about a minute before trying again.
- If the firewall on your wireless router is enabled, disable the firewall or add an exception to it.
- The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)
- Smartphone user interface (UI) may vary depending on the mobile operating system (OS) and the manufacturer.
- If the security protocol of the router is set to **WEP**, network setup may fail. Change the security protocol (**WPA2** is recommended), and connect the product again.

### **Radio Equipment Specifications**

Туре	Frequency Range	Output Power	
Wi-Fi	2412 MHz - 2462 MHz	< 30 dBm	
Bluetooth	2402 MHz - 2480 MHz	< 50 UDIII	

### **FCC Notice**

The following notice covers the transmitter module contained in this product.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This transmitter must not be colocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm (7.8 inches) between the antenna and your body. Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

### Open Source Software Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligation to disclose source code, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents, please visit https:// opensource.lge.com.

LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

## Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> Feature

This feature is only available on models with the logo.

Use this feature to help you diagnose and solve problems with your appliance.

#### NOTE

- For reasons not attributable to LGE's negligence, the service may not operate due to external factors such as, but not limited to, Wi-Fi unavailability, Wi-Fi disconnection, local app store policy, or app unavailability.
- The feature may be subject to change without prior notice and may have a different form depending on where you are located.

## Using LG ThinQ to Diagnose Issues

If you experience a problem with your Wi-Fi equipped appliance, it can transmit troubleshooting data to a smartphone using the **LG ThinQ** application.

• Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis feature in the menu. Follow the instructions provided in the LG ThinQ application.

### Using Audible Diagnosis to Diagnose Issues

Follow the instructions below to use the audible diagnosis method.

- Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis feature in the menu. Follow the instructions for audible diagnosis provided in the LG ThinQ application.
- **1** Press the **START/Enter** button for three seconds.
  - If the display has been locked, you must deactivate the lock and then reactivate it.
- 2 Hold the mouthpiece of your phone in front of the **Smart Diagnosis** logo located on the control panel.



3 Keep the phone in place until the tone transmission has finished. The display will count down the time. Once the countdown is over and the tones have stopped, the diagnosis will be displayed in the application.

#### NOTE

• For best results, do not move the phone while the tones are being transmitted.

## MAINTENANCE

## Cleaning

## **Cleaning the Interior**

- **1** Use a damp cloth to clean the surfaces of the door and wipe out crumbs between the door and the frame.
- **2** Remove greasy spatters with a soapy cloth and then rinse and dry.
  - Wipe spatters immediately with a wet paper towel, especially after cooking chicken or bacon.
  - If steam accumulates inside or outside of the oven door, wipe the panels with a soft cloth.
  - For stubborn soil, boil a cup of water in the oven for 2 to 3 minutes. Steam will soften the soil. To get rid of odors inside the oven, boil a cup of water with some lemon juice or vinegar in it.
  - If some induction cleaners containing abrasives are used, the appearance of the product may be damaged.

## **Cleaning the Exterior**

- 1 Clean the outside of the oven with soap and water.
- **2** Rinse with clean water and dry with a soft cloth or paper towel.
  - To prevent damage to the internal working parts of the oven, do not allow water to seep into the ventilation openings.
  - The door and door seals should be kept clean. Use warm, soapy water to clean. Rinse off soap residue and dry thoroughly.
  - Frequently wipe metal parts with a damp cloth.

## **Cleaning the Control Panel**

**1** Open the door to prevent the oven from accidentally starting.

- **2** Wipe with a damp cloth followed immediately by a dry cloth.
- **3** Press **STOP/Clear** after cleaning.

## **Cleaning the Accessories**

Wash the glass tray and rotating ring in mild, sudsy water. For heavily soiled areas, use a mild cleanser and scouring sponge. Dry completely before use.

• The glass tray and rotating ring are dishwasher safe.

#### NOTE

• Abrasive cleansers, steel wool pads, gritty wash cloths, some paper towels, and other abrasive surfaces can damage the control panel and the interior and exterior oven surfaces.

## **Cleaning the Grease Filters**

Filters should be cleaned at least once a month or more often if needed.

**1** To remove, slide the grease filter back slightly and pull it downward.



- **2** Soak grease filters in hot water and a mild detergent.
- **3** Rinse well and shake to dry.
  - Do not use ammonia or place in a dishwasher. The aluminum will darken.

**4** To reinstall, slide the filter in on the back side and push it upward to secure it.

#### NOTE

• Do not operate the hood without the filters in place.

## **Replacing Parts**

## **Replacing the Charcoal Filter**

If your oven is vented inside, the charcoal filter should be replaced every 6 to 12 months, and more often if necessary. The charcoal filter cannot be cleaned. To order a new charcoal filter, contact an LG Customer Information Center or visit the lg.com website.

- **1** Unplug the power cord and wear gloves.
- **2** Remove the vent cover screw. Open the oven door, hold both sides of the vent cover and remove it.



**3** Remove the old charcoal filter.



**4** Slide a new charcoal filter into place.



- **5** Slide the bottom of the vent cover into place. Push the top until it snaps into place. Tighten the screw to secure the vent grille in place.
- **6** Close the oven door, plug in the power cord and set the clock.

## **Replacing the Cooktop Light**

- **1** Unplug the power cord and wear gloves before replacing the light.
- **2** Remove the bulb cover screws and open the bulb cover.



- **3** Replace the bulb.
  - Use a 130 V, 50 W halogen bulb.
- 4 Close the bulb cover, and tighten the bulb cover screws in place.
- **5** Plug in the power cord and set the clock.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

## FAQs

## **Frequently Asked Questions**

#### Q: Will the oven be damaged if it operates while empty?

A: Yes. Never operate the oven while it is empty or without the glass tray.

#### Q: Does microwave energy pass through the viewing screen in the door?

A: No. The metal screen bounces the energy back to the oven cavity. The holes (or ports) allow only light to pass through. They do not let microwave energy pass through.

#### Q: Why do I see a light reflection around the outer case?

A: This light is from the oven light which is located between the oven cavity and the outer wall of the oven.

#### Q: What are the various sounds I hear when the oven is operating?

A: The clicking sound is caused by a mechanical switch turning the microwave oven's magnetron ON and OFF.

The heavy hum and clunk is from the change in power the magnetron draws as it is turned ON and OFF by a mechanical switch. The change in blower speed is from the change in line voltage caused by the magnetron being turned ON and OFF.

#### Q: Can my oven be damaged if food is cooked for too long?

A: Like any other cooking appliance, it is possible to overcook food to the point that the food creates smoke and even possibly fire, and damages the inside of the oven. It is always best to be near the oven while you are cooking.

#### Q: Why is a standing time recommended after microwave cooking time is over?

A: Standing time allows foods to continue cooking evenly for a few minutes after the actual microwave oven cooking cycle. The amount of standing time depends upon the density of the foods.

#### Q: Why is additional time required for cooking food stored in the refrigerator?

A: As in conventional cooking, the initial temperature of food affects total cooking time. You need more time to cook food taken out of a refrigerator than for food at room temperature.

#### Q: Sometimes the door of my oven appears wavy. Is this normal?

A: This appearance is normal and does not affect the operation of your oven.

#### Q: Why does the glass tray not move?

A: The correct side of the tray should be facing up and the tray should sit firmly on the center hub. The support is not operating correctly. Reinstall the glass tray and restart the oven. Cooking without the glass tray can give you poor results. On some models, the turntable may be turned off. See Setting the Turntable in the Operation section.

## Q: Why does the dish become hot when I microwave food in it? I thought that this should not happen.

A: As the food becomes hot it will conduct the heat to the dish. Use hot pads to remove food after cooking.

#### Q: What does standing time mean?

A: Standing time means that food should be taken out of the oven and covered for additional time after cooking. This process allows the cooking to finish, saves energy, and frees the oven for other purposes.

#### Q: Can I pop popcorn in my oven? How do I get the best results?

A: Yes. Pop packaged microwave popcorn following manufacturer's guidelines or use the preprogrammed Popcorn button.
 Do not use regular paper bags. Use the listening test by stopping the oven as soon as the popping slows to a pop every one or two seconds. Do not try to repop unpopped kernels. You can also use special microwave poppers. When using a popper, be sure to follow manufacturer's directions. Do not pop popcorn in glass utensils.

#### Q: Why does steam come out of the air exhaust vent?

A: Steam is normally produced during cooking. The oven has been designed to vent steam out of the vent.

#### Q: Why aren't the function buttons working?

A: Make sure that the oven is not in Control Lock mode. "Loc" will show in the display if Control Lock is activated. To deactivate Control Lock, press and hold **STOP/Clear** for three seconds.

## **Before Calling for Service**

Review this section before calling for service; doing so will save you both time and money. For detailed information or videos, visit <u>www.lg.com</u> for the troubleshooting page.

## Operation

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Microwave oven	Power cord is unplugged, door is open, or cooking time has not been set.
does not start	• Plug in power cord or check for a blown circuit fuse or a tripped main circuit breaker.
	Close oven door.
	• Set cooking time.
	Timer function started.
	<ul> <li>If the display shows a time counting down but the oven is not cooking, check to see if a Timer function has been started instead of a cooking function.</li> </ul>
Oven light does not	Power cord is unplugged.
work	• Plug in power cord.
Arcing or Sparking	Cookware is not microwave safe, or the oven is being operated while it is empty.
	Use microwave-safe cookware. When in doubt, test cookware before use.
	• Do not operate oven while it is empty.
	Wire twist-ties have not been removed from paper or plastic bags, or the metal rack was installed improperly.
	Remove wire twist-ties from paper or plastic bags.
	Place the rack securely in the four plastic supports.
Incorrect Time of	Power interruption.
Day	Reset the time. See Setting the Clock section to reset time of day.
Unevenly Cooked	Cookware is not microwave safe, or cook settings were wrong.
Foods	Test cookware to make sure it is microwave safe.
	• Do not cook without the glass tray.
	Turn or stir food while cooking.
	Defrost food completely before cooking.
	Use correct cook time and power level.
	Check position of aluminum strips used to prevent overcooking.
Overcooked Foods	Cooking settings and methods are wrong.
	Change cook time or power level.
Undercooked Foods	Cookware is not microwave safe, or cook settings were wrong.
	Test that cookware is microwave safe.
	Defrost food completely before cooking.
	Change cook time or power level.
	Make sure that ventilation ports are not blocked.
Improper Defrosting	Cookware is not microwave safe, or cook settings were wrong.
	Test that cookware is microwave safe.
	Change defrost time or weight.
	Turn or stir food during defrost cycle.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Moisture collects on oven window or steam comes from oven vent	<ul><li>This happens when cooking foods high in moisture.</li><li>This is normal.</li></ul>

Wi-Fi

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Trouble connecting	The password for the Wi-Fi network was entered incorrectly.
appliance and smartphone to Wi-Fi	Delete your home Wi-Fi network and begin the connection process again.
network	Mobile data for your smartphone is turned on.
	• Turn off the <b>Mobile data</b> on your smartphone before connecting the appliance.
	The wireless network name (SSID) is set incorrectly.
	<ul> <li>The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)</li> </ul>
	The router frequency is not 2.4 GHz.
	<ul> <li>Only a 2.4 GHz router frequency is supported. Set the wireless router to 2.4 GHz and connect the appliance to the wireless router. To check the router frequency, check with your Internet service provider or the router manufacturer.</li> </ul>
	The appliance and the router are too far apart.
	• If the appliance is too far from the router, the signal may be weak and the connection may not be configured correctly. Move the router closer to the appliance or purchase and install a Wi-Fi repeater.
	During Wi-Fi setup, the app is requesting a password to connect to the product (on certain phones).
	<ul> <li>Locate the network name which starts with "LG" under Settings &gt; Networks. Note the last part of the network name.</li> </ul>
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XX-XX-XX, enter lge12345.
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XXXX, enter XXXX twice as your password. For example, if the network name appears as LGE_Appliance_8b92, then you would enter 8b928b92 as your password. In this instance, the password is case sensitive and the last 4 characters are unique to your appliance.

## LIMITED WARRANTY

## USA

#### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

ARBITRATION NOTICE: THIS LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINS AN ARBITRATION PROVISION THAT REQUIRES YOU AND LG ELECTRONICS ("LG") TO RESOLVE DISPUTES BY BINDING ARBITRATION INSTEAD OF IN COURT, UNLESS YOU CHOOSE TO OPT OUT. IN ARBITRATION, CLASS ACTIONS AND JURY TRIALS ARE NOT PERMITTED. PLEASE SEE THE SECTION TITLED "PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES" BELOW.

Should your LG Microwave Oven ("Product") fail due to a defect in materials or workmanship under normal and proper use, during the warranty period set forth below, LG will, at its option, repair or replace the Product. This limited warranty is valid only to the original retail purchaser of the Product ("You") and applies only when purchased lawfully and used within the United States including U.S. Territories.

WARRANTY PERIOD		
Microwave Oven	Inverter Magnetron Only	
Parts (internal/functional parts only) and Labor: One (1) year from the date of original retail purchase	Parts Only: Ten (10) years from the date of original retail purchase You are responsible for any applicable labor cost.	

- Replacement Products and parts are warranted for the remaining portion of the original warranty period or ninety (90) days, whichever is greater.
- Replacement Products and parts may be new, reconditioned, refurbished, or otherwise factory remanufactured.
- Replaced Product or part(s) will be the property of LG.
- Proof of original retail purchase specifying the Product model and date of purchase is required to obtain warranty service under this limited warranty.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ON THE PRODUCT IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL LG OR ITS U.S. DISTRIBUTORS/DEALERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST GOODWILL, LOST REVENUES OR PROFITS, WORK STOPPAGE, IMPAIRMENT OF OTHER GOODS, COST OF REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT, LOSS OF USE, OR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. LG'S TOTAL LIABILITY, IF ANY, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

### THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

- Service trips to deliver, pick up, or install, educate how to operate, correct wiring, or correct unauthorized repairs.
- Damage or failure of the Product to perform during power failures and interrupted or inadequate electrical service.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by leaky or broken water pipes, frozen water pipes, restricted drain lines, inadequate or interrupted water supply or inadequate supply of air.

- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from operating the Product in a corrosive atmosphere or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by accidents, pests and vermin, lightning, wind, fire, floods, acts of nature, or any other causes beyond the control of LG.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by unauthorized modification or alteration, or if the Product is used for other than the intended purpose, or any water leakage where the Product was not properly installed.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by incorrect electrical current, voltage, or plumbing codes.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by transportation, storage, and/or handling, including scratches, dents, chips, and/or other damage to the finish of the Product, unless such damage is reported within one (1) week of delivery.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from misuse, abuse, improper installation, repair, or maintenance. Improper repair includes the use of parts not authorized by LG. Improper installation or maintenance includes installation or maintenance contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by the use of parts, components, accessories, consumable cleaning products, or any other products or services that were not authorized by LG.
- Damage or missing items to any display or open box Product.
- Refurbished Product or any Product sold "As Is", "Where Is", "With all Faults", or similar disclaimer.
- Products with original serial numbers that have been removed, altered, or cannot be readily determined.
- Increases in utility costs and additional utility expenses.
- Any noises associated with normal operation.
- Products used for other than normal and proper household use (e.g., commercial or industrial use) or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Costs associated with removal and reinstallation of the Product for repairs, or the removal and reinstallation of the Product if it is installed in an inaccessible location or not installed in accordance with the Product Owner's manual.
- Accessories, removable components, or consumable parts (e.g. Shelves, door bins, drawers, water/air filters, racks, light bulbs, batteries, etc., as applicable), except for internal/functional parts covered under this limited warranty.

#### The cost of repair or replacement under these excluded circumstances shall be borne by You.

TO OBTAIN WARRANTY SERVICE AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Call <u>1-800-243-0000</u> and select the appropriate option from the menu.

Or visit our website at http://www.lg.com

Or by mail: LG Electronics Customer Service P.O. Box 240007 Huntsville, AL 35813 ATTN: CIC

### NOT COVERED BY WARRANTY

Problem	Cause	Solution
Unit has no power	<ul> <li>House power turned off (power supply)</li> <li>Tripped breaker.</li> <li>The power cord is not installed properly.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Check house power supply.</li> <li>Check proper power cord connection.</li> <li>Check extension cord.</li> </ul>

#### 42 LIMITED WARRANTY

Problem	Cause	Solution
Spark / Arcing	Aluminum foil or metal utensil used in microwave mode.	<ul> <li>Check user instructions.</li> <li>DO NOT use aluminum foil or metal utensils in microwave mode.</li> </ul>
Microwave oven installation issue. • Vibration noise • Unit is not level • Installation damage	<ul> <li>Mounting bracket screw not fixed completely.</li> <li>Mounting plate not aligned.</li> <li>3/16" Hole on Studs, 5/8" Hole on Drywall Only</li> <li>Image: Completely of the study of the study</li></ul>	Check with installer first.



## **PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:**

ALL DISPUTES BETWEEN YOU AND LG ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE PRODUCT SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT IN A COURT OF GENERAL JURISDICTION. BINDING ARBITRATION MEANS THAT YOU AND LG ARE EACH WAIVING THE RIGHT TO A JURY TRIAL AND TO BRING OR PARTICIPATE IN A CLASS ACTION.

**Definitions.** For the purposes of this section, references to "LG" mean LG Electronics U.S.A., Inc., its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, beneficiaries, predecessors in interest, successors, assigns and suppliers; references to "dispute" or "claim" shall include any dispute, claim or controversy of any kind whatsoever (whether based in contract, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, fraud, misrepresentation or any other legal or equitable theory) arising out of or relating in any way to the sale, condition or performance of the product or this Limited Warranty.

**Notice of Dispute.** In the event you intend to commence an arbitration proceeding, you must first notify LG in writing at least 30 days in advance of initiating the arbitration by sending a letter to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. You and LG agree to engage in good faith discussions in an attempt to amicably resolve your claim. The notice must provide your name, address, and telephone number; identify the product that is the subject of the claim; and describe the nature of the claim and the relief being sought. If you and LG are unable to resolve the dispute within 30 days, either party may proceed to file a claim for arbitration.

**Agreement to Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver.** Upon failure to resolve the dispute during the 30 day period after sending written notice to LG, you and LG agree to resolve any claims between us only by binding arbitration on an individual basis, unless you opt out as provided below. Any dispute between you and LG shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's product or claim. More specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, any dispute between you and LG shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class or representative action. Instead of

arbitration, either party may bring an individual action in small claims court, but that small claims court action may not be brought on a class or representative basis.

**Arbitration Rules and Procedures.** To begin arbitration of a claim, either you or LG must make a written demand for arbitration. The arbitration will be administered by the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") and will be conducted before a single arbitrator under the AAA's Consumer Arbitration Rules that are in effect at the time the arbitration is initiated (referred to as the "AAA Rules") and under the procedures set forth in this section. The AAA Rules are available online at <u>www.adr.org/consumer</u>. Send a copy of your written demand for arbitration, as well as a copy of this provision, to the AAA in the manner described in the AAA Rules. You must also send a copy of your written demand to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. If there is a conflict between the AAA Rules and the rules set forth in this section, the rules set forth in this section will govern. This arbitration provision is governed by the Federal Arbitration Act. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. All issues are for the arbitrator to decide, except that issues relating to the scope and enforceability of the arbitration provision and to the arbitratioin you the dispute are for the court to decide. The arbitrator is bound by the terms of this provision.

**Governing Law.** The law of the state of your residence shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between us except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal law.

**Fees/Costs.** You do not need to pay any fee to begin an arbitration. Upon receipt of your written demand for arbitration, LG will promptly pay all arbitration filing fees to the AAA unless you seek more than \$25,000 in damages, in which case the payment of these fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for herein, LG will pay all AAA filing, administration and arbitrator fees for any arbitration initiated in accordance with the AAA Rules and this arbitration provision. If you prevail in the arbitration, LG will pay your attorneys' fees and expenses as long as they are reasonable, by considering factors including, but not limited to, the purchase amount and claim amount. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable law allows for an award of reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, an arbitrator can award them to the same extent that a court would. If the arbitrator finds either the substance of your claim or the relief sought in the demand is frivolous or brought for an improper purpose (as measured by the standards set forth in Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 11(b)), then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. In such a situation, you agree to reimburse LG for all monies previously disbursed by it that are otherwise your obligation to pay under the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for, LG waives any rights it may have to seek attorneys' fees and expenses from you if LG prevails in the arbitration.

**Hearings and Location.** If your claim is for \$25,000 or less, you may choose to have the arbitration conducted solely on the basis of (1) documents submitted to the arbitrator, (2) through a telephonic hearing, or (3) by an in-person hearing as established by the AAA Rules. If your claim exceeds \$25,000, the right to a hearing will be determined by the AAA Rules. Any in-person arbitration hearings will be held at a location within the federal judicial district in which you reside unless we both agree to another location or we agree to a telephonic arbitration.

**Opt Out.** You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. If you opt out, neither you nor LG can require the other to participate in an arbitration proceeding. To opt out, you must send notice to LG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the product by either: (i) sending an e-mail to <u>optout@lge.com</u>, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out" or (ii) calling <u>1-800-980-2973</u>. You must include in the opt out e-mail or provide by telephone: (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the product was purchased; (c) the product model name or model number; and (d) the serial number (the serial number can be found (i) on the product; or (ii) online by accessing <u>https://www.lg.com/us/support</u> and clicking on "How do I find my model number?").

You may only opt out of the dispute resolution procedure in the manner described above (that is, by e-mail or telephone); no other form of notice will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the full benefits of the Limited Warranty. If you keep this product and do not opt out, then you accept all terms and conditions of the arbitration provision described above.

Memo 47



LG Customer Information Center	Centro de Información al Cliente LG	Centre de Service à la Clientèle de LG
For inquiries or comments, visit <b>www.lg.com</b> or call: 1-800-243-0000 U.S.A. 1-888-542-2623 CANADA	Para consultas o comentarios, visite www.lg.com o llame por teléfono: 1-800-243-0000 EE.UU. 1-888-542-2623 CANADÁ	Pour des questions ou des commentaires, visitez www.lg.com/ca_fr ou appelez : 1-800-243-0000 ÉTATS-UNIS 1-888-542-2623 CANADA
Register your product Online!	¡Registre su producto en línea!	Enregistrez votre produit en ligne!
www.lg.com	www.lg.com	www.lg.com/ca_fr

Scan to see the online manual.





# OWNER'S MANUAL FRENCH DOOR REFRIGERATOR

Read this owner's manual thoroughly before operating the appliance and keep it handy for reference at all times.

ENGLISH

LRFGC2706\* / LRFLC2706\* / LLFGC2706\* / LRFLS3206\* / LF27D6200\* / LF32S6000\* / LRFLC2716\* / LRFLS3216\*



MFL69497050 Rev.07\_112924 www.lg.com

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## 3 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- 3 READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE
- 3 WARNING
- 6 CAUTION

## 7 PRODUCT OVERVIEW

7 Product Features

### **11 INSTALLATION**

- 11 Before Installing
- 12 Choosing the Proper Location
- 15 Removing/Assembling Handles
- 16 Removing/Assembling Doors and Drawers
- 20 Connecting Refrigerator to Water Supply
- 22 Leveling and Door Alignment
- 24 Turning on the Power

## **25 OPERATION**

- 25 Before Use
- 26 Control Panel
- 28 Sabbath Mode
- 28 Water Dispenser
- 29 Automatic Icemaker
- 30 Storing Food
- 31 Crisper Drawers
- 32 Glide'N'Serve
- 32 Refrigerator Shelves
- 33 InstaView
- 33 Door Bins
- 34 Durabase

## **35 SMART FUNCTIONS**

- 35 LG ThinQ Application
- 37 Smart Grid Function
- 38 Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> Feature

#### **40 MAINTENANCE**

- 40 Cleaning
- 40 Air Filter
- 41 Water Filter

### **46 TROUBLESHOOTING**

46 FAQs

47 Before Calling for Service

## 56 LIMITED WARRANTY

- 56 USA
- 60 Canada

## **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

## **READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE**

## Safety Messages

#### Your safety and the safety of others are very important.

We have provided many important safety messages in this manual and on your appliance. Always read and follow all safety messages.



This is the safety alert symbol.

This symbol alerts you to potential hazards that can kill or injure you and others. All safety messages will follow the safety alert symbol and either the word WARNING or CAUTION.

These words mean:



#### WARNING

You may be killed or seriously injured if you do not follow instructions.



#### CAUTION

You may be injured or cause damage to the product if you do not follow instructions.

All safety messages will tell you what the potential hazard is, tell you how to reduce the chance of injury, and tell you what may happen if the instructions are not followed.

## WARNING

## 

• To reduce the risk of explosion, fire, death, electric shock, scalding or injury to persons when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

## Installation

- To reduce the risk of injury to persons, adhere to all industry recommended safety procedures including the use of long-sleeved gloves and safety glasses.
- Never attempt to operate this appliance if it is damaged, malfunctioning, partially disassembled, or has missing or broken parts, including a damaged cord or plug.
- Only connect this product to a dedicated grounded electrical outlet rated for use with this product (115 V, 60 Hz, AC only). It is the user's responsibility to replace a standard 2-prong wall outlet with a standard 3-prong wall outlet.
- Do not use an outlet that can be turned off with a switch. Do not use an extension cord.
- The appliance must be positioned for easy access to a power source.
- When moving the refrigerator, be careful not to roll over or damage the power cord.
- Contact an authorized service center when installing or relocating the refrigerator.
- Do not, under any circumstances, cut or remove the third (ground) prong from the power cord.
- Keep packing materials out of the reach of children. Packaging material can be dangerous for children. There is a risk of suffocation.
- Do not install the refrigerator in a damp or dusty place where insulation on electrical parts may deteriorate.
- Do not place the refrigerator in direct sunlight or expose it to the heat from heating appliances such as stoves or heaters.

#### 4 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- Do not bend or pinch the power cord excessively or place heavy objects on it.
- When positioning the appliance, ensure the supply cord is not trapped or damaged.
- Do not locate multiple portable socket-outlets or portable power supplies at the rear of the appliance.

## Operation

- This appliance is intended to be used in household and similar applications such as:
  - staff kitchen areas in shops, offices and other working environments;
  - farm houses and by clients in hotels, motels and other residential type environments;
  - bed and breakfast type environments;
  - catering and similar non-retail applications.
- This appliance is not for use in portable or mobile installations, such as marine or RV uses, where it will be in motion while operating.
- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.
- This product is not to be used for special purposes such as the storage of medicine or test materials or for use on ships, etc.
- DO NOT allow children to climb, stand, or hang on the refrigerator doors or on the shelves in the refrigerator. They could damage the refrigerator and seriously injure themselves.
- Do not allow children to climb into the refrigerator. They could be trapped and suffocated.
- · Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the refrigerator.
- Keep fingers out of pinch point areas; clearances between the doors and cabinets are necessarily small. Be careful closing doors when children are nearby.
- Do not touch frozen food or the metal parts in the freezer compartment with wet or damp hands. Doing so may cause frostbite.
- Do not refreeze frozen food that has thawed completely. Doing so may result in a serious health hazard.
- Do not use an adapter plug or plug the power plug into a multi-outlet extension cord.
- If the supply cord is damaged, it must be replaced by the manufacturer or its service agent or a similarly qualified person in order to avoid a hazard.
- Do not operate the refrigerator or touch the power cord with wet hands.
- Do not modify or extend the power cord.
- Do not use an uncertified power outlet. Do not plug appliance into a damaged wall outlet.
- Do not put hands, feet or other objects into the air vents or bottom of the refrigerator. Doing so could result in personal injury or electric shock.
- In the event of a gas leak (propane/LPG), ensure the area is adequately ventilated and contact an authorized service center before resuming use. Do not touch the refrigerator or power cord of the refrigerator.
- Disconnect the power cord immediately and contact an authorized service center if there is a strange noise, odor, or smoke coming from the appliance.
- Do not use any fuse (such as copper, steel wire, etc.) other than a standard fuse.
- Do not put animals inside the appliance.
- Do not place heavy or fragile objects, liquid filled containers, combustible substances, or flammable objects (such as candles and lamps) on the appliance.
- If connected to a circuit protected by fuses, use time delay fuse.
- Keep ventilation openings, in the appliance enclosure or in the built-in structure, clear of obstruction.
- Do not use mechanical devices or other means to accelerate the defrosting process, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- Do not use electrical appliances inside the food storage compartments of the appliance, unless they are of the type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Do not store explosive substances such as aerosol cans with a flammable propellant in this appliance.
- Do not damage the refrigerant circuit.
- This appliance incorporates an earth connection for functional purposes.
- Connect to potable water supply only.
  - If connected to a water supply, connect to a potable water supply only.
- Fill with potable water only.
  - If using an icemaker or dispenser water tank, make sure to fill it with potable water only.

#### Maintenance

- Do not use a hair dryer to dry the inside of the refrigerator.
- Do not light a candle to remove odors in the refrigerator.
- In the event of a refrigerant leak, move flammable objects away from the refrigerator. Ensure the area is adequately ventilated and contact an authorized service center.
- Keep flammable materials and vapors, such as gasoline, away from the refrigerator.
- Unplug the power plug before cleaning or repairing the refrigerator.
- The refrigerator and freezer compartment lights are interior LED lighting, and service should be performed by a qualified technician.
- Unplug the power plug immediately in the event of a blackout or thunderstorm.
- Turn the power off if water or dust penetrates into the refrigerator. Call a service agent.
- Do not store glass containers or soda in the freezer compartment. Contents may expand when frozen, break the container and cause injury.
- Do not store, disassemble or repair the appliance yourself or allow unqualified personnel to do so.

### Disposal

- Risk of child entrapment. Junked or abandoned refrigerators are dangerous, even if they are sitting for only a few days. When disposing of the refrigerator, remove the packing materials from the door or take off the doors but leave the shelves in place so that children may not easily climb inside.
- If disposing of a refrigerator, make sure the refrigerant and insulation foam are removed for proper disposal by a qualified servicer. If you release the refrigerant or throw away the insulation foam, you may be fined or imprisoned in accordance with the relevant environmental law. Insulation foam contains flammable blowing gas.
- When discarding the appliance, remove the door gasket while leaving the shelves and bins in place, and keep children away from the appliance.

### **Grounding Instructions**

- Improper connection of the equipment-grounding conductor can result in a risk of electric shock. Check with a qualified electrician or service personnel if you are in doubt whether the appliance is properly grounded. Do not modify the plug provided with the appliance; if it will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.
- Have a certified electrician check the wall outlet and wiring for proper grounding.
- Never unplug the appliance by pulling on the power cord. Always grip the plug firmly and pull straight out from the outlet. Failure to do so may damage the power cord, resulting in a risk of fire and electric shock.

### **Risk of Fire and Flammable Materials**



This symbol alerts you to flammable materials that can ignite and cause a fire if you do not take care.

This appliance contains a small amount of isobutane refrigerant (R600a), which is combustible. When transporting and installing the appliance, care should be taken to ensure that no parts of the refrigerating circuit are damaged. Refrigerant squirting out of the pipes could ignite or cause an eye injury. If a leak is detected, avoid any naked flames or potential sources of ignition and air out the room in which the appliance is standing for several minutes.

In order to avoid the creation of a flammable gas air mixture if a leak in the refrigerating circuit occurs, the size of the room in which the appliance may be sited depends on the amount of refrigerant used. The room must be 10.8 square feet (1 square meter) in size for every 8g of R600a refrigerant inside the appliance. The amount of refrigerant in your particular appliance is shown on the identification plate inside the appliance. Never start up an appliance showing any signs of damage. If in doubt, consult your dealer.

# CAUTION

# 

• To reduce the risk of minor or moderate injury to persons, malfunction, or damage to the product or property when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

### Installation

- Do not install the refrigerator where there may be a danger of the unit falling.
- The refrigerator must be properly installed in accordance with the Installation Instructions.

### Operation

- Do not use aerosols near the refrigerator.
- This appliance is intended to be used only in domestic and similar applications.
- Do not strike or apply excessive force to any glass surface. Do not touch glass surfaces if they are cracked or broken. You may be injured.
- Do not overfill or pack items too tightly into door bins. Doing so may cause damage to the bin or personal injury if items are removed with excessive force.

### Maintenance

- Do not use strong detergents like wax or thinners for cleaning. Clean with a soft cloth.
- Remove foreign objects (such as dust and water) off the prongs of the power plug and contact areas. Do not use a wet or damp cloth when cleaning the plug.
- Do not spray water directly on the inside or outside of the refrigerator.
- Do not clean glass shelves or covers with warm water when they are cold. They may break if exposed to sudden temperature changes.

# SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

# **PRODUCT OVERVIEW**

# **Product Features**

The images in this guide may be different from the actual components and accessories, which are subject to change by the manufacturer without prior notice for product improvement purposes.

### Exterior

† This feature is only available on some models.



#### Handle<sup>†</sup>

Opens and closes the refrigerator door.

#### **2** Refrigerator

Fresh food compartment

#### **❸** SmartPull<sup>™</sup> Handle<sup>†</sup>

Easily opens the freezer door.

#### Ø Freezer

Frozen food compartment

#### **6** InstaView<sup>†</sup>

Knock twice on the glass to turn the LED light inside the **InstaView** on or off.

### Interior

† This feature is only available on some models.



#### • LED Interior Lighting

Lights up the inside of the refrigerator.

#### 2 Water Filter

Purifies water.

#### Air Filter Air Filter

Reduces odors inside the refrigerator compartment.

#### Oor Mullion

Prevents the cold air in the refrigerator from escaping when the doors are closed.

### 

- To reduce the risk of scratching the door or breaking the center door mullion, make sure that the folding door mullion is folded in before closing the left-hand door.
- The door alarm will sound every 30 seconds if the door remains open longer than one minute.

#### **6** Water Dispenser

Dispenses purified water.

#### **6** Humidity Controlled Crisper<sup>†</sup>

Helps vegetables and fruit to stay crisp and controls humidity.

#### Fixed Door Bin

Stores chilled food or drinks.

#### O Auto-Closing Hinge

The refrigerator doors and freezer drawers close automatically when pushed slightly. (The door only closes automatically when it is open at an angle of less than 30°.)

#### Automatic Icemaker (Freezer)

Produces ice automatically.

#### 🛈 Ice Bin

If a large amount of ice is needed, transfer the ice in the in-door ice bin to an ice storage bin in the freezer.

#### Adjustable Refrigerator Shelf

The refrigerator shelves are adjustable to meet individual storage needs.

#### Polding Shelf<sup>†</sup>

Store taller items, such as gallon containers or bottles, by pushing the front half of the shelf underneath the back half of the shelf.

#### B Instaview<sup>†</sup>

Knock twice on the glass to turn the LED light inside the InstaView on or off.

#### Control Panel

Sets the refrigerator and freezer temperatures or other functions.

#### Glide'N'Serve

Stores food items at a different temperature than the regular refrigerator area.

#### O Pullout Drawer

Provides extra storage within the freezer compartment.

#### Durabase and Durabase Divider

Provides storage for large frozen food items.

### **Product Specifications**

The appearance and specifications listed in this manual may vary due to constant product improvements. **Electrical requirements:** 115 V, 60 Hz

Min. / Max. water pressure: 20 - 120 psi (138 - 827 kPa)

Model	Description	Net weight
LRFGC2706*	Counter-depth, InstaView French Door Refrigerator, Bottom Freezer, Internal Water Dispenser	276 lb (125 kg)
LRFLC2706* LRFLC2716*	Counter-depth, French Door Refrigerator, Bottom Freezer, Internal Water Dispenser	249 lb (113 kg)
LLFGC2706*	Counter-depth, InstaView French Door Refrigerator, Bottom Freezer, Internal Water Dispenser	276 lb (125 kg)
LRFLS3206* LRFLS3216*	Standard-depth, French Door Refrigerator, Bottom Freezer, Internal Water Dispenser	278 lb (126 kg)
LF27D6200*	Counter-depth, InstaView French Door Refrigerator, Bottom Freezer	247 lb (112 kg)
LF32S6000*	Standard-depth, InstaView French Door Refrigerator, Bottom Freezer	275 lb (125 kg)

# INSTALLATION

# **Before Installing**

### **Installation Overview**

Please read the following installation instructions first after purchasing this product or transporting it to another location.



**2** Choosing the Proper Location

- Oisassembling/Assembling
- Onnecting the Water Line
- **G** Leveling and Door Alignment

### 🛕 WARNING

Connect to potable water supply only.

### **Unpacking the Refrigerator**

### MARNING

- Use two or more people to move and install the refrigerator. Failure to do so can result in back injury or other injury.
- The refrigerator is heavy. Protect the floor when moving the refrigerator for cleaning or service. Always pull the refrigerator straight out when moving it. Do not wiggle or walk the refrigerator when trying to move it, as floor damage could occur.
- Keep flammable materials and vapors, such as gasoline, away from the refrigerator. Failure to do so can result in fire, explosion, or death.

#### NOTE

- Remove tape and any temporary labels from your refrigerator before using. Do not remove any warning labels, the model and serial number label, or the Tech Sheet that is located under the front of the refrigerator.
- To remove any remaining tape or glue, rub the area briskly with your thumb. Tape or glue residue can also be easily removed by rubbing a small amount of liquid dish soap over the adhesive with your fingers. Wipe with warm water and dry.
- Do not use sharp instruments, rubbing alcohol, flammable fluids, or abrasive cleaners to remove tape or glue. These products can damage the surface of your refrigerator.
- Reinstall or adjust shelves as needed. Refrigerator shelves are installed in the shipping position. Reinstall shelves according to your individual storage needs.

## Choosing the Proper Location

### Water

The refrigerator must be located where a water supply can be connected for the automatic icemaker.

#### NOTE

• The water pressure must be 20 - 120 psi (138 -827 kPa). If the refrigerator is installed in an area with low water pressure (below 20 psi or 138 kPa), you can install a booster pump to compensate for the low pressure.

### Electricity

Use an individual, grounded outlet:115 Volts, 60 Hz, AC, 15 amps minimum.

### **WARNING**

- Do not overload house wiring and cause a fire hazard by plugging in multiple appliances in the same outlet with the refrigerator.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not install the refrigerator in a wet or damp area.

### Flooring

To avoid noise and vibration, the unit must be installed and leveled on a solidly constructed floor. If required, adjust the leveling legs to compensate for the unevenness of the floor.

#### NOTE

• Installing on carpeting, soft tile surfaces, a platform or weakly supported structure is not recommended.

### **Ambient Temperature**

Install this appliance in an area where the temperature is between 55 °F (13 °C) and 110 °F (43 °C).

If the temperature around the appliance is too low or high, cooling ability may be adversely affected.

The internal temperatures could be affected by the location of the appliance, the ambient temperature, the frequency of door opening and other factors.

### **Dimensions and Clearances**

- Check the dimensions of the appliance and the installation path to ensure there is sufficient room to move the refrigerator through doors or narrow openings.
- If an opening is too narrow to fit the refrigerator through, remove the refrigerator doors. See Removing/ Assembling the Doors and Drawers in this manual.
- The installation location chosen for the refrigerator should allow space behind the unit for connections and airflow and space in front to open the doors and drawers.
- Too small of a distance from adjacent items may result in lowered freezing capability and increased electricity consumption charges. Allow at least 24 inches (610 mm) in front of the refrigerator to open the doors, and at least 2 inches (50.8 mm) between the back of the refrigerator and the wall.



#### **Models with handles**

-	Dimension/Clearance	LRFGC2706* LRFLC2706* LLFGC2706* LF27D6200*	LRFLS3206*
А	Depth without Handle	29 1/8" (739 mm)	34 3/8" (874 mm)
В	Width	35 3/4" (908 mm)	35 3/4" (908 mm)
С	Height to Top of Case	68 7/8" (1750 mm)	68 7/8" (1750 mm)
D	Height to Top of Hinge	70 1/4" (1785 mm)	70 1/4" (1785 mm)
E	Back Clearance	2" (50 mm)	2" (50 mm)
F	Depth without Door	24 3/4" (628 mm)	30 1/8" (764 mm)
G	Depth with Handle	31 5/8" (802 mm)	36 7/8" (937 mm)
Н	Depth (Total with Freezer Drawer Open)	48 7/8" (1239 mm)	57 7/8" (1469 mm)
Ι	Depth (Total with Door Open 90°)	43 5/8" (1106 mm)	48 7/8" (1240 mm)

#### Models without handles

-	Dimension/Clearance	LRFLC2716*	LF32S6000* LRFLS3216*
А	Depth without Handle	29 1/8" (739 mm)	34 3/8" (874 mm)
В	Width	35 3/4" (908 mm)	35 3/4" (908 mm)
С	Height to Top of Case	68 7/8" (1750 mm)	68 7/8" (1750 mm)

#### 14 INSTALLATION

-	Dimension/Clearance	LRFLC2716*	LF32S6000* LRFLS3216*
D	Height to Top of Hinge	70 1/4" (1785 mm)	70 1/4" (1785 mm)
E	Back Clearance	2" (50 mm)	2" (50 mm)
F	Depth without Door	24 3/4" (628 mm)	30 1/8" (764 mm)
G	Depth with Handle	N/A	N/A
н	Depth (Total with Freezer Drawer Open)	48 7/8" (1239 mm)	55 3/8" (1406 mm)
Ι	Depth (Total with Door Open 90°)	43 5/8" (1106 mm)	48 7/8" (1240 mm)

## Removing/Assembling Handles

These instructions are for models which ship with the handles assembled. For models shipped with the handles disassembled, follow the instructions included in the handle package.

- Tools Needed
  - Units shipped with disassembled handles: 3/32" and 1/4" Allen wrenches only
  - Units shipped with assembled handles:
    - 3/32", 1/8" and 1/4" Allen wrenches

When moving the refrigerator through a narrow opening, removing the doors is preferred. If you must remove the handles, be very careful not to scratch the doors.

The appearance of the handles may vary from what is shown.

### 

- When assembling or disassembling the refrigerator handles, grasp the handle firmly to avoid dropping it.
- Do not swing the handle into nearby people or animals.
- Make sure that the set screws are in place and the handle footprints at the ends of the handles are aligned correctly over the mounting fasteners on the doors. The set screws should be loose enough to allow the handle footprints to slide down into place over the mounting fasteners on the door.
- Make sure that there is not a gap between the door and handle after assembling the handle.

### **Removing Refrigerator Handles**

- 1 Loosen the set screws **1** with a 3/32 in. Allen wrench and remove the handle.
- 2 If needed, loosen the mounting fasteners 2 that connect the refrigerator door and handle using a 1/4 in. Allen wrench, and remove the mounting fasteners.



### **Assembling Refrigerator Handles**

- 1 If needed, reassemble the mounting fasteners **1** on the door with a 1/4 in. Allen wrench.
- Place the handle on the door by fitting the handle footprints over the mounting fasteners and tightening the set screws with a 3/32 in. Allen wrench.



### **Removing Freezer Drawer Handles**

- Loosen the set screws ① located on the lower side of the handle with a 3/32 in. Allen wrench and remove the handle.
  - For models shipped with the handles assembled, use a 1/8 in. Allen wrench.
- 2 Loosen the mounting fasteners 2 with a 1/4 in. Allen wrench, and remove the mounting fasteners.



### Assembling Freezer Drawer Handles

1 Assemble the mounting fasteners **①** at both ends of the handle with a 1/4 in. Allen wrench.

- Place the handle on the door by fitting the handle footprints over the mounting fasteners and tightening the set screws with a 3/32 in. Allen wrench.
  - For models shipped with the handles assembled, use a 1/8 in. Allen wrench.



## Removing/Assembling Doors and Drawers

If the entrance door is too narrow for the refrigerator to pass through, remove the refrigerator doors and move the refrigerator sideways through the doorway.

### **WARNING**

- Use two or more people to remove and install the refrigerator doors and freezer drawers.
- Disconnect the electrical supply to the refrigerator before installing.
- Do not put hands, feet or other objects into the air vents or bottom of the refrigerator.
- Be careful when handling the hinge and hinge lever.
- Remove food and bins before detaching the doors and drawers.
- Do not hold the handle when removing or replacing the doors and drawers as the handle may come off.
- Tools Needed
  - Phillips screwdriver
  - Flat-head screwdriver

### **Removing the Hinge Cover**

Remove the screws from the hinge cover at the top of the refrigerator. Lift the hook (not visible),

located at the bottom of the front side of the cover with a flat-head screwdriver.



### Removing the Left Refrigerator Door

1 Disconnect all the wire harnesses **1**. Unscrew the ground wire **2**.



2 Rotate the hinge lever S counterclockwise.Lift the top hinge A free of the hinge lever latch S.

### **A** CAUTION

• When lifting the hinge free of the latch, be careful that the door does not fall forward.



**3** Lift the door from the middle hinge pin and remove the door.

### 

• Place the door, inside facing up, on a nonscratching surface.



Removing the Right Refrigerator Door

1 Detach all the wire harnesses **1**. Unscrew the ground wire **2**.

#### NOTE

- The number of wire harnesses may vary depending on the model.
- Ground wire is only present on some models.



2 Rotate the hinge lever 3 clockwise. Lift the top hinge 4 free of the hinge lever latch 5.

### **A** CAUTION

• When lifting the hinge free of the latch, be careful that the door does not fall forward.



**3** Lift the door from the middle hinge pin and remove the door.

### 

• Place the door, inside facing up, on a nonscratching surface.



### **Removing the Freezer Drawer**

### 🛕 WARNING

- Use two or more people to remove and install the refrigerator doors and freezer drawer.
- Be careful of sharp hinges on both sides of the drawer.
- When you lay the drawer down, be careful not to damage the floor.
- Do not sit or stand on the freezer drawer.
- To prevent accidents, keep children and pets away from the drawer. Do not leave the drawer open. If the Durabase<sup>®</sup> storage bin is removed from the freezer drawer, there is sufficient space for a small child or pet to crawl inside.
- **1** Pull the drawer open to full extension.
- **2** Gently lift and pull out the ice bin(s).



#### NOTE

- The number of ice bins may vary depending on the model.
- **3** Lift the front of the drawer up, then pull it straight out.



4 Remove the Durabase basket from the rails. Remove the screws from the rails at both ends.



**5** Grip both sides of the drawer and pull it up to remove it from the rails.

### 

• Do not hold the handle when removing or replacing the drawer. The handle may come off, causing personal injury.



Hold both rails and push them in simultaneously.

6



### Assembling the Freezer Drawer

**1** Pull out both rails simultaneously, until they are fully extended.



**2** Grasp the drawer on each side and hook the drawer supports into the rail tabs located on both sides.

### **CAUTION**

• Do not hold the handle when removing or replacing the drawer. The handle may come off, causing personal injury.



**3** Lower the door into its final position and insert the screws in the rails on both sides.



**4** Insert the drawer into the frame, and push the drawer back until it clicks into place.



**5** Replace the ice bin(s) in the drawer. Insert the Durabase basket in the rail assembly.



#### NOTE

• The number of ice bins may vary depending on the model.

# Assembling the Right Refrigerator Door

### 

- Install the right-side door first.
- 1 Make sure that the plastic sleeve is inserted in the bottom of the door. Lower the door onto the middle hinge pin as shown in the figure.



2 Fit the hinge **1** over the hinge lever latch **2** and slot it into place. Rotate the lever **3** counterclockwise to secure the hinge.



**3** Connect all the wire harnesses **4**. Screw in the ground wire **5**.



#### NOTE

- The number of wire harnesses may vary depending on the model.
- Ground wire is only present on some models.

### Assembling the Left Refrigerator Door

### 

- Install the left refrigerator door after the right door is installed.
- **1** Make sure that the plastic sleeve is inserted in the bottom of the door. Install the refrigerator door onto the middle hinge.



2 Fit the hinge ① over the hinge lever latch ② and slot it into place. Rotate the lever ③ clockwise and fasten the hinge.



**3** Connect all the wire harnesses and the ground wire.

### Assembling the Hinge Cover

Position the hinge cover in its place. Insert and tighten the cover screws.



## Connecting Refrigerator to Water Supply

### **Before Beginning**

These instructions assume you have an existing water supply connection for the refrigerator. If necessary, call a qualified plumber to install a water supply line for the refrigerator.

- Turn the icemaker OFF if the refrigerator will be used before the water line is connected.
- Do not install the icemaker tubing in areas where the ambient temperatures fall below freezing.

### **WARNING**

Connect to potable water supply only.

### 

- To prevent burns and product damage, only connect the refrigerator water line to a cold water supply.
- Wear eye protection during installation to prevent injury.

#### Water Pressure

You will need a cold water supply.

#### Water Pressure

- Models with water filter:
  - 20 120 psi (138 827 kPa)
- Where reverse osmosis water filtration system is connected to a cold water supply:
  - 40 60 psi minimum to reverse osmosis system (2.8 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> - 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, or less than 2 - 3 seconds to fill a cup of 7 oz capacity)

If the water pressure from the reverse osmosis system is less than 20 psi or 138 kPa or 1.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> (takes more than 4 seconds to fill a cup of 7 oz or 198 cc capacity):

- Check to see if the sediment filter in the reverse osmosis system is blocked. Replace the filter if necessary.
- Allow the storage tank on the reverse osmosis system to refill after heavy usage.
- If the water pressure remains low, call a licensed, qualified plumber.
- All installations must be in accordance with local plumbing code requirements.

### **Supplies Needed**

- **Copper or PEX Tubing**, ¼ in. outer diameter, to connect the refrigerator to the water supply. Be sure both ends of the tubing are cut square. To determine how much tubing you need, measure the distance from the water valve on the back of the refrigerator to the water supply pipe. Then, add 8 feet (2.4 m). Be sure there is sufficient extra tubing (about 8 feet [2.4 m] coiled into 3 turns of about 10 in. [25 cm] diameter) to allow the refrigerator to move out from the wall after installation.
- ½ in. or adjustable wrench.
- Flat-blade and Phillips screwdrivers.
- Two ¼ in. outer diameter compression nuts and 2 ferrules (sleeves) to connect the copper tubing to the shutoff valve and the refrigerator water valve. If you are using a PEX water line kit, it may already have the required fittings at either end.



• If your existing copper water line has a flared fitting at the end, purchase an adapter (available at plumbing supply stores) to connect the water line to the refrigerator OR cut off the flared

fitting with a tube cutter and use a compression fitting.



#### NOTE

- The hookup line cannot be white, plastic tubing. Licensed plumbers must use only copper tubing (NDA tubing #49595 or #49599) or Cross Link Polyethylene (PEX) tubing.
- Be sure there is sufficient extra tubing (about 8 ft. coiled into three turns of about 10 in. diameter) to allow the refrigerator to move out from the wall after installation.

### Connecting Water Line to Refrigerator

- 1 Connect the tubing to the shutoff valve.
  - Place the compression nut and ferrule (sleeve) onto the end of the copper tubing and connect it to the shutoff valve. If you are using PEX, the tubing may already have the required fittings at either end. Make sure the tubing is fully inserted into the valve. Tighten the compression nut securely.



- Packing Nut
- 2 Shutoff Valve
- Oppression Nut
- 4 Ferrule (sleeve)
- **2** Flush out the tubing into a bucket.
  - Flush out the tubing coming from the home water supply until the water is clear. Shut the water off at the water valve after about

one quart of water has been flushed through the tubing.



#### NOTE

- Before making the connection to the refrigerator, be sure that the refrigerator power cord is not plugged into the wall outlet.
- **3** Remove the flexible plastic cap from the water valve on the refrigerator.
- 4 Place the compression nut and ferrule (sleeve) onto the end of the tubing as shown. If you are using a PEX connection kit, it may already have the required fittings.
- **5** Insert the end of the copper or PEX tubing into the connection as far as possible. While holding the tubing, tighten the fitting.



- Tubing Clamp
- 2 ¼ in. Tubing
- 3 ¼ in. Compression Nut
- 4 Ferrule (sleeve)
- **G** Refrigerator Connection

- **6** Turn the water on at the shutoff valve.
  - Tighten any connections that leak.

### A CAUTION

- Check to see if leaks occur at the water line connections.
- Make sure the house water valve is fully open. If it is not open completely, the icemaker and dispenser may not work properly.

## Leveling and Door Alignment

### Leveling

The refrigerator has two front leveling legs. Adjust the legs to alter the tilt from front-to-back or sideto side. If the refrigerator seems unsteady, or the doors do not close easily, adjust the refrigerator's tilt using the instructions below:

1 Turn the leveling leg to the left to raise that side of the refrigerator or to the right to lower it. It may take several turns of the leveling leg to adjust the tilt of the refrigerator.

#### NOTE

• A flare nut wrench works best, but an open-end wrench will suffice. Do not over-tighten.



2 Open both doors and check to make sure that they close easily. If the doors do not close easily, tilt the refrigerator slightly more to the rear by turning both leveling legs to the left. It may take several more turns, and be sure to turn both leveling legs the same amount.

### Door Alignment

The door alignment method may differ depending on the model.

### **Refrigerator Type A**

Both the left and right refrigerator doors have an adjustable nut, located on the bottom hinge, to raise and lower them to align properly.

If the space between the doors is uneven even after the door bins are filled, follow the instructions below to align the doors evenly:

Use the wrench (included with the owner's manual) to turn the nut in the door hinge to adjust the height. Turn the nut to the right to raise the door or to the left to lower it.



#### Refrigerator Type B Left Refrigerator Door

The left refrigerator door has an adjustable nut, located on the bottom hinge, to raise and lower the door for proper alignment.

If the space between the doors is uneven, follow the instructions below to align the left door:

Use the wrench (included with the owner's manual) to turn the nut in the door hinge to adjust the height. Turn the nut to the right to raise the door or to the left to lower it.



#### **Right Refrigerator Door**

The right refrigerator door does not have an adjustable nut.

If the space between the doors is uneven, follow the instructions below to align the right door:

- 1 Lift up both the inner and outer door sections of the right door to raise them at the middle hinge. (It may be easier to lift them with the doors open.)
- **2** While the door is lifted, have an assistant insert the snap ring on the middle hinge. The snap ring may differ depending on the model.
  - Snap ring type A

Use pliers to insert the snap ring on the middle hinge of the inner door section as shown. Insert additional snap rings until the right door is aligned.

• Snap ring type B



Insert only one snap ring on the middle hinge of the inner door section as shown.

- If a snap ring is already inserted on the middle hinge, remove the snap ring before inserting a new snap ring.

### 

- The door is heavy. To avoid injury, use two or more people to lift and align the refrigerator door.
- Small parts are a swallowing hazard for small children. Keep snap rings out of the reach of children.
- Do not insert the snap ring on the hinge of the outer door section.



#### NOTE

• The number of freezer drawers may vary depending on the model.

## **Turning on the Power**

• After installing, plug the refrigerator's power cord into a 3-prong grounded outlet and push the refrigerator into the final position.

### 

- Connect to a rated power outlet.
- Have a certified electrician check the wall outlet and wiring for proper grounding.
- Do not damage or cut off the ground terminal of the power plug.

### **Position the Refrigerator**

• If the refrigerator is connected to water, arrange the coil of tubing so that it does not vibrate against the back of the refrigerator or against the wall. Push the refrigerator back toward the wall, leaving adequate clearance.

### Start the Icemaker

- If the water line is connected, turn the icemakers on.
  - To turn the icemakers on, refer to Control Panel in the Operation section.
- The icemaker will not begin to operate until it reaches its operating temperature of 15 °F (-9 °C) or below. It will then begin operation automatically if the icemaker has been turned ON.

# **OPERATION**

# **Before Use**

### Checklist



#### Clean the refrigerator.

Clean the refrigerator thoroughly and wipe off all dust that accumulated during shipping.

### 

- Do not scratch the refrigerator with a sharp object or use a detergent that contains alcohol, a flammable liquid or an abrasive when removing any tape or adhesive from the refrigerator. Remove adhesive residue by wiping it off with your thumb or dish detergent.
- Do not peel off the model or serial number label or the technical information on the rear surface of the refrigerator.



# Open refrigerator doors and freezer drawers to ventilate the interior.

The inside of the refrigerator may smell like plastic at first. Remove any adhesive tape from inside the refrigerator and open the refrigerator doors and the freezer drawers for ventilation.



#### Connect the power supply.

Check if the power supply is connected before use.



#### Turn off the icemaker.

Turn off the icemaker if the refrigerator is not yet connected to the water supply.

#### NOTE

• The icemaker water valve may buzz if the icemaker is turned on while the refrigerator is not connected to the water supply.

#### Wait for the refrigerator to cool.

After the refrigerator is connected to power, it will take time to cool. The duration depends on the model and ambient conditions. In summer, it may take longer for the interior to cool down. Keep the refrigerator doors closed to allow it to cool down quickly.

- Don't add food before the appliance has cooled. Food may spoil or odors may linger.
- To reach the set temperature quickly, keep the refrigerator doors closed after placing food inside.

#### The refrigerator makes a loud noise after initial operation.

This is normal. The volume will decrease as the temperature decreases.



## **Control Panel**

Depending on the model, some of the following functions may not be available. The actual control panel may differ from model to model.

### **Control Panel Features**

† This feature is only available on some models.



Туре В

Туре А

#### Refrigerator

Indicates the set temperature of the refrigerator compartment in Celsius (°C) or Fahrenheit (°F). The default refrigerator temperature is 37 °F (3 °C). Press the **Refrigerator** button repeatedly to select a new set temperature from 33 °F to 43 °F (1 °C to 7 °C).

#### NOTE

- To change the temperature mode from °F to °C (or vice versa) press and hold the **Refrigerator** and **Freezer** buttons simultaneously for approximately five seconds. The temperature indicator on the display window switches between Celsius and Fahrenheit.
- The displayed temperature is the target temperature, and not the actual temperature of the refrigerator. The actual refrigerator temperature depends on the food inside the refrigerator.

#### **2** Water Filter

Replace the water filter when the **Water Filter** indicator turns on. After replacing the water filter, press and hold the **Water Filter** button for three seconds to turn the indicator light off. Replace the water filter approximately every six months.



#### 8 Freezer

Indicates the set temperature of the freezer compartment in Celsius (°C) or Fahrenheit (°F). The default freezer temperature is 0 °F (-18 °C). Press the **Freezer** button repeatedly to select a new set temperature from - 7 °F to 5 °F (-23 °C to -15 °C).

#### 4 Air Filter

The air filter helps remove odors from the refrigerator.

#### NOTE

• Replace the air filter when the air filter indicator turns on. After replacing the air filter, press and hold the **Air Filter** button for 3 seconds to turn the indicator off. Replace the air filter approximately every six months.

#### Smart Grid

Press the **Smart Grid** button to turn the function On/Off. When the function is on, the indicator illuminates. The function automatically turns on when the refrigerator is connected to the Wi-Fi network. The Smart Grid function is only available if your electric utility company supports the function. When the refrigerator is responding to a Demand Response (DR) message from the electric company, the indicator blinks.

#### 6 Wi-Fi

The Wi-Fi button, when used with the **LG ThinQ** app, allows the refrigerator to connect to a home Wi-Fi network. Refer to Smart Functions for information on the initial setup of the app.

The Wi-Fi indicator shows the status of the refrigerator's network connection. The indicator illuminates when the refrigerator is connected to the Wi-Fi network.

Press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button for 3 seconds to connect to the network. The indicator blinks while the connection is being made and then turns on once the connection is successfully made.

#### Ice Plus

Models with automatic icemaker: This function increases both ice making and freezing capabilities.

Models without automatic icemaker: This function increases freezing capabilities.

- Press the **Ice Plus** button to illuminate the indicator and activate the function for 24 hours. The function automatically shuts off after 24 hours.
- Stop the function manually by pressing the button once more.

#### Output Cubed Ice<sup>†</sup>

Press the Cubed Ice button to turn the Cubed Ice icemaker on/off.

#### Lock

The lock function disables every other button on the display.

- When power is initially connected to the refrigerator, the lock function is off.
- To lock the control panel buttons, press and hold the **Lock** button until the indicator appears in the display and the function is activated.
- To disable the function, press and hold the Lock button for approximately three seconds.

#### NOTE

#### Display Mode and InstaView Display Mode (For Store Use Only)

- The **Display Mode** disables all cooling in the refrigerator and freezer sections to conserve energy while on display in a retail store. When activated, OFF is displayed on the control panel and the display remains on for 20 seconds.
  - To deactivate/activate the Display Mode:

#### NOTE

Open either refrigerator door. Press the **Ice Plus** button 3 times while pressing and holding the **Refrigerator** button. The control panel beeps and the temperature settings display to confirm that Display Mode is deactivated. Use the same procedure to activate Display Mode.

- The **InstaView Display Mode** automatically turns the LED light inside the InstaView Door-in-Door on and off in cycles of 10 seconds ON and 2 minutes 50 seconds OFF.
  - To activate the InstaView Display Mode:
     Activate the Display Mode first. Then open all refrigerator and freezer doors and within 5 seconds knock 3 times on the door glass.
  - To deactivate the InstaView Display Mode:
     Open all refrigerator and freezer doors and within 5 seconds knock 3 times on the door glass. The refrigerator is now in Display Mode.
- To deactivate the Display Mode and InstaView Display Mode at once:

Open either refrigerator door. Press the **Ice Plus** button 3 times while pressing and holding the **Refrigerator** button.

## Sabbath Mode

### Using the Sabbath Mode

Sabbath mode is used on the Jewish Sabbath and Holidays.

- To turn Sabbath mode on, touch the display to activate it, then press and hold the **Freezer** and **Wi-Fi** buttons for 3 seconds until 5b appears in the display.
- To turn Sabbath mode off manually, press and hold the **Freezer** and **Wi-Fi** buttons for 3 seconds.

#### NOTE

- Sabbath mode automatically turns off after 96 hours.
- Once turned on, Sabbath mode is maintained even after a power outage.
- Selecting Sabbath mode automatically turns off the alarm functions.
- The dispenser and InstaView are disabled in Sabbath mode, on applicable models.

## Water Dispenser

### **Using the Water Dispenser**

Press the dispenser paddle **1** with a glass or other container to dispense water.

### 

- Keep children away from the dispenser to prevent children playing with or damaging the controls.
- If water dispenses unexpectedly, turn off the water supply and contact an LG Electronics Customer Information Center.
- If the cup rim is small, water may splash out of the glass or miss it completely.

#### NOTE

- The first water dispensed may include particles or odor from the water supply line or the water tank. This is also necessary if the appliance has not been used for a long time.
- Keep containers at an appropriate distance from the dispenser. A container with a very small

opening should be held as close to the dispenser as possible to avoid spilling.

• Some dripping may occur after dispensing. Hold the cup beneath the dispenser for a few seconds after dispensing to catch all of the drops.

### **Cleaning the Dispenser**

- Wipe the entire area with a damp cloth. The dispenser may become wet easily due to spilled water.
- Wipe the dispenser outlet frequently with a clean cloth as it may get dirty easily.

#### NOTE

• Lint from a cloth may adhere to the outlet.

# Automatic Icemaker

### 🛕 WARNING

- DO NOT place fingers in the automatic icemaker when the refrigerator is plugged in.
- Avoid contact with any moving parts of the ejector mechanism or with the heater that releases the ice cubes.

### **Before Using the Freezer Icemaker**

This feature is only available on some models.

The feature may vary depending on model purchased.

#### NOTE

- Throw away the first bin full of ice after installation. This is also necessary if the refrigerator has not been used for a long time.
- The icemaker begins producing ice approximately 48 hours after the appliance is initially installed.
- The sound of ice dropping into the ice bin is normal.
- If the ice bin is completely filled with ice, ice production will stop.
- The amount and shape of ice may vary according to the environment (ambient temperature around the appliance, frequency of the door being opened, amount of food stored in the appliance, water pressure, etc.).
- In the event of a power outage, throw away the ice stored in the ice bin.

### Freezer Icemaker (Cubed Ice)

This feature is only available on some models.



#### • Feeler Arm

#### NOTE

- This automatic freezer icemaker produces 12 cubes at a time, 50-110 pieces within a 24 hour period if conditions are favorable. This amount may vary according to the environment (ambient temperature around the appliance, frequency of the door being opened, amount of food stored in the appliance, etc.).
- Ice cubes which are stored in the ice bin for a long time may clump together and be difficult to separate. If this happens, empty the ice bin completely and clean it before reinstalling it.

### **Turning the Icemaker On/Off**

To turn the automatic icemaker On/Off, press the **Cubed Ice** button on the control panel.

### Normal Sounds You May Hear

- Keeping the power turned on to the icemaker before the water line is connected can damage the icemaker.
- The icemaker water valve buzzes as the icemaker fills with water. If the icemaker power button is in the ON position, it will buzz even if it has not yet been hooked up to water. To stop the buzzing, press the icemaker power button to turn it off.
- You will hear the sound of ice dropping into the bin and water running in the pipes as the icemaker refills.

### **Preparing for Vacation**

Set the icemaker power button to OFF and shut off the water supply to the refrigerator.

#### NOTE

• The ice bin should be emptied any time the icemaker power button is turned to the OFF position.

If the ambient temperature will drop below freezing, have a qualified technician drain the water supply system to prevent serious property damage due to flooding caused by ruptured water lines or connections.

# **Storing Food**

#### NOTE

- If you are leaving home for a short period, like a short vacation, the refrigerator should be left on. Refrigerated foods that are able to be frozen will stay preserved longer if stored in the freezer.
- If you are leaving the refrigerator turned off for an extended period, remove all food and unplug the power cord. Clean the interior, and leave the door open to prevent fungi from growing in the refrigerator.
- If doors are opened or closed too often, warm air may penetrate the refrigerator and raise its temperature. This can increase the running costs of the unit.

### **Food Storage Tips**

Wrap or store food in the refrigerator in airtight and moisture-proof material unless otherwise noted. This prevents food odor and taste transfer throughout the refrigerator. For dated products, check date code to ensure freshness.

### **A** CAUTION

- Do not overfill or pack items too tightly into door bins. Doing so may cause damage to the bin or personal injury if items are removed with excessive force.
- Do not store glass containers in the freezer. Contents may expand when frozen, break the container and cause injury.

#### **How to Store Food**

- · Butter or Margarine
  - Keep opened butter in covered dish or closed compartment. When storing an extra supply, wrap in freezer packaging and freeze.

- Cheese
  - Store in original wrapping until used. Once opened, rewrap tightly in plastic wrap or aluminum foil.
- Milk
  - Wipe milk cartons. For coldest milk, place containers on an interior shelf.
- Eggs
  - Store in original carton on interior shelf, not on door shelf.
- Fruit
  - Do not wash or hull fruit until it is ready to be used. Sort and keep fruit in original container in a crisper, or store in completely closed paper bag on refrigerator shelf.
- Leafy Vegetables
  - Remove store wrapping, trim or tear off bruised and discolored areas, wash in cold water, and drain. Place in plastic bag or plastic container and store in crisper.
- Vegetables with skins (carrots, peppers)
  - Place in plastic bags or plastic container and store in crisper.
- Fish
  - Freeze fresh fish and shellfish if they are not being eaten the same day purchased. Eating fresh fish and shellfish the same day purchased is recommended.
- Leftovers
  - Cover leftovers with plastic wrap or aluminum foil, or store in plastic containers with tight lids.

#### NOTE

- Do not store food with high moisture content towards the top of the refrigerator. The moisture could come into direct contact with the cold air and freeze.
- Wash food before storing it in the refrigerator. Vegetables should be washed, and food packaging should be wiped down to prevent adjacent foods from being contaminated.
- If the refrigerator is kept in a hot and humid place, frequent opening of the door or storing a lot of vegetables in the refrigerator may cause condensation to form. Wipe off the condensation with a clean cloth or a paper towel.

### **Storing Frozen Food**

Check a freezer guide or a reliable cookbook for further information about preparing food for freezing or food storage times.

### Freezing

Your freezer will not quick-freeze a large quantity of food. Do not put more unfrozen food into the freezer than will freeze within 24 hours (no more than 2 to 3 pounds of food per cubic foot of freezer space). Leave enough space in the freezer for air to circulate around packages. Be careful to leave enough room at the front so the door can close tightly.

Storage times will vary according to the quality and type of food, the type of packaging or wrap used (how airtight and moisture-proof) and the storage temperature. Ice crystals inside a sealed package are normal. This simply means that moisture in the food and air inside the package have condensed, creating ice crystals.

#### NOTE

• Allow hot foods to cool at room temperature for 30 minutes, and then package and freeze. Cooling hot foods before freezing saves energy.

### Packaging

Successful freezing depends on correct packaging. When you close and seal the package, it must not allow air or moisture in or out. If it does, you could have food odor and taste transfer throughout the refrigerator and could also dry out frozen food.

Packaging Recommendations

- Rigid plastic containers with tight-fitting lids
- Straight-sided canning/freezing jars
- Heavy-duty aluminum foil
- Plastic-coated paper
- Non-permeable plastic wraps
- Specified freezer-grade self-sealing plastic bags Follow package or container instructions for

proper freezing methods.

Do not use

- Bread wrappers
- Non-polyethylene plastic containers
- Containers without tight lids
- Wax paper or wax-coated freezer wrap
- Thin, semi-permeable wrap

# **Crisper Drawers**

### Using the Humidity Controlled Crispers

This feature is only available on some models.

The crispers provide fresher tasting fruit and vegetables by letting you easily control humidity inside the drawer.

You can control the amount of humidity in the moisture-sealed crispers by adjusting the control to any setting between **Vegetables** and **Fruit**.

- **Vegetables** keeps moist air in the crisper for best storage of fresh, leafy vegetables.
- **Fruit** lets moist air out of the crisper for best storage of fruit.



### Removing/Assembling the Humidity Controlled Crispers

1 To remove, pull the crisper out to full extension, lift the front up, and pull straight out.



2 Lift the front of the cover up with both hands until it detaches from the back wall of the cabinet, and pull it out.



#### 32 OPERATION

**3** To reassemble, insert the cover into the refrigerator with both hands and lower it onto the guides.



**4** Slightly tilt up the front of the crisper, insert it into the frame, and push it back into place.

# Glide'N'Serve

### Using the Glide'N'Serve

This feature is only available on some models.

This function provides storage space with a variable temperature control that can keep the compartment at a slightly different temperature than the refrigerator section. This drawer can be used for large party trays, deli items and beverages. (This drawer should not be used to store vegetables that require high humidity.)

Press the **Select** button to choose between **Produce** (Cold), **Deli** (Colder) and **Meat** (Coldest).



### **CAUTION**

• Do not place any items on the Glide'N'Serve cover.



### Detaching/Assembling the Glide'N'Serve

**1** To remove the Glide'N'Serve, pull out the drawer until it stops, lift the front up, and pull straight out.



**2** To assemble, slightly tilt up the front, insert the drawer into the frame and push it back into place.



# **Refrigerator Shelves**

The shelves in the refrigerator are adjustable to meet individual storage needs.

Adjusting the shelves to fit items of different heights will make finding the exact item you want easier.

### **Detaching/Assembling Shelves**

### **CAUTION**

- Do not clean glass shelves with warm water while they are cold. Shelves may break if exposed to sudden temperature changes or impact.
- **1** To detach a shelf, hold the adjoining shelf so that it does not move.
- **2** Pull the two shelves apart in the middle and tilt up the front of the shelf you want to remove until it's free from the other shelf.



**3** Support the shelf from the bottom and lift it straight up.



**4** Pull the shelf out.



**5** To assemble, tilt the front of the shelf up and guide the shelf hooks into the slots at a desired height.

# **6** Lower the front of the shelf so that the hooks drop into the slots.

### 

• Make sure that shelves are level from one side to the other. Failure to do so may result in the shelf falling or spilled food.



# InstaView

This feature is only available on some models.

### **InstaView Compartment**

Knock twice on the glass to turn the LED light inside the InstaView on or off. The LED light turns off automatically after 10 seconds.



#### NOTE

- The LED light does not turn on if the right refrigerator door is open.
- The **InstaView** function will not activate for two seconds after closing the door.
- The **InstaView** function is disabled when the ice dispenser is in use.

# **Door Bins**

### **Detaching/Assembling Door Bins**

The door bins are removable for easy cleaning and adjustment.

**1** To remove the bin, simply lift the bin up and pull straight out.



**2** To assemble the bin, slide it in above the desired support and push down until it snaps into place.

### 

- Regularly detach and wash the storage bins and shelves; they can become easily contaminated by food.
- Do not apply excessive force while detaching or assembling the storage bins.
- Do not use the dishwasher to clean the storage bins and shelves.

with the rubber drawer stops on the top is toward the inside of the freezer.



# Durabase

#### **Using the Durabase**

The **Durabase** divider allows you to organize the **Durabase** area into 2 sections. It can be adjusted from side to side to accommodate items of different sizes.

The **Durabase** may differ depending on the model.



### 🛕 WARNING

• If the **Durabase** divider is removed, there is enough open space for children or pets to crawl inside. To prevent accidental child and pet entrapment or suffocation risk, DO NOT allow children or pets to touch or go near the drawer.

### 

• The front and back of the **Durabase** are labeled on the top. Make sure to install it so that the side

# **SMART FUNCTIONS**

# LG ThinQ Application

This feature is only available on models with Wi-Fi.

The **LG ThinQ** application allows you to communicate with the appliance using a smartphone.

### LG ThinQ Application Features

- † This feature is only available on some models.
- Smart Learner<sup>†</sup>
  - Provides a more personalized experience based on an analysis of your usage patterns.
- Smart Sabbath<sup>†</sup>
  - Activates or deactivates the Sabbath mode and sets the schedule for the mode activation.
- Energy Monitoring<sup>†</sup>
  - This feature keeps track of the refrigerator's power consumption and the number of door openings.
- Remote Control<sup>†</sup>
  - Controls the refrigerator temperature, air filter and Ice Plus from the smartphone application.
- Push Messages<sup>†</sup>
  - If the door remains open for more than ten minutes, you will receive a push message. When Ice Plus is finished, you will receive a push message.
- Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup>
  - This function provides useful information for diagnosing and solving issues with the appliance based on the pattern of use.
- Settings
  - Allows you to set various options on the refrigerator and in the application.

#### NOTE

- In the following cases, you must update the network information for each appliance in the LG ThinQ application under Device Cards → Settings → Change Network.
  - wireless router is changed
  - wireless router password is changed
  - Internet service provider is changed
- This information is current at the time of publication. The application is subject to change

for product improvement purposes without notice to users.

ENGLISH

Installing LG ThinQ Application and Connecting an LG Appliance

#### Models with QR Code

Scan the QR code attached to the product using the camera or a QR code reader application on your smartphone.



### Models without QR Code

- **1** Search for and install the **LG ThinQ** application from the Google Play Store or Apple App Store on a smartphone.
- 2 Run the LG ThinQ application and sign in with your existing account or create an LG account to sign in.
- **3** Touch the add (+) button on the **LG ThinQ** application to connect your LG appliance. Follow the instructions in the application to complete the process.

#### NOTE

- To verify the Wi-Fi connection, check that the Wi-Fi indicator on the control panel is lit.
- The appliance supports 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi networks only. To check your network frequency, contact your Internet service provider or refer to your wireless router manual.

#### NOTE

- LG ThinQ is not responsible for any network connection problems or any faults, malfunctions, or errors caused by network connection.
- The surrounding wireless environment can make the wireless network service run slowly.
- If the distance between the appliance and the wireless router is too far, the signal becomes weak. It may take a long time to connect or fail to install the application.
- If the appliance is having trouble connecting to the Wi-Fi network, it may be too far from the router. Purchase a Wi-Fi repeater (range extender) to improve the Wi-Fi signal strength.
- The network connection may not work properly depending on the Internet service provider.
- The Wi-Fi may not connect or the connection may be interrupted because of the home network environment.
- If the appliance cannot be connected due to problems with the wireless signal transmission, unplug the appliance and wait about a minute before trying again.
- If the firewall on your wireless router is enabled, disable the firewall or add an exception to it.
- The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)
- Smartphone user interface (UI) may vary depending on the mobile operating system (OS) and the manufacturer.
- If the security protocol of the router is set to **WEP**, network setup may fail. Change the security protocol (**WPA2** is recommended), and connect the product again.
- To disable the Wi-Fi function, press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button for 3 seconds. The Wi-Fi indicator will be turned off.
- To reconnect the appliance or add another user, press and hold the Wi-Fi button for 3 seconds to temporarily turn it off. Run the LG ThinQ application and follow the instructions in the application to connect the appliance.

### **Radio Equipment Specifications**

To identify the RF module installed in the appliance, refer to the label attached to the appliance.

Model Name	LCWB-001
Wireless LAN Frequency Range	2412 - 2462 MHz
Wireless LAN Output Power (Max)	< 30 dBm
Bluetooth Frequency Range	2402 - 2480 MHz
Bluetooth Output Power (Max)	< 30 dBm

Model Name	LCW-007
Wireless LAN Frequency Range	2412 - 2462 MHz
Wireless LAN Output Power (Max)	< 30 dBm

### FCC Statement

The following notice covers the transmitter module contained in this product.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- · Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

# FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This transmitter must not be colocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm (7.8 inches) between the antenna and your body. Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

### **Industry Canada Statement**

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/ receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licenceexempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference.

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### **IC Radiation Exposure Statement**

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm (7.8 inches) between the antenna and your body.

#### NOTE

• THE MANUFACTURER IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY RADIO OR TV INTERFERENCE CAUSED BY UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATIONS TO THIS EQUIPMENT. SUCH MODIFICATIONS COULD VOID THE USER'S AUTHORITY TO OPERATE THE EQUIPMENT.

#### Open Source Software Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligation to disclose source code, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents, please visit https:// opensource.lge.com.

LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com.

This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

# **Smart Grid Function**

When the refrigerator operates in Smart Grid mode, the Smart Refrigerator function can control energy usage or delay the operation of some functions to save energy during peak usage periods.

- You can override the Smart Grid function any time (using the **Smart Grid** button or application).
- To use the Smart Grid function, you need to register your appliance with your electric utility company, provided that your electric utility company supports the function. In other words, the Smart Grid function will not be available if your electric utility company does not support the function or does not have the capability to support the function.

### **Smart Grid Application Features**

- Smart Saving\_Demand Response
  - You can lower energy usage based on Demand Response (DR) signals from the utility company. If the refrigerator is operating in Smart Saving mode according to the DR signal, you can see a pop up.
- Seasonal Energy Savings
  - Lower energy usage based on time period.

### **Using the Smart Grid Function**

This feature responds to notification events from your utility company to run high energy consuming tasks during off-peak periods when demand is lower. These notification events are known as Demand Response signals.

If the refrigerator receives a Demand Response signal from the utility company, the refrigerator will turn on the Grid LED on the refrigerator display and control its power consumption according to the signal. The refrigerator will respond to the signals received from the utility company as long as product performance is maintained.

If the refrigerator receives a Demand Response signal, the refrigerator will operate in Delay Appliance Load (DAL) or Temporary Appliance Load Reduction (TALR) mode.

### **Delay Appliance Load (DAL)**

The refrigerator responds to a DAL signal by providing a moderate load reduction for the duration of the delay period.

This mode controls functions that consume a lot of energy such as adjusting the cooling system, running the defrost cycle, and making ice.

- When the refrigerator operates in DAL mode, the Grid LED is illuminated on the refrigerator display.
- DAL mode is automatically deactivated after the period stipulated by the DAL signal (max. 4 hours) or when you override the Smart Grid function.

# Temporary Appliance Load Reduction (TALR)

The refrigerator responds to a TALR signal by aggressively reducing the load for a short time period, typically 10 minutes. This mode reduces energy consumption by stopping the compressor and controlling the functions that consume a lot of energy such as the defrost cycle and fan.

- When the refrigerator operates in TALR mode, the Grid LED is illuminated on the refrigerator display.
- TALR mode is automatically deactivated after the received duration (max. 10 minutes), or when you override the Smart Grid function. The mode is immediately deactivated and the refrigerator returns to its normal state when the door is opened or closed, or the dispenser is used.

#### **Override Smart Grid Mode**

To ignore the Demand Response signal from the utility company and override the Smart Grid function, push the Smart Grid button while the refrigerator is in Smart Grid mode.

When you override the Smart Grid function, the refrigerator ignores the Demand Response signal

and is no longer controlled by the utility company until the next Demand Response signal is sent. You can also override the Smart Grid function using the smart phone app.

### LG Open API

You can manage Smart Grid features for the LG Smart Refrigerator.

Please check the detailed specifications on the notice page on us.smartthinq.com.

### **API List**

- Demand Response
  - Send demand response signal
- Power Saving
  - Set saving mode
  - Get schedule of DR/Delay Defrost
- Energy Monitoring
  - Get door open event
  - Get energy consumption
- Delay Defrost Capability
  - Insert a delay defrost schedule event
  - Update a delay defrost schedule event
  - Delete a delay defrost schedule event
  - Get the delay defrost schedule

# Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> Feature

This feature is only available on some models.

Use this feature to help you diagnose and solve problems with your appliance.

#### NOTE

- For reasons not attributable to LGE's negligence, the service may not operate due to external factors such as, but not limited to, Wi-Fi unavailability, Wi-Fi disconnection, local app store policy, or app unavailability.
- The feature may be subject to change without prior notice and may have a different form depending on where you are located.

### Using LG ThinQ to Diagnose Issues

If you experience a problem with your Wi-Fi equipped appliance, it can transmit troubleshooting data to a smartphone using the **LG ThinQ** application.

• Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis feature in the menu. Follow

the instructions provided in the **LG ThinQ** application.

### Using Audible Diagnosis to Diagnose Issues

Follow the instructions below to use the audible diagnosis method.

- Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis feature in the menu. Follow the instructions for audible diagnosis provided in the LG ThinQ application.
- **1** Open the right refrigerator door.
- **2** Hold the mouthpiece of your phone in front of the speaker that is located on the right hinge of the refrigerator door.



- **3** Press and hold the **Freezer** button for three seconds while continuing to hold your phone to the speaker.
- 4 After you hear three beeps, release the **Freezer** button.
- **5** Keep the phone in place until the tone transmission has finished. The display will count down the time. Once the countdown is over and the tones have stopped, the diagnosis will be displayed in the application.

#### NOTE

• For best results, do not move the phone while the tones are being transmitted.

# MAINTENANCE

# Cleaning

### 🛕 WARNING

• Use non-flammable cleaner. Failure to do so can result in fire, explosion, or death.

### 

- Do not use an abrasive cloth or sponge when cleaning the interior and exterior of the refrigerator.
- Do not place your hand on the bottom surface of the refrigerator when opening and closing the doors.

### **General Cleaning Tips**

- Both the refrigerator and freezer sections defrost automatically; however, clean both sections once a month to prevent odors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.
- Unplug the refrigerator or disconnect power before cleaning.
- Remove all removable parts, such as shelves.
- Use a clean sponge or soft cloth and a mild detergent in warm water. Do not use abrasive or harsh cleaners.
- Hand wash, rinse and dry all surfaces thoroughly.

### Exterior

For products with black stainless steel exterior, spray glass cleaner on a clean microfiber cloth and rub in direction of grain. Do not spray glass cleaner directly at the display panel. Do not use harsh or abrasive cleaners.

For products with a standard stainless steel exterior, use a damp microfiber cloth and rub in the direction of the grain. Dry with a paper towel to avoid streaks. For stubborn stains and fingerprints, use a few drops of liquid dish soap in water, and rinse with hot water before drying. Do not use abrasive or harsh cleaners.

To clean products with a mirrored glass door, use the microfiber cloth that came with the product. To remove stains more easily, spray the cloth with a glass cleaner and wipe the surface.

### **Inside Walls**

• Allow the freezer to warm up so the cloth will not stick.

To help remove odors, wash the inside of the refrigerator with a mixture of baking soda and warm water. Mix 2 tablespoons of baking soda to 1 quart of water (26 g soda to 1 liter water.) Be sure the baking soda is completely dissolved so it does not scratch the surfaces of the refrigerator.

### **Door Liners and Gaskets**

Use a clean sponge or soft cloth and a mild detergent in warm water. Do not use cleaning waxes, concentrated detergents, bleaches, or cleaners containing petroleum on plastic refrigerator parts.

### Plastic Parts (Covers and Panels)

Use a clean sponge or soft cloth and a mild detergent in warm water. Do not use glass cleaners, abrasive cleansers, or flammable fluids. These can scratch or damage the material.

### **Condenser Coils**

Use a vacuum cleaner with a brush or crevice attachment to clean the condenser cover and vents. Do not remove the panel covering the condenser coil area.



# **Air Filter**

This feature is only available on some models.

### **Replacing the Air Filter**

Replace the Air Filter:

- · Approximately every six months.
- When the Air Filter indicator lights up.
- Use replacement air filter: LT120F
- **1** Rotate the filter cover counterclockwise to release the tabs, and remove the cover.



**2** Remove the filter from the inside of the cover by pressing the side of the filter in and pulling the center out.



**3** Place the new filter inside of the cover with the side that says **FRONT** facing outward.



4 Align tabs **1** on the filter cover with hooks **2** on the refrigerator wall.



**5** Rotate the air filter cover clockwise until the hooks engage and the cover locks in place.



6 Press and hold the **Air Filter** button on the control panel for 3 seconds to reset the filter sensor.

## Water Filter

**Before Replacing the Water Filter** 

## 🛕 WARNING

- To reduce the risk associated with choking, do not allow children under 3 years of age to have access to small parts during the installation of this product.
- To reduce the risk associated with the ingestion of contaminants, do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system.
- Use of unauthorized water filters may result in product malfunction, water leakage or water quality issues, which will not be covered under the product warranty.

## 

- Read and follow Use Instructions before installation and use of this system.
- Installation and use MUST comply with all state and local plumbing codes.
- Do not install if water pressure exceeds 120 psi (827 kPa). If your water pressure exceeds 80 psi, you must install a pressure limiting valve. Contact a plumber if uncertain how to check your water pressure.
- Do not install where water hammer conditions may occur. If water hammer conditions exist you must install a water hammer arrester. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check for this condition.
- Do not install on hot water supply lines. The maximum operating water temperature of this filter system is 100 °F (37.8 °C).
- Protect filter from freezing. Drain filter when temperatures drop below 40 °F (4.4 °C).
- The disposable filter cartridge MUST be replaced every 6 months, at the rated capacity or if a noticeable reduction in flow rate occurs.
- To protect it from freezing, remove filter cartridge when temperatures are expected to drop below 33 °F.
- Do not install systems in areas where ambient temperatures may go above 110 °F (43.3 °C).

## 

- Where a backflow prevention device is installed on a water system, a device for controlling pressure due to thermal expansion must be installed.
- Ensure all tubing and fittings are secure and free from leaks.

## **Replacing the Water Filter**

- Replace the water filter:
  - Approximately every six months.
  - When the Replace Filter 🚔 icon or the indicator light turns on.
  - When the water dispenser output decreases.
  - When the rated gallons of water have been dispensed.
- To purchase a genuine replacement water filter:
  - Visit your local dealer or distributor
  - Search using "water filter" on lg.com
  - Use replacement cartridge: LT1000P, LT1000P\*, LT1000PC, LT1000PCS or ADQ747935\*\*
- 1 If the top shelf, located below the water filter, is in the highest position, it will need to be removed prior to replacing the water filter.
  - To remove any shelf, tilt up the front of the shelf and lift it. Pull the shelf out.



**2** Pinch the sides to open the water filter cover.



- **3** Pull the water filter downward and turn it counterclockwise before pulling it out.
  - Make sure to rotate the filter down completely before pulling it out of the manifold hole.

#### NOTE

- Replacing the water filter causes a small amount of water (around 1 oz. or 25 cc) to drain.
- Wrap a cloth around the front end of the water filter cover to collect any leaking water. Hold the water filter upright, once it is removed, to prevent any remaining water from spilling out of the water filter.



- **4** Replace with a new water filter.
  - Take the new water filter out of its packing and remove the protective cover from the orings. With the water filter tabs in the horizontal position, push the new water filter into the manifold hole and turn it clockwise until it stops.



**5** Close the water filter cover. The cover will click when closed correctly.



- **6** After the water filter is replaced,
  - Models with water dispenser: dispense 2.5 gallons of water (flush for approximately 5 minutes) to remove trapped air and contaminants from the system.

#### NOTE

- Do not dispense the entire 2.5 gallon amount continuously. Press and release the dispenser pad for cycles of 30 seconds ON and 60 seconds OFF.
  - Models without water dispenser: dispose of the first full bin of ice produced.
- 7 After changing the filter, press and hold the **Water Filter** button for three seconds to reset the indicator light.

## **CAUTION**

- LG strongly recommends that you use LGauthorized water filters to prevent water quality issues, water leakage and appliance malfunction.
- For further assistance, call:
  - 1-800-243-0000 (USA)
  - 1-888-542-2623 (Canada)

## **Performance Data Sheet**

Model: LT1000P, LT1000PC, LT1000PCS

NSF System Trade Name Code: MDJ64844601

The concentration of the indicated substances in water entering the system was reduced to a concentration less than or equal to the permissible limit for water leaving the system as specified in NSF/ ANSI Standard 42, Standard 53 and Standard 401.



System tested and certified by NSF International against NSF/ANSI Standard 42, Standard 53 and Standard 401 for the reduction of substances listed below.

Substance Reduction	Average Influent Challenge	NSF Specified Challenge Concentration	Avg % Reduction	Average Product Water Concentration	Max Permissible Product Water Concentration	NSF Reduction Requirements
Chlorine Taste and Odor	2.0 μg/L	2.0 μg/L± 10 %	>97.5 %	0.050 μg/L	N/A	≥ 50.00 %
Nominal Particulate Class I, , ≥ 0.5 to < 1.0 µm	12,000,000 pts/mL	At least 10,000 particles/mL	99.80 %	24,000 pts/ml	N/A	≥ 85.00 %
Asbestos	180 MFL	10 <sup>7</sup> to 10 <sup>8</sup> MFL; fibers greater than 10 μg/Lin length	>99.00 %	< 1 MFL	N/A	≥ 99.00 %
Atrazine	8.5 μg/L	9.0 μg/L ± 10 %	>94.10 %	0.500 μg/L	3.0 μg/L	NA
Benzene	15.0 μg/L	15.0 μg/L ± 10 %	>96.60 %	0.510 μg/L	5.0 μg/L	NA
Carbofuran	74.0 μg/L	80.0 μg/L ± 10 %	98.30 %	1.258 μg/L	40 µg/L	NA
Lindane	1.9 μg/L	2.0 μg/L ± 10 %	>99.00 %	0.019 μg/L	0.2 μg/L	NA
P-Dichlorobenzene	230.0 μg/L	225.0 μg/L ± 10 %	>99.80 %	0.460 μg/L	75.0 μg/L	NA
2,4-D	210.0 μg/L	210.0 μg/L ± 10 %	>99.90 %	0.210 μg/L	70.0 μg/L	NA
Lead pH @6.5	140.0 μg/L	150.0 μg/L ± 10 %	99.60 %	0.560 μg/L	10.0 µg/L	NA
Lead pH @8.5	150.0 μg/L	150.0 μg/L ± 10 %	>99.70 %	<0.500 µg/L	10.0 μg/L	NA
Mercury @ pH6.5	5.9 μg/L	6.0 μg/L ± 10 %	91.00 %	0.531 μg/L	2.0 μg/L	NA
Mercury @ pH8.5	5.6 μg/L	6.0 μg/L ± 10 %	92.5 %	0.420 μg/L	2.0 μg/L	NA
Cyst*	100,000 cysts/L	Minimum 50,000 cysts/L	>99.99 %	10 cysts/L	N/A	≥ 99.95 %
Atenolol	240 ng/L	200 ± 40 % ng/L	>95.50 %	10.80 ng/L	30 ng/L	NA
Carbamazepine	1600 ng/L	1400 ± 40 % ng/L	98.40 %	25.60 ng/L	200 ng/L	NA
DEET	1600 ng/L	1400 ± 40 % ng/L	97.10 %	46.40 ng/L	200 ng/L	NA
Trimethoprim	170 ng/L	140 ± 40 % ng/L	>96.80 %	5.44 ng/L	20 ng/L	NA
Linuron	160 ng/L	140 ± 40 % ng/L	>96.60 %	5.44 ng/L	20 ng/L	NA
Phenytoin	200 ng/L	200 ± 40 % ng/L	>94.80 %	10.40 ng/L	30 ng/L	NA
Ibuprofen	400 ng/L	400 ± 40 % ng/L	>94.50 %	22.00 ng/L	60 ng/L	NA
Naproxen	140 ng/L	140 ± 40 % ng/L	>96.10 %	5.46 ng/L	20 ng/L	NA
Estrone	120 ng/L	140 ± 40 % ng/L	>96.10 %	4.68 ng/L	20 ng/L	NA
Bisphenol A	2000 ng/L	2000 ± 40 % ng/L	>98.90 %	22.00 ng/L	300 ng/L	NA
Nonyl Phenol	1600 ng/L	1400 ± 40 % ng/L	>97.10 %	46.40 ng/L	200 ng/L	NA

\* Based on the use of Cryptosporidium parvum oocysts.

Guidelines for Application / Water Supply Parameters	
Service Flow	0.5 gpm (1.9 lpm)
Water Supply	Community or Private Well - Potable Water
Water Pressure	20 – 120 psi (138 – 827 kPa)
Water Temperature	33 °F – 100 °F (0.6 °C – 37.8 °C)
Capacity	200 gallons (757 liters)

It is essential that the manufacturer's recommended installation, maintenance and filter replacement requirements be carried out for the product to perform as advertised.

#### NOTE

• While the testing was performed under standard laboratory conditions, actual performance may vary.

For replacement filters, visit your local dealer or distributor or search under "water filters" on the <u>lg.com</u> website.

For further assistance, contact the LG Electronics Customer Information Center.

USA: 1-800-243-0000

Canada: 1-888-542-2623

LG is a trademark of LG Corp.

NSF is a trademark of NSF International.

Manufactured by LG Electronics, INC:

170, Sungsanpaechoungro, Seongsan-gu, Gyeongsangnam-do, THE REPUBLIC OF KOREA

## TROUBLESHOOTING

## FAQs

## **Frequently Asked Questions**

#### Q: What are the best temperature settings for my refrigerator and freezer?

A: The default setting for the refrigerator is 37° Fahrenheit (3° Celsius). The default setting for the freezer is 0° Fahrenheit (-18° Celsius). Adjust these settings as necessary to keep food at desired temperatures. Milk should be cold when stored on the inner shelf of the refrigerator. Ice cream should be firm and ice cubes should not melt in the freezer. To switch the display from Fahrenheit to Celsius, press and hold the **Freezer** and **Refrigerator** buttons until you hear a beep and the settings in the display change.

#### Q: How do I set the refrigerator and freezer temperatures?

A: Continually press the **Refrigerator** or **Freezer** button on the control panel until the desired temperature appears. The numbers will cycle from highest to lowest and then return to the highest again with continuous pressing.

#### Q: Why do I hear a buzzing noise from my refrigerator periodically?

A: This may happen if you do not have a water source attached to your refrigerator and the icemaker is turned on. If you do not have a water source attached to the back of the refrigerator you should turn the icemaker off.

#### Q: Why does the icemaker tray look crooked?

A: This is a normal part of the icemaker cycle. The icemaker tray may appear level or with a slight tilt. The change in position is to assist in the freezing process.

## Q: My refrigerator is powered on and the controls are working, but it's not cooling and the display shows "OFF" (see below). What is wrong?

A: The refrigerator is in Display Mode. The Display Mode disables all cooling in the refrigerator and freezer sections to conserve energy while on display in a retail store. When activated, OFF is displayed on the control panel and the display remains on for 20 seconds. With either refrigerator door opened, press the **Ice Plus** button 3 times consecutively while pressing the **Refrigerator** button. The control panel beeps and the temperature settings display to confirm that Display Mode is deactivated. Use the same procedure to activate Display Mode.

- Q: My refrigerator is on and is cooling, but none of the lights are on and the buttons don't work. The display shows "Sb".
- A: The Sabbath mode is activated. (Only included on some models.) To turn it off, see the **Sabbath Mode** section.

## **Before Calling for Service**

Review this section before calling for service; doing so will save you both time and money. For detailed information or videos, visit <u>www.lg.com</u> for the troubleshooting page.

## Cooling

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Refrigerator is not	The refrigerator control is set to OFF (some models).
cooling or has no power.	• Turn the control ON. Refer to the Setting the Controls section for proper temperature settings.
	Refrigerator is set to Demo Mode.
	• Demo Mode allows the lights and control display to work normally while disabling cooling, to save energy while the refrigerator is on the showroom floor. See the FAQs section of this manual for instructions on how to disable Demo Mode.
	Refrigerator is in the defrost cycle.
	• During the defrost cycle, the temperature of each compartment may rise slightly. Wait 30 minutes and confirm the proper temperature has been restored once the defrost cycle has completed.
	Refrigerator was recently installed.
	• It may take up to 24 hours for each compartment to reach the desired temperature.
	Refrigerator was recently relocated.
	• If the refrigerator was stored for a long period of time or moved on its side, it is necessary for the refrigerator to stand upright for 24 hours before connecting it to power.
Cooling system runs	Refrigerator is replacing an older model.
too much.	<ul> <li>Modern refrigerators require more operating time but use less energy due to more efficient technology.</li> </ul>
	Refrigerator was recently plugged in or power restored.
	• The refrigerator will take up to 24 hours to cool completely.
	The door is opened often or a large amount of food / hot food was added.
	• Adding food and opening the door warms the refrigerator, requiring the compressor to run longer in order to cool the refrigerator back down. In order to conserve energy, try to get everything you need out of the refrigerator at once, keep food organized so it is easy to find, and close the door as soon as the food is removed. (Refer to the Food Storage Guide.)
	Doors are not closed completely.
	<ul> <li>Firmly push the doors shut. If they will not shut all the way, the "Doors will not close correctly or pop open" section in Troubleshooting.</li> </ul>
	Refrigerator is installed in a hot location.
	• The compressor will run longer under warm conditions. At normal room temperatures (70 °F or 21 °C) expect your compressor to run about 40 % to 80 % of the time. Under warmer conditions, expect it to run even more often. The refrigerator should not be operated above 110 °F (43 °C).
	Condenser / back cover is clogged.
	• Use a vacuum cleaner with an attachment to clean the condenser cover and vents. Do not remove the panel covering the condenser coil area.
Interior moisture	Doors are opened often or for long periods of time.
buildup.	• When the doors are opened often or for long periods of time, warm, humid air enters the compartment. This raises the temperature and moisture level within the compartment. To lessen the effect, reduce the frequency and duration of door openings.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Interior moisture	Doors are not closed correctly.
buildup.	See the "Doors will not close correctly or pop open" section.
	Weather is humid.
	• Humid weather allows additional moisture to enter the compartments when the doors are opened leading to condensation or frost. Maintaining a reasonable level of humidity in the home will help to control the amount of moisture that can enter the compartments.
	Defrost cycle recently completed.
	• During the defrost cycle, the temperature of each compartment may rise slightly and condensation may form on the back wall. Wait 30 minutes and confirm that the proper temperature has been restored once the defrost cycle has completed.
	Food is not packaged correctly.
	<ul> <li>Food stored uncovered or unwrapped, and damp containers can lead to moisture accumulation within each compartment. Wipe all containers dry and store food in sealed packaging to prevent condensation and frost.</li> </ul>
Food is freezing in	Food with high water content was placed near an air vent.
the refrigerator compartment.	Rearrange items with high water content away from air vents.
compartment.	Refrigerator temperature control is set incorrectly.
	• If the temperature is too cold, adjust the control one increment at a time and wait for the temperature to stabilize. Refer to the Control Panel section for more information.
	Refrigerator is installed in a cold location.
	• When the refrigerator is operated in temperature below 41 °F (5 °C), food can freeze in the refrigerator compartment. The refrigerator should not be operated in temperature below 55 °F (13 °C).
Refrigerator or	Incorrect temperature control settings.
Freezer section is too cold.	• If the temperature is too cold, adjust the control one increment at a time and wait for the temperature to stabilize. Refer to the Control Panel for more information.
Frost or ice crystals form on frozen food	Condensation from food with a high water content has frozen inside of the food package.
(inside of sealed package).	• This is normal for food items with a high water content.
P	Food has been left in the freezer for a long period of time.
	• Do not store food items with high water content in the freezer for a long period of time.
Frost or ice crystals	Door is opened frequently or for long periods of time.
form on frozen food (outside of package).	• When the doors are opened often or for long periods of time, warm, humid air enters the compartment. This raises the temperature and moisture level within the compartment. Increased moisture will lead to frost and condensation. To lessen the effect, reduce the frequency and duration of door openings.
	Door is not closing properly.
	• Refer to the "Doors will not close correctly or pop open" section in the Troubleshooting.
Refrigerator or	Refrigerator was recently installed.
Freezer section is too warm.	• It may take up to 24 hours for each compartment to reach the desired temperature.
warm.	The air vents are blocked. Cold air circulates from the freezer to the fresh food section and back again through air vents in the wall dividing the two sections.
	<ul> <li>Locate air vents by using your hand to sense airflow and move all packages that block vents and restrict airflow. Rearrange items to allow air to flow throughout the compartment.</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Refrigerator or Freezer section is too warm.	Doors are opened often or for long periods of time.	
	• When the doors are opened often or for long periods of time, warm, humid air enters the compartment. This raises the temperature and moisture level within the compartment. To lessen the effect, reduce the frequency and duration of door openings.	
	Unit is installed in a hot location.	
	• The refrigerator should not be operated in temperatures above 110 °F (43 °C).	
	A large amount of food or hot food was added to either compartment.	
	• Adding food warms the compartment requiring the cooling system to run. Allowing hot food to cool to room temperature before putting it in the refrigerator will reduce this effect.	
	Doors are not closed correctly.	
	• See the "Doors will not close correctly or pop open" section in the Troubleshooting.	
	Temperature control is not set correctly.	
	• If the temperature is too warm, adjust the control one increment at a time and wait for the temperature to stabilize.	
	Defrost cycle has recently completed.	
	• During the defrost cycle, the temperature of each compartment may rise slightly and condensation may form on the back wall. Wait 30 minutes and confirm the proper temperature has been restored once the defrost cycle has completed.	

## **Craft Ice**

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Icemaker is not	Refrigerator was recently installed or icemaker recently connected.	
making ice.	• The icemaker begins producing ice approximately 48 hours after the appliance is initially installed. The first batches of ice may not be round and clear.	
Icemaker is not making enough ice.	In 3 ICE mode, the Craft Ice icemaker produces 1 batch of round ice about every 24 hours.	
	• For more ice, select the 6 ICE mode which produces 2 batches every 24 hours.	

## Ice

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Icemaker is not	Demand exceeds ice production capacity.	
making enough ice.	• Refer to the Automatic Icemaker section for ice production capacity to check the amount of ice produced in a 24 hour period.	
	House water supply is not connected, valve is not turned on fully, or valve is clogged.	
	• Connect the refrigerator to a cold water supply with adequate pressure and turn the water shutoff valve fully open. If the problem persists, it may be necessary to contact a plumber.	
	Water filter has been exhausted.	
	Replacing the water filter is recommended:	
	- Approximately every six months.	
	- When the water filter indicator turns on.	
	- When the water dispenser output decreases.	
	- When the ice cubes are smaller than normal.	

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Icemaker is not	Low house water supply pressure.
making enough ice.	• The water pressure must be between 20 and 120 psi (138 and 827 kPa) on models without a water filter and between 40 and 120 psi (276 and 827 kPa) on models with a water filter. If the problem persists, it may be necessary to contact a plumber.
	Reverse osmosis filtration system is used.
	• Reverse osmosis filtration systems can reduce the water pressure below the minimum amount and result in icemaker issues. (Refer to the Connecting the Water Line section.)
	Tubing connecting refrigerator to house supply valve is kinked.
	• The tubing can kink when the refrigerator is moved during installation or cleaning resulting in reduced water flow. Straighten or repair the water supply line and arrange it to prevent future kinks.
	Doors are opened often or for long periods of time.
	• If the doors of the unit are opened often, ambient air will warm the refrigerator which will prevent the unit from maintaining the set temperature. Lowering the refrigerator temperature can help, as well as not opening the doors as frequently.
	Doors are not closed completely.
	• If the doors are not properly closed, ice production will be affected. See the "Doors will not close correctly or pop open" section in Parts & Features Troubleshooting for more information.
	The temperature setting for the freezer is too warm.
	• The recommended temperature for the freezer compartment for normal ice production is 0 °F (-18 °C). If the freezer temperature is warmer, ice production will be affected.
Icemaker is not	Refrigerator was recently installed or icemaker recently connected.
making ice	• It may take up to 24 hours for each compartment to reach the desired temperature and for the icemaker to begin making ice.
	Icemaker is not turned on.
	Locate the icemaker ON/OFF and confirm that it is turned on.
	The ice detecting sensor is obstructed.
	• Foreign substances or frost on the ice-detecting sensor can interrupt ice production. Make sure that the sensor area is clean at all times for proper operation.
	The refrigerator is not connected to a water supply or the supply shutoff valve is not turned on.
	• Connect the refrigerator to the water supply and turn the water shutoff valve fully open.
	Icemaker shutoff (arm or sensor) obstructed.
	• If your icemaker is equipped with an ice shutoff arm, make sure that the arm moves freely. If your icemaker is equipped with the electronic ice shutoff sensor, make sure that there is a clear path between the two sensors.
	Reverse osmosis water filtration system is connected to your cold water supply.
	• Reverse osmosis filtration systems can reduce the water pressure below the minimum amount and result in icemaker issues. (Refer to the Connecting the Water Line section.)
Ice has bad taste or	Water supply contains minerals such as sulfur.
odor.	• A water filter may need to be installed to eliminate taste and odor problems. NOTE: In some cases, a filter may not help. It may not be possible to remove all minerals/odor/taste in all water supplies.
	Icemaker was recently installed.
	• Ice that has been stored for too long will shrink, become cloudy, and may develop a stale taste. Throw away old ice and make a new supply.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Ice has bad taste or	The food has not been stored properly in either compartment.
odor.	Rewrap the food. Odors may migrate to the ice if food is not wrapped properly.
	The interior of the refrigerator needs to be cleaned.
	See the Maintenance section for more information.
	The ice storage bin needs to be cleaned.
	• Empty and wash the bin (discard old cubes). Make sure that the bin is completely dry before reinstalling it.
Icemaker is making	Icemaker shutoff (arm/ sensor) is obstructed.
too much ice.	• Empty the ice bin. If your icemaker is equipped with an ice shutoff arm, make sure that the arm moves freely. If your icemaker is equipped with the electronic ice shutoff sensor, make sure that there is a clear path between the two sensors. Reinstall the ice bin and wait 24 hours to confirm proper operation.
Ice is not dispensing.	Unable to hear the sound of ice coming out?
	• In the control panel, select the modes for cubed ice and crushed ice alternately to dispense the ice.
	Doors are not closed completely.
	• Ice will not dispense if any of the refrigerator doors are left open.
	Infrequent use of the dispenser.
	• Infrequent use of the ice dispenser will cause the cubes to stick together over time, which will prevent them from properly dispensing. Check the ice bin for ice cubes clumping/ sticking together. If they are, break up the ice cubes to allow for proper operation.
	The delivery chute is clogged with frost or ice fragments.
	• Eliminate the frost or ice fragments by removing the ice bin and clearing the chute with a plastic utensil. Dispensing cubed ice can also help prevent frost or ice fragment buildup.
	The dispenser display is locked.
	<ul> <li>Press and hold the Lock button for three seconds to unlock the control panel and dispenser.</li> </ul>
	Ice bin is empty.
	• It may take up to 24 hours for each compartment to reach the desired temperature and for the icemaker to begin making ice. Make sure that the shutoff (arm/sensor) is not obstructed. Once the ice supply in the bin has been completely exhausted, it may take up to 90 minutes before additional ice is available, and approximately 24 hours to completely refill the bin.

## Water

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Water is dispensing	Water filter has been exhausted.		
slowly.	Replacing the water filter is recommended:		
	- Approximately every six months.		
	- When the water filter indicator turns on.		
	- When the water dispenser output decreases.		
	- When the ice cubes are smaller than normal.		
	Reverse osmosis filtration system is used.		
	• Reverse osmosis filtration systems can reduce the water pressure below the minimum amount and result in icemaker issues. If the problem persists, it may be necessary to contact a plumber.		

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Water is dispensing	Low house water supply pressure.
slowly.	• The water pressure must be between 20 and 120 psi on models without a water filter and between 40 and 120 psi on models with a water filter. If the problem persists, it may be necessary to contact a plumber.
Water is not	New installation or water line recently connected.
dispensing.	• Dispense 2.5 gallons of water (flush for approximately 5 minutes) to remove trapped air and contaminants from the system. Do not dispense the entire 2.5 gallon amount continuously. Depress and release the dispenser pad for cycles of 30 seconds ON and 60 seconds OFF.
	The dispenser panel is locked.
	<ul> <li>Press and hold the Lock button for three seconds to unlock the control panel and dispenser.</li> </ul>
	The dispenser is not set for water dispensing.
	• The dispenser can be set for ice or water. Make certain that the control panel is set for the proper operation. <b>Press</b> the <b>Water</b> button on the control panel to dispense water.
	Refrigerator or freezer doors are not closed properly.
	• Water will not dispense if any of the refrigerator doors are left open.
	Water filter has been recently removed or replaced.
	• After the water filter is replaced, dispense 2.5 gallons of water (flush for approximately five minutes) to remove trapped air and contaminants from the system. Do not dispense the entire 2.5 gallon amount continuously. Depress and release the dispenser pad for cycles of 30 seconds ON and 60 seconds OFF.
	Tubing connecting refrigerator to house supply valve is kinked.
	• The tubing can kink when the refrigerator is moved during installation or cleaning. Resulting in reduced water flow. Straighten or repair the water supply line and arrange it to prevent future kinks.
	The house water supply is not connected, the valve is not turned on fully, or the valve is clogged.
	• Connect the refrigerator to the water supply and turn the water shutoff valve fully open. If the problem persists, it may be necessary to contact a plumber.
Dispensing warm	Refrigerator was recently installed.
water.	Allow 24 hours after installation for the water storage tank to cool completely.
	The water dispenser has been used recently and the storage tank was exhausted.
	• Depending on your specific model, the water storage capacity will range from approximately 20 to 30 oz.
	Dispenser has not been used for several hours.
	• If the dispenser has not been used for several hours, the first glass dispensed may be warm. Discard the first 10oz.
	Refrigerator is connected to the hot water supply.
	Make sure that the refrigerator is connected to a cold water pipe.
	WARNING: Connecting the refrigerator to a hot water line may damage the icemaker.
Water has bad taste	Water supply contains minerals such as sulfur.
or odor.	A water filter may need to be installed to eliminate taste and odor problems.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Water has bad taste	Water filter has been exhausted.		
or odor.	Replacing the water filter is recommended:		
	- Approximately every six months.		
	- When the water filter indicator turns on.		
	- When the water dispenser output decreases.		
	- When the ice cubes are smaller than normal.		
	Refrigerator was recently installed.		
	• Dispense 2.5 gallons of water (flush for approximately 5 minutes) to remove trapped air and contaminants from the system. Do not dispense the entire 2.5 gallon amount continuously. Depress and release the dispenser pad for cycles of 30 seconds ON and 60 seconds OFF.		

## **Parts & Features**

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Doors will not close	Food packages are blocking the door open.		
correctly or pop open.	Rearrange food containers to clear the door and door shelves.		
	Ice bin, crisper cover, pans, shelves, door bins, or baskets are out of position.		
	• Push bins all the way in and put crisper cover, pans, shelves and baskets into their correct positions. See the Operation section for more information.		
	The doors were removed during product installation and not properly replaced.		
	<ul> <li>Remove and replace the doors according to the Removing and Replacing Refrigerator Handles and Doors section.</li> </ul>		
	Refrigerator is not leveled properly.		
	• See Door Alignment in the Refrigeration Installation section to level refrigerator.		
Doors are difficult to	The gaskets are dirty or sticky.		
open.	<ul> <li>Clean the gaskets and the surfaces that they touch. Rub a thin coat of appliance polish or kitchen wax on the gaskets after cleaning.</li> </ul>		
	Door was recently closed.		
	• When you open the door, warmer air enters the refrigerator. As the warm air cools, it can create a vacuum. If the door is hard to open, wait one minute to allow the air pressure to equalize, then see if it opens more easily.		
Refrigerator wobbles	Leveling legs are not adjusted properly.		
or seems unstable	Refer to the Leveling and Door Alignment section.		
	Floor is not level.		
	• It may be necessary to add shims under the leveling legs or rollers to complete installation.		
Lights do not work.	LED interior lighting failure.		
	<ul> <li>The refrigerator compartment lamp is LED interior lighting, and service should be performed by a qualified technician.</li> </ul>		

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Lights do not work.	LED door lighting failure (on some models).		
	• The proximity sensor is located in the center of the door, and may not sense activity to the side of the door. The proximity sensor must detect a person before it will operate the LED Lighting.		
	If the flooring material is highly reflective, or if there are highly reflective objects in front of the product, the proximity sensor which controls the LED door lighting may not function properly.		
	• It may take 30 seconds to work normally after the refrigerator is initially installed.		
Refrigerator has an	The Air Filter may need to be set to the MAX setting or replaced.		
unusual odor.	• Set the Air Filter to the MAX setting. If the odor does not go away within 24 hours, the filter may need to be replaced. See the Replacing the Air Filter section for replacement instructions.		
The interior of the refrigerator is covered with dust or soot.	The refrigerator is located near a fire source, such as a fireplace, chimney, or candle.		
	<ul> <li>Make sure that the refrigerator is not located near a fire source, such as a fireplace, chimney or candle.</li> </ul>		

## Noises

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Clicking	The defrost control will click when the automatic defrost cycle begins and ends. The thermostat control (or refrigerator control on some models) will also click when cycling on and off.		
	Normal Operation		
Rattling	Rattling noises may come from the flow of refrigerant, the water line on the back of the unit, or items stored on top of or around the refrigerator.		
	Normal Operation		
	Refrigerator is not resting solidly on the floor.		
	• Floor is weak or uneven or leveling legs need to be adjusted. See the Leveling and Door Alignment section.		
	Refrigerator with linear compressor was jarred while running.		
	Normal Operation		
Whooshing	Evaporator fan motor is circulating air through the refrigerator and freezer compartments.		
	Normal Operation		
	Air is being forced over the condenser by the condenser fan.		
	Normal Operation		
Gurgling	Refrigerant flowing through the cooling system.		
	Normal Operation		
Popping	Contraction and expansion of the inside walls due to changes in temperature.		
	Normal Operation		
Sizzling	Water dripping on the defrost heater during a defrost cycle.		
	Normal Operation		
Vibrating	If the side or back of the refrigerator is touching a cabinet or wall, some of the normal vibrations may make an audible sound.		
	• To eliminate the noise, make sure that the sides and back cannot vibrate against any wall or cabinet.		

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Dripping	Water running into the drain pan during the defrost cycle.
	Normal Operation
Pulsating or high- pitched sound	Your refrigerator is designed to run more efficiently to keep your food items at the desired temperature. The high efficiency compressor may cause your new refrigerator to run longer than your old one, but it is still more energy efficient than previous models. While the refrigerator is running, it is normal to hear a pulsating or high- pitched sound. • Normal Operation

## Wi-Fi

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution		
Trouble connecting appliance and smartphone to Wi-Fi	The password for the Wi-Fi network was entered incorrectly.		
	• Delete your home Wi-Fi network and begin the connection process again.		
network	Mobile data for your smartphone is turned on.		
	• Turn off the <b>Mobile data</b> on your smartphone before connecting the appliance.		
	The wireless network name (SSID) is set incorrectly.		
	<ul> <li>The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)</li> </ul>		
	The router frequency is not 2.4 GHz.		
	• Only a 2.4 GHz router frequency is supported. Set the wireless router to 2.4 GHz and connect the appliance to the wireless router. To check the router frequency, check with your Internet service provider or the router manufacturer.		
	The appliance and the router are too far apart.		
	• If the appliance is too far from the router, the signal may be weak and the connection may not be configured correctly. Move the router closer to the appliance or purchase and install a Wi-Fi repeater.		
	During Wi-Fi setup, the app is requesting a password to connect to the product (on certain phones).		
	<ul> <li>Locate the network name which starts with "LG" under Settings &gt; Networks. Note the last part of the network name.</li> </ul>		
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XX-XX-XX, enter lge12345.		
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XXXX, enter XXXX twice as your password. For example, if the network name appears as LGE_Appliance_8b92, then you would enter 8b928b92 as your password. In this instance, the password is case sensitive and the last 4 characters are unique to your appliance.		

## **Error Codes**

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
"Sb" appears on the display. Refrigerator is running but control panel is inactive.	<ul> <li>The Sabbath mode is activated.</li> <li>Some models feature a Sabbath mode for use during the Jewish Sabbath and Holidays. See the Sabbath Mode section of the manual for instructions on activating and deactivating this mode.</li> </ul>	

## LIMITED WARRANTY

## USA

#### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

#### ARBITRATION NOTICE: THIS LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINS AN ARBITRATION PROVISION THAT REQUIRES YOU AND LG ELECTRONICS ("LG") TO RESOLVE DISPUTES BY BINDING ARBITRATION INSTEAD OF IN COURT, UNLESS YOU CHOOSE TO OPT OUT. IN ARBITRATION, CLASS ACTIONS AND JURY TRIALS ARE NOT PERMITTED. PLEASE SEE THE SECTION TITLED "PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES" BELOW.

Should your LG Refrigerator ("Product") fail due to a defect in materials or workmanship under normal and proper use, during the warranty period set forth below, LG will, at its option, repair or replace the Product. This limited warranty is valid only to the original retail purchaser of the Product ("You") and applies only when purchased lawfully and used within the United States including U.S. Territories.

WARRANTY PERIOD			
Refrigerator/Freezer	Sealed System (Condenser, Dryer, Connecting Tube and Evaporator)	Compressor	
One (1) year from the date of original retail purchase	Five (5) years from the date of original retail purchase	Five (5) years from the date of original retail purchase	Linear / Inverter Compressor Only : Parts Only for years 6-10 from
Parts and Labor (internal/ functional parts only)	Parts and Labor	Parts and Labor	the date of original retail purchase (You will be charged for labor.)

• Replacement Products and parts are warranted for the remaining portion of the original warranty period or ninety (90) days, whichever is greater.

- Replacement Products and parts may be new, reconditioned, refurbished, or otherwise factory remanufactured.
- Replaced Product or part(s) will be the property of LG.
- Proof of original retail purchase specifying the Product model and date of purchase is required to obtain warranty service under this limited warranty.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ON THE PRODUCT IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL LG OR ITS U.S. DISTRIBUTORS/DEALERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST GOODWILL, LOST REVENUES OR PROFITS, WORK STOPPAGE, IMPAIRMENT OF OTHER GOODS, COST OF REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT, LOSS OF USE, OR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. LG'S TOTAL LIABILITY, IF ANY, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

## THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

• Service trips to deliver, pick up, or install, educate how to operate, correct wiring, or correct unauthorized repairs.

- Damage or failure of the Product to perform during power failures and interrupted or inadequate electrical service.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by leaky or broken water pipes, frozen water pipes, restricted drain lines, inadequate or interrupted water supply or inadequate supply of air.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from operating the Product in a corrosive atmosphere or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by accidents, pests and vermin, lightning, wind, fire, floods, acts of nature, or any other causes beyond the control of LG.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by unauthorized modification or alteration, or if the Product is used for other than the intended purpose, or any water leakage where the Product was not properly installed.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by incorrect electrical current, voltage, or plumbing codes.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by transportation, storage, and/or handling, including scratches, dents, chips, and/or other damage to the finish of the Product, unless such damage is reported within one (1) week of delivery.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from misuse, abuse, improper installation, repair, or maintenance. Improper repair includes the use of parts not authorized by LG. Improper installation or maintenance includes installation or maintenance contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by the use of parts, components, accessories, consumable cleaning products, or any other products or services that were not authorized by LG.
- Damage or missing items to any display or open box Product.
- Refurbished Product or any Product sold "As Is", "Where Is", "With all Faults", or similar disclaimer.
- Products with original serial numbers that have been removed, altered, or cannot be readily determined.
- Increases in utility costs and additional utility expenses.
- · Any noises associated with normal operation.
- Products used for other than normal and proper household use (e.g., commercial or industrial use) or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Costs associated with removal and reinstallation of the Product for repairs, or the removal and reinstallation of the Product if it is installed in an inaccessible location or not installed in accordance with the Product Owner's manual.
- Accessories, removable components, or consumable parts (e.g. Shelves, door bins, drawers, water/air filters, racks, light bulbs, batteries, etc., as applicable), except for internal/functional parts covered under this limited warranty.

#### The cost of repair or replacement under these excluded circumstances shall be borne by You.

TO OBTAIN WARRANTY SERVICE AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Call <u>1-800-243-0000</u> and select the appropriate option from the menu.

Or visit our website at http://www.lg.com

Or by mail: LG Electronics Customer Service P.O. Box 240007 Huntsville, AL 35813 ATTN: CIC

## **PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:**

ALL DISPUTES BETWEEN YOU AND LG ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE PRODUCT SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT IN A COURT OF GENERAL JURISDICTION. BINDING ARBITRATION MEANS THAT YOU AND LG ARE EACH WAIVING THE RIGHT TO A JURY TRIAL AND TO BRING OR PARTICIPATE IN A CLASS ACTION.

**Definitions.** For the purposes of this section, references to "LG" mean LG Electronics U.S.A., Inc., its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, beneficiaries, predecessors in interest, successors, assigns and suppliers; references to "dispute" or "claim" shall include any dispute, claim or controversy of any kind whatsoever (whether based in contract, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, fraud, misrepresentation or any other legal or equitable theory) arising out of or relating in any way to the sale, condition or performance of the product or this Limited Warranty.

**Notice of Dispute.** In the event you intend to commence an arbitration proceeding, you must first notify LG in writing at least 30 days in advance of initiating the arbitration by sending a letter to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. You and LG agree to engage in good faith discussions in an attempt to amicably resolve your claim. The notice must provide your name, address, and telephone number; identify the product that is the subject of the claim; and describe the nature of the claim and the relief being sought. If you and LG are unable to resolve the dispute within 30 days, either party may proceed to file a claim for arbitration.

**Agreement to Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver.** Upon failure to resolve the dispute during the 30 day period after sending written notice to LG, you and LG agree to resolve any claims between us only by binding arbitration on an individual basis, unless you opt out as provided below. Any dispute between you and LG shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's product or claim. More specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, any dispute between you and LG shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class or representative action. Instead of arbitration, either party may bring an individual action in small claims court, but that small claims court action may not be brought on a class or representative basis.

**Arbitration Rules and Procedures.** To begin arbitration of a claim, either you or LG must make a written demand for arbitration. The arbitration will be administered by the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") and will be conducted before a single arbitrator under the AAA's Consumer Arbitration Rules that are in effect at the time the arbitration is initiated (referred to as the "AAA Rules") and under the procedures set forth in this section. The AAA Rules are available online at www.adr.org/consumer. Send a copy of your written demand for arbitration, as well as a copy of this provision, to the AAA in the manner described in the AAA Rules. You must also send a copy of your written demand to LG at LG Electronics, USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. If there is a conflict between the AAA Rules and the rules set forth in this section, the rules set forth in this section will govern. This arbitration provision is governed by the Federal Arbitration Act. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. All issues are for the arbitrator to decide, except that issues relating to the scope and enforceability of the arbitration provision and to the arbitratioin you the dispute are for the court to decide. The arbitrator is bound by the terms of this provision.

**Governing Law.** The law of the state of your residence shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between us except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal law.

**Fees/Costs.** You do not need to pay any fee to begin an arbitration. Upon receipt of your written demand for arbitration, LG will promptly pay all arbitration filing fees to the AAA unless you seek more than \$25,000 in damages, in which case the payment of these fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for herein, LG will pay all AAA filing, administration and arbitrator fees for any arbitration initiated in accordance with the AAA Rules and this arbitration provision. If you prevail in the arbitration, LG will pay your attorneys' fees and expenses as long as they are reasonable, by considering factors including, but not limited to, the purchase amount and claim amount. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable law allows for an award of reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, an arbitrator can award them to the same extent that a court would. If the arbitrator finds either the substance of your claim or the relief sought in the demand is frivolous or brought for an improper purpose (as measured by the standards set forth in Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 11(b)), then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. In such a situation, you agree to reimburse LG for all monies previously disbursed by it that are otherwise your obligation to pay under the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for, LG waives any rights it may have to seek attorneys' fees and expenses from you if LG prevails in the arbitration.

**Hearings and Location.** If your claim is for \$25,000 or less, you may choose to have the arbitration conducted solely on the basis of (1) documents submitted to the arbitrator, (2) through a telephonic hearing, or (3) by an in-person hearing as established by the AAA Rules. If your claim exceeds \$25,000, the right to a hearing will be determined by the AAA Rules. Any in-person arbitration hearings will be held at a location within the federal judicial district in which you reside unless we both agree to another location or we agree to a telephonic arbitration.

**Opt Out.** You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. If you opt out, neither you nor LG can require the other to participate in an arbitration proceeding. To opt out, you must send notice to LG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the product by either: (i) sending an e-mail to optout@lge.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out" or (ii) calling 1-

800-980-2973. You must include in the opt out e-mail or provide by telephone: (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the product was purchased; (c) the product model name or model number; and (d) the serial number (the serial number can be found (i) on the product; or (ii) online by accessing https:// www.lg.com/us/support/repair-service/schedule-repair-continued and clicking on "Find My Model & Serial Number").

You may only opt out of the dispute resolution procedure in the manner described above (that is, by e-mail or telephone); no other form of notice will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the full benefits of the Limited Warranty. If you keep this product and do not opt out, then you accept all terms and conditions of the arbitration provision described above.

## Canada

## **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

ARBITRATION NOTICE: THIS LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINS AN ARBITRATION PROVISION THAT REQUIRES YOU AND LG TO RESOLVE DISPUTES BY BINDING ARBITRATION INSTEAD OF IN COURT, UNLESS THE LAWS OF YOUR PROVINCE OR TERRITORY DO NOT PERMIT THAT, OR, IN OTHER JURISDICTIONS, IF YOU CHOOSE TO OPT OUT. FOR FURTHER CLARITY, THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION IS NOT APPLICABLE TO CUSTOMERS RESIDING IN ONTARIO. IN ARBITRATION, CLASS ACTIONS AND JURY TRIALS ARE NOT PERMITTED. PLEASE SEE THE SECTION TITLED "PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES" BELOW.

Should your LG Refrigerator ("Product") fail due to a defect in materials or workmanship under normal and proper use, during the warranty period set forth below, LG Electronics Canada, Inc. ("LGECI") will, at its option, repair, replace or pro rate the Product upon receipt of proof of the original retail purchase. This limited warranty is valid only to the original retail purchaser of the Product and applies only to a Product distributed, purchased from an authorized retailer and used within Canada, as determined at the sole discretion of LGECI.

WARRANTY PERIOD (Note: If the original date of purchase cannot be verified, the warranty will begin sixty (60) days from the date of manufacture)			
Refrigerator	Sealed System (Condenser, Dryer, Connecting Tube and Evaporator)		Linear / Inverter Compressor
One (1) year from the date of original retail purchase	One (1) year from the date of original retail purchase	Seven (7) years from the date of original retail purchase	Ten (10) years from the date of original retail purchase
Parts and Labor (internal/ functional parts only)	Parts and Labor	Parts only (Consumer will be charged for labor)	Part only (Consumer will be charged for labor)

• Replacement products and parts are warranted for the remaining portion of the original warranty period or ninety (90) days, whichever is greater.

- Replacement products and parts may be new, reconditioned, refurbished, or otherwise factory remanufactured, all at the sole discretion of LGECI.
- Proof of original retail purchase specifying the Product model and date of purchase is required to obtain warranty service under this Limited Warranty.

LGECI'S SOLE LIABILITY IS LIMITED TO THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET OUT ABOVE, UNLESS SUCH LIMITATION IS PROHIBITED BY THE LAWS OF THE PROVINCE IN WHICH YOU RESIDE. EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED ABOVE, OR IF OTHERWISE PROHIBITED BY THE LAW OF THE PROVINCE IN WHICH YOU RESIDE, LGECI DOES NOT MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS RESPECTING THE PRODUCT, AND HEREBY DISCLAIMS, ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS RESPECTING THE PRODUCT, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NO REPRESENTATIONS SHALL BE BINDING ON LGECI. LGECI DOES NOT AUTHORIZE ANY PERSON TO CREATE OR ASSUME FOR IT ANY OTHER WARRANTY OBLIGATION OR LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE PRODUCT. TO THE EXTENT THAT ANY WARRANTY OR CONDITION IS IMPLIED BY LAW, IT IS LIMITED TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD SET OUT ABOVE. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL LGECI, THE MANUFACTURER OR DISTRIBUTOR OF THE PRODUCT, BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOSS OF GOODWILL, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS, LOST REVENUE, LOSS OF USE, OR ANY OTHER DAMAGE, WHETHER ARISING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY FROM ANY CONTRACTUAL BREACH, FUNDAMENTAL BREACH, TORT OR OTHERWISE, OR FROM ANY ACTS OR OMISSIONS. LGECI'S TOTAL LIABILITY, IF ANY, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from province to province depending on applicable provincial laws. Any term of this Limited Warranty that

negates or varies any implied condition or warranty under provincial law is severable where it conflicts with such provincial law without affecting the remainder of this warranty's terms.

## THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

- Service trips to i) deliver, pick up, or install or; educate on how to operate the Product; ii) correct wiring or plumbing; or iii) correct unauthorized repairs or installations of the Product;
- Damage or failure of the Product to perform during power failures and interrupted or inadequate electrical service;
- Damage or failure caused by leaky or broken water pipes, frozen water pipes, restricted drain lines, inadequate or interrupted water supply or inadequate supply of air;
- Damage or failure resulting from operating the Product in a corrosive atmosphere or contrary to the instructions outlined in the Product's owner's manual;
- Damage or failure to the Product caused by accidents, pests and vermin, lightning, wind, fire, floods, acts of God, or any other causes beyond the control of LGECI or the manufacturer;
- Damage or failure resulting from misuse, abuse, improper installation, repair, or maintenance of the Product. Improper repair includes use of parts not authorized or specified by LGECI. Improper installation or maintenance includes installation or maintenance contrary to the Product's owner's manual;.
- Damage or failure caused by unauthorized modification or alteration of the Product, or if used for other than the intended household purpose/use of the Product, or damage or failure resulting from any water leakage due to improper installation of the Product;
- · Damage or failure caused by incorrect electrical current, voltage or plumbing codes;
- Damage or failure caused by use that is other than normal household use, including, without limitation, commercial or industrial use, including use in commercial offices or recreational facilities, or as otherwise outlined in the Product's owner's manual;
- Damage or failure caused by the use of any accessories, components or cleaning products, including, without limitation, water filters, that are not approved/authorized by LGECI;
- Replacement of the water filter cartridge due to water pressure that is outside the specified operating range or due to excessive sediment in the water supply;
- Damage or failure caused by transportation and handling, including scratches, dents, chips and/or other damage to the finish of the Product, unless such damage results from defects in materials or workmanship and is reported to LGECI within one (1) week of delivery of the Products;
- · Damage or missing items to any display, open box, refurbished or discounted Product;
- Refurbished Product or any Product sold "As Is", "Where Is", "With all Faults", or any similar disclaimer;
- Products with original serial numbers that have been removed, altered or cannot be readily determined at the discretion of LGECI;
- · Increases in utility costs and additional utility expenses in any way associated with the Product;
- · Any noises associated with normal operation of the Product;
- · Replacement of light bulbs, filters, fuses or any other consumable parts;
- · Replacement of any part that was not originally included with the Product;
- · Costs associated with removal and/or reinstallation of the Product for repairs; and
- Shelves, door bins, drawers, handle and accessories to the Product, except for internal/functional parts covered under this Limited Warranty.
- Coverage for "in Home" repairs, for products in-warranty, will be provided if the Product is within a 150 km radius from the nearest authorized service center (ASC), as determined by LG Canada. If your Product is located outside a 150 km radius from a ASC, as determined by LG Canada, it will be your responsibility to bring the Product, at your sole expense, to the ASC for in-warranty repair.

#### All costs and expenses associated with the above excluded circumstances, listed under the heading, This Limited Warranty Does Not Cover, shall be borne by the consumer.

TO OBTAIN WARRANTY SERVICE AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION, PLEASE CALL OR VISIT OUR WEBSITE: Call <u>1-888-542-2623</u> (8 am - 9 pm EST, 365 days) and select the appropriate option from the menu, or visit our website at **http://www.lg.com** 

## **PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:**

EXCEPT WHERE PROHIBITED BY LAW, ALL DISPUTES BETWEEN YOU AND LG ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE PRODUCT SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT IN A COURT OF GENERAL JURISDICTION. EXCEPT WHERE PROHIBITED AT LAW, YOU AND LG BOTH IRREVOCABLY AGREE TO WAIVE THE RIGHT TO A JURY TRIAL AND TO BRING OR PARTICIPATE IN A CLASS ACTION. FOR CLARITY, THIS PROVISION DOES NOT APPLY TO CONSUMERS RESIDING IN ONTARIO.

**Definitions.** For the purposes of this section, references to "LG" mean LG Electronics Canada, Inc., its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, beneficiaries, predecessors in interest, successors, assigns and suppliers; references to "dispute" or "claim" shall include any dispute, claim or controversy of any kind whatsoever (whether based in contract, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, fraud, misrepresentation or any other legal or equitable theory) arising out of or relating in any way to the sale, condition or performance of the product or this Limited Warranty.

**Notice of Dispute.** In the event you intend to commence an arbitration proceeding, you must first notify LG in writing at least 30 days in advance of initiating the arbitration by sending a letter to LGECI Legal Team at 20 Norelco Drive, North York, Ontario, Canada M9L 2X6 (the "Notice of Dispute"). You and LG agree to engage in good faith discussions in an attempt to amicably resolve your claim. The notice must provide your name, address, and telephone number; identify the product that is the subject of the claim; and describe the nature of the claim and the relief being sought. If you and LG are unable to resolve the dispute within 30 days of LG's receipt of the Notice of Dispute, the dispute shall be resolved by binding arbitration in accordance with the procedure set out herein. You and LG both agree that, during the arbitration proceeding, the terms (including any amount) of any settlement offer made by either you or LG will not be disclosed to the arbitrator until the arbitrator determines the dispute.

**Agreement to Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver.** Upon failure to resolve the dispute during the 30 day period after LG's receipt of the Notice of Dispute, you and LG agree to resolve any claims between you and LG only by binding arbitration on an individual basis, unless you opt out as provided below, or you reside in a jurisdiction that prevents full application of this clause in the circumstances of the claims at issue (in which case if you are a consumer, this clause will only apply if you expressly agree to the arbitration). To the extent permitted by applicable law, any dispute between you and LG shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's product or claim. More specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, except to the extent such a prohibition is not permitted at law, any dispute between you and LG shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class or representative action. Instead of arbitration, either party may bring an individual action in small claims court, but that small claims court action may not be brought on a class or representative basis except to the extent this prohibition is not permitted at law in your province or territory of jurisdiction as it relates to the claims at issue between you and LG. This does not apply to consumers in Ontario. In accordance with provincial legislation, the consumer and LG may agree to resolve the dispute using any procedure available, including commencing the action in the Superior Court of Justice.

**Arbitration Rules and Procedures.** To begin arbitration of a claim, either you or LG must make a written demand for arbitration. The arbitration will be private and confidential, and conducted on a simplified and expedited basis before a single arbitrator chosen by the parties under the provincial or territorial commercial arbitration law and rules of the province or territory of your residence. You must also send a copy of your written demand to LG at LG Electronics, Canada, Inc., Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration, 20 Norelco Drive, North York, Ontario M9L 2X6. This arbitration provision is governed by your applicable provincial or territorial commercial arbitration legislation. For consumers in Ontario, the applicable arbitration legislation only applies if consumers agree to submit the dispute to arbitration. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. All issues are for the arbitrator to decide, except that, issues relating to the scope and enforceability of the arbitration provision and to the arbitrability of the dispute are for the court to decide. The arbitrator is bound by the terms of this provision.

**Governing Law.** The law of the province or territory of your purchase shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between you and LG except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal or provincial/territorial law. Should arbitration not be permitted for any claim, action, dispute or controversy between you and LG, you and LG attorn to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the province or territory of your purchase for the resolution of the claim, action, dispute or controversy between you and LG.

**Fees/Costs.** You do not need to pay any fee to begin an arbitration. Upon receipt of your written demand for arbitration, LG will promptly pay all arbitration filing fees unless you seek more than \$25,000 in damages, in which case the payment of these fees will be governed by the applicable arbitration rules. Except as otherwise provided for herein, LG will pay all filing, administration and arbitrator fees for any arbitration initiated in accordance with the applicable arbitration rules and this arbitration provision. If you prevail in the arbitration, LG will pay your attorneys' fees and expenses as long as they are reasonable, by considering factors including, but not limited to, the purchase amount and claim amount. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable law allows for an award of reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, an arbitrator can award them to the same extent that a court would. If the arbitrator finds either the substance of your claim or the relief sought in the demand is frivolous or brought for an improper purpose (as measured by the applicable laws), then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the applicable laws) then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the applicable laws) then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the applicable laws) then the payment of pay under the applicable arbitration rules. Except as otherwise provided for, LG waives any rights it may have to seek attorneys' fees and expenses from you if LG prevails in the arbitration.

**Hearings and Location.** If your claim is for \$25,000 or less, you may choose to have the arbitration conducted solely (1) on the basis of documents submitted to the arbitrator, (2) through a telephonic hearing, or (3) by an in-person hearing as established by the applicable arbitration rules. If your claim exceeds \$25,000, the right to a hearing will be determined by the applicable arbitration rules. Any inperson arbitration hearings will be held at the nearest, most mutually-convenient arbitration location available within the province or territory in which you reside unless you and LG both agree to another location or agree to a telephonic arbitration.

**Severability and Waiver.** If any portion of this Limited Warranty (including these arbitration procedures) is unenforceable, the remaining provisions will continue in full force and effect to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law. Should LG fail to enforce strict performance of any provision of this Limited Warranty (including these arbitration procedures), it does not mean that LG intends to waive or has waived any provision or part of this Limited Warranty.

**Opt Out.** The arbitration provision requires you and LG to resolve disputes by binding arbitration instead of court, unless the laws of your province or territory do not permit that, or, in other jurisdictions, if you choose to opt out. The arbitration provision does not apply to consumers in Ontario.

For individuals that fall within the binding arbitration provisions, you may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. If you opt out, neither you nor LG can require the other to participate in an arbitration proceeding. To opt out, you must send notice to LG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the product by either (i) sending an e-mail to <u>optout@lge.com</u>, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out;" or (ii) calling <u>1-800-980-2973</u>. You must include in the opt out e-mail or provide by telephone: (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the product was purchased; (c) the product model name or model number; and (d) the serial number (the serial number can be found (i) on the product; or (ii) online by accessing <u>https://www.lg.com/ca\_en/findmodel\_serial/</u>).

In the event that you "Opt Out", the law of the province or territory of your residence shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between you and LG except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal or provincial/territorial law. Should arbitration not be permitted for any claim, action, dispute or controversy between you and LG, you and LG agree to attorn to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the province or territory of your residence for the resolution of the claim, action, dispute or controversy between you and LG.

You may only opt out of the dispute resolution procedure in the manner described above (that is, by e-mail or telephone); no other form of notice will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the full benefits of the Limited Warranty. If you keep this product and do not opt out, then you accept all terms and conditions of the arbitration provision described above.

**Conflict of Terms.** In the event of a conflict or inconsistency between the terms of this Limited Warranty and the End User License Agreement ("EULA") in regards to dispute resolution, the terms of this Limited Warranty shall control and govern the rights and obligations of the parties and shall take precedence over the EULA.

Memo 67



LG Customer Information Center	Centro de Información al Cliente LG	Centre de Service à la Clientèle de LG
For inquiries or comments, visit <b>www.lg.com</b> or call: 1-800-243-0000 U.S.A. 1-888-542-2623 CANADA	Para consultas o comentarios, visite www.lg.com o llame por teléfono: 1-800-243-0000 EE.UU. 1-888-542-2623 CANADÁ	Pour des questions ou des commentaires, visitez www.lg.com/ca_fr ou appelez : 1-800-243-0000 ÉTATS-UNIS 1-888-542-2623 CANADA
Register your product Online!	¡Registre su producto en línea!	Enregistrez votre produit en ligne!
www.lg.com	www.lg.com	www.lg.com/ca_fr

Scan to see the online manual.





# OWNER'S MANUAL

Read this owner's manual thoroughly before operating the appliance and keep it handy for reference at all times.

ENGLISH

WKE100H\*A / WKG101H\*A



MFL71996109 Rev.01\_061224 www.lg.com

Copyright  $\ensuremath{\mathbb{C}}$  2024 LG Electronics Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## 3 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- 3 READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE
- 4 WARNING STATEMENTS
- 8 CAUTION STATEMENTS

## 9 PRODUCT OVERVIEW

9 Product Features

## **11 INSTALLATION**

- 11 Before Installing
- 13 Choosing the Proper Location
- 15 Unpacking and Removing Shipping Material
- 16 Connecting Electric Dryers
- 19 Installing the Dryer Side Vent Kit
- 20 Venting the Dryer
- 22 Connecting Gas Dryers
- 23 Connecting the Water Inlet Hoses
- 24 Connecting the Drain Hose
- 26 Leveling the Appliance
- 27 Final Installation Check

## **31 OPERATION-WASHER**

- 31 Using the Washer
- 34 Adding Cleaning Products
- 37 Control Panel
- 40 Wash Cycles
- 43 Cycle Modifiers
- 43 Options and Extra Functions

## **45 OPERATION-DRYER**

- 45 Using the Dryer
- 47 Control Panel
- 49 Dry Cycles
- 51 Cycle Modifiers
- 51 Options and Extra Functions

## **53 SMART FUNCTIONS**

- 53 Using LG ThinQ Application
- 55 Smart DiagnosisTM Function

## **57 MAINTENANCE**

- 57 Washer
- 63 Dryer

## **65 APPENDIX**

65 Disassembly

## **67 TROUBLESHOOTING**

- 67 Washer
- 74 Dryer
- 78 Common

## **79 LIMITED WARRANTY**

79 USA

## **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

## **READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS BEFORE USE**

Safety for a Dryer



## WARNING

Fire Hazard

Failure to follow safety warnings exactly could result in serious injury, death or property damage.

Do not install a booster fan in the exhaust duct.

Install all clothes dryers in accordance with the installation instructions of the manufacturer of the dryer.

# WARNING:

## FIRE OR EXPLOSION HAZARD

Failure to follow safety warnings exactly could result in serious injury, death or property damage.

- Do not store or use gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this or any other appliance.
- $\cdot$  WHAT TO DO IF YOU SMELL GAS
  - Do not try to light any appliance.
  - Do not touch any electrical switch; do not use any phone in your building.
  - Clear the room, building or area of all occupants.
  - Immediately call your gas supplier from a neighbor's phone. Follow the gas supplier's instructions.
  - If you cannot reach your gas supplier, call the fire department.
- Installation and service must be performed by a qualified installer, service agency or your gas supplier.

# WARNING - Risk of Fire

Install the clothes dryer according to the manufacturer's instructions and local codes.

- · Clothes dryer installation must be performed by a qualified installer.
- Do not install a clothes dryer with flexible plastic venting materials. If flexible metal (foil type) duct is installed, it must be of a specific type identified by the appliance manufacturer as suitable for use with clothes dryers. Flexible venting materials are known to collapse, be easily crushed, and trap lint. These conditions will obstruct clothes dryer airflow and increase the risk of fire.
- $\cdot\,$  To reduce the risk of severe injury or death, follow all installation instructions.

## Safety Messages

#### Your safety and the safety of others are very important.

We have provided many important safety messages in this manual and on your appliance. Always read and follow all safety messages.



This is the safety alert symbol.

This symbol alerts you to potential hazards that can kill or injure you and others. All safety messages will follow the safety alert symbol and either the word WARNING or CAUTION.

These words mean:



## WARNING

You may be killed or seriously injured if you do not follow instructions.



## CAUTION

You may be injured or cause damage to the product if you do not follow instructions.

All safety messages will tell you what the potential hazard is, tell you how to reduce the chance of injury, and tell you what may happen if the instructions are not followed.

## WARNING STATEMENTS

## **WARNING**

• To reduce the risk of explosion, fire, death, electric shock, scalding or injury to persons when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

## Installation

- Adhere to all industry recommended safety procedures including the use of long-sleeved gloves and safety glasses.
- Never attempt to operate this appliance if it is damaged, malfunctioning, partially disassembled, or has missing or broken parts, including a damaged cord or plug.
- Before use, the appliance must be properly installed as described in this manual.

- To reduce the risk of severe injury or death, follow all installation instructions.
- Refer to the INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS for detailed grounding procedures. Installation instructions are packed with the appliance for the installer's reference. If the appliance is moved to a new location, have it checked and reinstalled by qualified service personnel.
- When moving or installing the product in a different location, call two or more qualified service personnel for installation and service.
- Do not install the appliance in humid spaces.
- Store and install the appliance where it will not be exposed to temperatures below freezing or exposed to outdoor weather conditions.
- This appliance is not designed for maritime use or for mobile installations such as in RVs, trailers, or aircraft.
- Keep packing materials out of the reach of children. Packaging material can be dangerous for children. There is a risk of suffocation.
- Destroy the carton, plastic bag, and other packing materials after the appliance is unpacked. Children might use them for play. Cartons covered with rugs, bedspreads, or plastic sheets can become airtight chambers.
- The appliance must be installed and electrically grounded by qualified service personnel in accordance with local codes.
- When installing or moving the appliance, be careful not to pinch, crush, or damage the power cord.
- Connect to a properly rated, protected, and sized power circuit to avoid electrical overload.
- This appliance must be positioned near to an electrical power supply.
- Disconnect the power cord, house fuse or circuit breaker before installing or servicing the appliance.
- The power cord of this appliance is equipped with a 3-prong (grounding) plug which mates with a standard 3-prong (grounding) wall outlet to minimize the possibility of electric shock from this appliance.
- Do not, under any circumstances, cut or remove the third (ground) prong from the power cord.
- Use new hoses when connecting the appliance to the water supply. Do not reuse old hoses.
- Do not install the appliance with flexible plastic venting materials. If flexible metal (foil type) duct is installed, it must be of a specific type identified by the appliance manufacturer as suitable for use with the dryer section of the appliance. Flexible venting materials are known to collapse, be easily crushed, and trap lint. These conditions will obstruct the dryer section's airflow and increase the risk of fire.
- Local ordinances may prohibit installation in a garage. Contact a local building inspector.
- Do not use sheet metal screws or other fasteners which extend into the duct that could catch lint and reduce the efficiency of the exhaust system. Secure all joints with duct tape.
- Use only rigid, semi-rigid or flexible metal 4-inch diameter duct inside the appliance cabinet or for exhausting to the outside. Use of plastic or other combustible ductwork may cause a fire. Punctured ductwork may cause a fire if it collapses or becomes otherwise restricted in use or during installation.
- All nonrigid metal transition duct must be UL-listed. Use of other materials for transition duct could affect drying time.
- Ductwork is not provided with the appliance, and you should obtain the necessary ductwork locally. The end cap should have hinged dampers to prevent backdraft when the dryer is not in use.
- Gas dryers MUST be exhausted to the outside.
- The dryer exhaust system must be exhausted to the outside of the dwelling. If the dryer is not exhausted outdoors, some fine lint and large amounts of moisture will be expelled into the laundry area. An accumulation of lint in any area of the home may create a health and fire hazard.
- Do not install near another heat source such as a stove, oven or heater.
- Keep the area around the exhaust opening and adjacent surrounding areas free from the accumulation of lint, dust, and dirt.
- The appliance must not be supplied through an external switching device, such as a timer, or connected to a circuit that is regularly switched on and off by a utility.
- Do not install a booster fan in the exhaust duct.

#### 6 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- This is a single appliance and a single unit for sale, delivery and installation.
- Do not disassemble this appliance for use, as it can't be installed in a side-by-side configuration.

## **Grounding Instructions**

- Improper connection of the equipment-grounding conductor can result in a risk of electric shock. Check with a qualified electrician or service personnel if you are in doubt whether the appliance is properly grounded. Do not modify the plug provided with the appliance; if it will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.
- The appliance must be grounded. In the event of a malfunction or breakdown, grounding will reduce the risk of electric shock by providing a path of least resistance for electric current. The appliance is equipped with a cord having an equipment-grounding conductor and a grounding plug. The plug must be plugged into an appropriate outlet that is installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances.
- The appliance must be plugged into a properly grounded outlet. Electrical shock may result if the appliance is not properly grounded. Have the wall outlet and circuit checked by a qualified electrician to make sure the outlet is properly grounded. Failure to follow these instructions may create an electric shock hazard and/or a fire hazard.

## Operation

- Read all instructions before using the appliance and save these instructions.
- Use this appliance only for its intended purpose.
- If the product has been submerged in water, sitting in standing water, or waterlogged, do not come in contact with the product and immediately contact an LG Electronics Customer Information Center for instructions before resuming use.
- If you detect a strange sound, a chemical or burning smell, or smoke coming from the appliance, unplug it immediately, and contact an LG Electronics Customer Information Center.
- Under certain conditions, hydrogen gas may be produced in a hot-water system that has not been used for two weeks or more. HYDROGEN GAS IS EXPLOSIVE. If the hot-water system has not been used for such a period, before using the appliance, turn on all hot water faucets and let the water flow from each for several minutes. This will release any accumulated hydrogen gas. As the gas is flammable, do not smoke or use an open flame during this time.
- Do not reach into the appliance if the tub or drum, agitator, or any interior parts are moving. Before loading, unloading, or adding items, press **Start/Pause** and allow the tub or drum to coast to a complete stop before reaching inside.
- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning the use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.
- Do not allow children or pets to play on, in or with the appliance. Close supervision is necessary when the appliance is used near children or pets.
- Keep laundry products out of children's reach. To prevent injury to persons, observe all warnings on product labels.
- Repair or immediately replace all power cords that have become frayed or otherwise damaged. Do not use a cord that shows cracks or abrasion damage along its length or at either end.
- Never unplug the appliance by pulling on the power cord. Always grip the plug firmly and pull straight out from the outlet.
- Do not use an extension cord or adapter with this appliance.
- Do not grasp the power cord or touch the appliance controls with wet hands.
- Do not modify or extend the power cord.
- If the electrical supply cord is damaged, it must only be replaced by the manufacturer or its service agent or a similar qualified person in order to avoid a hazard.

- Do not put oily or greasy clothing, candles or flammable materials on top of the appliance.
- Keep the area underneath and around your appliances free of combustible materials (lint, paper, rags, etc.), gasoline, chemicals and other flammable vapors and liquids.
- Do not store or use gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this or any other appliance.
- Do not mix chlorine bleach with ammonia or acids such as vinegar. Follow package directions when using laundry products. Incorrect usage can produce poisonous gas, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Never use harsh chemicals, abrasive cleaners, or solvents to clean the appliance. They will damage the finish.
- Do not wash or dry articles that have been previously cleaned in, washed in, soaked in, or spotted with gasoline, dry-cleaning solvents, vegetable or cooking oil, or other flammable or explosive substances, as they give off vapors that could ignite or explode.
- · Do not dry unwashed items in the appliance.
- · Remove all objects from pockets such as lighters and matches.
- Do not add gasoline, dry cleaning solvents, or other flammable or explosive substances to the wash water. These substances give off vapors that could ignite or explode.
- In the event of a gas leak (propane gas, LP gas, etc.), do not operate this or any other appliance. Open a window or door to ventilate the area immediately.
- Do not tamper with controls.
- Fix the drain hose securely in place to avoid flooding.
- Do not abuse, sit on, or stand on the door of the appliance.
- · Always check the inside of the appliance for foreign objects.
- Do not allow water, bleach or other liquids to sit in the drum for extended periods. Doing so can corrode the drum or cause mildew or odors.
- Do not use the appliance to dry articles containing foam rubber or similarly textured rubber-like materials.
- Gas appliances can cause minor exposure to four potentially hazardous substances, namely benzene, carbon monoxide, formaldehyde, and soot, caused primarily by the incomplete combustion of natural gas or LP fuels.
- Properly adjusted appliances will minimize incomplete combustion. Exposure to these substances can be minimized further by properly venting the dryer to the outdoors.
- Do not place items exposed to cooking oils in your appliance. Items contaminated with cooking oils may
  contribute to a chemical reaction that could cause a load to catch fire. To reduce the risk of fire due to
  contaminated loads, the final part of a tumble dryer cycle occurs without heat (cool down period). Avoid
  stopping tumble drying before the end of the drying cycle unless all items are quickly removed and
  spread out so that the heat is dissipated.
- Do not put any part of your body, such as your hands or feet, or metal objects under the appliance.
- Do not let your hand get pinched when opening or closing the appliance door.
- Do not use replacement parts that have not been recommended by the manufacturer (e.g. parts made at home using a 3D printer).

## Maintenance

- Do not repair or replace any part of the appliance. All repairs and servicing must be performed by qualified service personnel unless specifically recommended in this owner's manual. Use only authorized factory parts.
- Disconnect this appliance from the power supply before cleaning and attempting any user maintenance. Turning the controls to the OFF position does not disconnect this appliance from the power supply.
- Remove any dust or foreign matter from the power plug pins.
- Do not disassemble or repair the appliance by yourself.

#### 8 IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- Remove the door(s) before the appliance is removed from service or discarded to avoid the danger of children or small animals getting trapped inside.
- Make sure the dispenser drawer or lid is closed at all times when not being filled with laundry products.
- Clean the lint filter of the dryer before or after each load. After cleaning the filter, ensure it is reinstalled and fully seated before running the next load.
- The interior of the appliance and exhaust duct should be cleaned periodically by qualified service personnel.

## CAUTION STATEMENTS

## **A** CAUTION

• To reduce the risk of minor or moderate injury to persons, malfunction, or damage to the product or property when using this product, follow basic precautions, including the following:

## Installation

- Install the product on a firm and level floor.
- When pushing the dryer into the installed position, do not crush or collapse ductwork.

## Operation

- Turn off the water faucets and unplug the appliance if the appliance is to be left for an extended period of time, such as during vacations.
- ALWAYS follow the fabric care instructions supplied by the garment manufacturer.
- Use fabric softeners or products to eliminate static only as recommended by the manufacturer.
- Do not combine laundry products for use in one load unless specified on the label.
- Do not touch draining water, which may be hot.
- If the drain hose and the water inlet hose are frozen in winter, defrost them before using the appliance.
- Do not store or spill liquid detergents, cleaners, or bleaches (chlorine bleach, oxygen bleach) on the appliance. Doing so may result in corrosion, discoloration or damage to the surface of the appliance.
- Clothing or articles that are waterproof or water resistant must be washed in the Waterproof cycle only. (Examples include water resistant clothing, mattress covers, outdoor clothes, plastic mats.) Using another cycle may result in personal injury or damage to the washer, clothes, walls, floor, and surrounding objects due to abnormal vibration.

## SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS
# **PRODUCT OVERVIEW**

# **Product Features**

The images in this guide may be different from the actual components and accessories, which are subject to change by the manufacturer without prior notice for product improvement purposes.

**Front View** 



- Control Panel
- 2 Lint Filter
- Oryer Drum
- Oryer Door
- Detergent Dispenser Drawer
- 6 Washer Door
- Washer Drum
- 8 Washer Door Magnet
- Orain Hose
- Drain Pump Filter
- Drain Pump Filter Cover
- Leveling Feet

**Rear View** 



### **10** PRODUCT OVERVIEW

## **Product Specifications**

Model	WKE100H*A / WKG101H*A
Electrical Requirements	Please refer to the rating label for detailed information.
Min. / Max. Water Pressure	20 - 120 psi (138 - 827 kPa)
Dimensions (Width X Height X Depth)	27" X 74 3/8" X 30 1/4" (68.6 cm X 189.0 cm X 76.8 cm)
Maximum Depth with Door Open	55" (139.7 cm)
Net Weight	320 lb (145 kg)
Capacity (Washer/Dryer)	4.5 cu.ft. / 7.4 cu.ft.
Max. Spin Speed (Washer)	1300 RPM
Gas Requirements	NG: 4 - 10.5-inch (10.2 - 26.7 cm) WC LP: 8 - 13-inch (20.4 - 33.1 cm) WC
Operating Temperature Range	41-95 ℉ (5-35 ℃)



# **WARNING**

• For your safety and for extended product life, use only authorized components. The manufacturer is not responsible for product malfunction, property damage or bodily injury caused by the use of separately purchased unauthorized components, parts, or non-LG products.

# Accessories

### **Included Accessories**



- Non-skid Pads
- 2 Hole Caps
- 3 Wrench
- 4 Tie Strap
- S Elbow Bracket (for securing drain hose)

# **Required Accessories**



1 Hot and Cold Water Hoses (for Washer)

# INSTALLATION

# **Before Installing**

# **Installation Overview**

Please read the following installation instructions first after purchasing this appliance or transporting it to another location.



- Choosing the Proper Location
- 2 Unpacking and Removing Shipping Material
- 3 Connecting the Electric Dryer
- Onnecting the Gas Dryer
- S Venting the Dryer
- 6 Connecting the Inlet Hoses
- Connecting the Drain Hose
- 8 Leveling the Appliance
- 9 Final Installation Check

# 

- Read all installation instructions completely before installing and operating the appliance. It is important that you review this entire manual before installing and using the appliance. Detailed instructions concerning electrical connections and additional requirements are provided on the following pages.
- Moving or installation of the appliance requires two or more people. Failure to follow these instructions may result in injury.

## 🛕 WARNING

- Store and install the appliance where it will not be exposed to temperatures below freezing or exposed to outdoor weather conditions. Failure to follow this warning can cause product or part failure, serious injury, fire, electric shock, or death.
- Properly ground the appliance to conform with all governing codes and ordinances. Failure to follow this warning can cause serious injury, fire, electric shock, or death.
- To ensure proper airflow, do not block the large opening on the bottom of the appliance with carpeting or other materials.
- Do not remove the ground prong from the power cord. Do not use an adapter or extension cord. Plug into a grounded 3-prong outlet. Failure to follow this warning can cause serious injury, fire, electric shock, or death.
- Certain internal parts are intentionally not grounded and may present a risk of electric shock only during servicing. Service personnel-Do not contact the following parts while the appliance is energized: pump, valve, motor, control board.

#### NOTE

• When moving the product, tilt it toward the back of the product. Do not transport the product in a horizontal position.



# Choosing the Proper Location

Check the following requirements for the install location before installing the appliance.

- Allow for sufficient space between the walls and the appliance for installation.
- Make sure that the floor is clean, dry and free of dust, dirt, water and oil so the leveling feet cannot slide easily. Leveling feet that can move or slide on the floor can contribute to excess vibration and noise.
- If the floor has too much flex, reinforce it to make it more rigid. If the floor is not solid, it may cause severe vibration and noise.
- If a drain pan must be used, take extra care to follow the instructions provided with the drain pan and make sure the leveling feet are adjusted for firm and even contact with the pan. Use of drain pans and failure to properly level the appliance may result in increased vibration and noise during operation.

# Flooring

- To minimize noise and vibration, install the washer on a level, solidly constructed floor capable of supporting the appliance without flexing or bouncing.
- The appliance must be installed on firm flooring to minimize vibration during the spin cycle. Concrete flooring is best, but a wood floor is sufficient, provided it is built to FHA standards.
- The floor under the appliance must not slope more than **1 inch (2.5 cm)** from front to back or side to side.
- Installing on carpeting and soft tile surfaces is not recommended.
- Never install the appliance on a platform or weakly supported structure.

### **Floor Installation**

To ensure sufficient clearance for water inlet hoses, drain hose and airflow, allow minimum clearances of at least **1'' (2.5 cm)** at the sides and **4'' (10 cm)** behind the appliance. Be sure to allow for wall, door, or floor moldings that may increase the required clearances.



Dimensions and Clearances		
А	55" (139.7 cm)	
В	30 1/4'' (76.8 cm)	
С	4'' (10 cm)	
D	1'' (2.5 cm)	
E	27'' (68.6 cm)	
F	74 3/8" (189 cm)	
G	1'' (2.5 cm)	
н	41 3/8" (105 cm)	
Ι	6 1/16" (15.4 cm)	



# Dimensions and Clearances

J	14 1/4'' (36.2 cm)
К	41 3/8" (105 cm)

### Exhaust

• Choose a location that allows for proper exhaust installation. A gas dryer must be exhausted to the outdoors.

## **Power Outlet**

- The power outlet must be within 60 inches (1.5 m) of either side of the appliance.
- Position the appliance so that the outlet and plug are easily accessible.
- Do not overload the outlet with more than one appliance.
- The outlet must be grounded in accordance with current electrical wiring codes and regulations.
- Use a time-delay fuse or circuit breaker.
- It is the personal responsibility and obligation of the appliance owner to have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.

### NOTE

• Check code requirements that limit, or do not permit, installation of the appliance in garages, mobile homes or sleeping quarters. Contact your local building inspector.

# Clearances

The following clearances are recommended for the appliance.

- Additional clearances should be considered for ease of installation and servicing.
- Additional clearances should be considered on all sides of the appliance to reduce noise transfer.

# Installation spacing for Recessed Area or Closet Installation



Description	Dimension/Clearance
A: Upper Ventilation Opening	≥ 48 sq. in. (310 cm <sup>2</sup> )
B: Lower Ventilation Opening	≥ 24 sq. in. (155 cm <sup>2</sup> )
C: Distance to Ventilation Opening	≥ 3″ (7.6 cm)
D: Front Clearance	≥ 4″ (10 cm)

# **Closet Ventilation Requirements**

Closets with doors must have both an upper and lower vent to prevent heat and moisture buildup in the closet. One upper vent opening with a

minimum opening of 48 sq. in.  $(310 \text{ cm}^2)$  must be installed no lower than 6 feet above the floor. One lower vent opening with a minimum opening of 24 sq. in.  $(155 \text{ cm}^2)$  must be installed no more than one foot above the floor. Install vent grills in the door or cut down the door at the top and bottom to form openings. Louvered doors with equivalent ventilation openings are also acceptable.

- There should be at least a little space around the appliance (or any other appliance) to eliminate the transfer of vibration from one appliance to another. If there is enough vibration, it could cause appliances to make noise or come into contact, causing paint damage and further increasing noise.
- No other fuel-burning appliance can be installed in the same closet as an appliance.

# Unpacking and Removing Shipping Material

# Unpacking Shipping Material

\* This feature is only available on some models.

## Lifting the Appliance off the Foam Base

- After removing the carton and shipping material, lift the appliance off the foam base.
- Make sure the plastic drum support **①**\* comes off with the base and is not stuck to the bottom of the appliance.
- If you must lay the appliance down to remove the carton base 2, always protect the side of the appliance and lay it carefully on its side. Do not lay the appliance on its front or back.



# 

• Remove all shipping materials from the appliance for proper operation and inspect it for shipping damage. Failure to remove shipping materials can cause excessive noise and vibration.

# **Removing Shipping Material**

- 1 Remove the bolt assemblies.
  - Starting with the bottom two shipping bolts, use the included wrench s to fully loosen all 4 shipping bolts by turning them counterclockwise.
  - Remove the bolt assemblies (bolts and retainers) by wiggling them slightly while pulling them out.
  - The power cord is secured to the back of the washer with a shipping bolt to help prevent operation with shipping bolts in place.



# ENGLISH

### ΝΟΤΕ

- All 4 bolt assemblies must be completely removed from the unit to avoid product damage.
- Make sure to remove the entire bolt assembly, including:
  - metal bolt and washer
  - rubber damper
  - plastic rod



- **2** Install the hole caps.
  - Locate the hole caps ④ included in the accessory pack or attached to the back of the washer. Install the caps in the holes left by the bolt assemblies.



## **CAUTION**

 Once removed, save the bolt assemblies for future use. To prevent damage to internal components, do not transport the appliance without reinstalling the shipping bolts. Failure to remove shipping bolts and retainers may cause severe vibration and noise, which can lead to permanent damage to the appliance.

# **Connecting Electric Dryers**

## 🛕 WARNING

• To reduce the risk of fire or explosion, electric shock, property damage, injury to persons, or death when using this appliance, fulfill the following requirements.

# Electrical Requirements for Electric Models Only

# MARNING

- The power cord (pigtail) connection between the wall receptacle and the dryer terminal block IS NOT supplied with the dryer. Type of pigtail and gauge of wire must conform to local codes and with instructions on the following pages.
- The wiring and grounding must conform to the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70 and all applicable local regulations. Please contact a qualified electrician to check your home's wiring and fuses to ensure that your home has adequate electrical power to operate the dryer.
- This dryer must be connected to a grounded metal, permanent wiring system, or an equipment-grounding conductor must be run with the circuit conductors and connected to the equipment-grounding terminal or lead on the dryer.
- The dryer has its own terminal block that must be connected to a separate 240 VAC, 60-Hertz, single-phase circuit, fused at 30 amperes. (The circuit must be fused on both sides of the line.)
   ELECTRICAL SERVICE FOR THE DRYER SHOULD BE OF THE MAXIMUM RATE VOLTAGE LISTED ON THE NAMEPLATE. DO NOT CONNECT THE DRYER TO 110-, 115-, OR 120-VOLT CIRCUIT.
- If the branch circuit to dryer is 15 ft. (4.5 m) or less in length, use UL (Underwriters Laboratories) listed No.-10 AWG wire (copper wire only), or as required by local codes. If over 15 ft. (4.5 m), use UL-listed No.-8 AWG wire

(copper wire only), or as required by local codes. Allow sufficient slack in wiring so the dryer can be moved from its normal location when necessary.

- Do not modify the plug and internal wire provided with the dryer.
- The dryer should be connected to a 3-hole or 4-hole outlet.
- If the plug does not fit the outlet, a proper outlet will need to be installed by a qualified electrician.
- Connect the power cord to the terminal block. Each colored wire should be connected to the same color screw. Wire color indicated in the manual is connected to the same color screw in the block.
- Grounding through the neutral conductor is prohibited for (1) new branch-circuit installations, (2) mobile homes, (3) recreational vehicles, and (4) areas where local codes prohibit grounding through the neutral conductors.
- This dryer is supplied with the neutral wire grounded. This white ground wire MUST BE MOVED to the neutral terminal when a 4-wire cord is to be used, or where grounding through the neutral conductor is prohibited.

## Four-Wire Power Cord

• A UL-listed strain relief is required.



- Use a 30-amp, 240-volt, 4-wire, UL-listed power cord with #10 AWG-minimum copper conductor and closed loop or forked terminals with upturned ends.
- **1** Remove the terminal block access cover on the upper back of the appliance.
- **2** Install UL-listed strain relief into the power cord through-hole.
- **3** Thread a 30-amp, 240-volt, 4-wire, UL-listed power cord with #10 AWG-minimum copper conductor through the strain relief.



Terminal Block

- 2 UL-Listed Strain Relief
- 3 UL-Listed 4-Wire Power Cord
- **4** Transfer the appliance's ground wire from behind the green ground screw to the center screw of the terminal block.
- 5 Attach the two hot leads (black and red) of the power cord to the outer terminal block screws.
- **6** Attach the neutral (white) wire to the center screw of the terminal block
- 7 Attach the power cord ground wire to the green ground screw.
- **8** Tighten all screws securely.
- **9** Reinstall the terminal block access cover.



- White Wire moved from Ground Screw
- 2 Hot Leads of Power Cord (Black and Red)
- 3 Neutral Wire (White)
- Power Cord Ground Wire
- **5** Ground Screw (green)

# Four-Wire Direct Wire

- A UL-listed strain relief is required.
- Use UL-listed 4-wire #10 AWG minimum copper conductor cable. Allow at least 5 ft. (1.5 m) of wire to allow for removal and reinstallation of the dryer.
- 1 Remove 5 inches (12.7 cm) of the outer covering from the wire and remove 5 inches of insulation from the ground wire. Cut off approximately 1.5 inches (3.8 cm) from the other three wires and strip 1 inch (2.5 cm) insulation from each wire. Bend the ends of the three shorter wires into a hook shape.



- **2** Remove the terminal block access cover on the upper back of the appliance.
- **3** Install UL-listed strain relief into the power cord through-hole.
- **4** Thread the 4-wire #10 AWG minimum copper power cable prepared in step 1 through the strain relief.



**3** UL-Listed 4-Wire Power Cord

### 18 INSTALLATION

- **5** Transfer the appliance's ground wire from behind the green ground screw to the center of the terminal block.
- 6 Attach the two hot leads (black and red) of the power cord to the outer terminal block screws.
- 7 Attach the neutral (white) wire to the center screw of the terminal block.
- **8** Attach the power cord ground wire to the green ground screw.
- **9** Tighten all screws securely.
- **10** Reinstall the terminal block access cover.



- White Wire moved from Ground Screw
- 2 Hot Leads of Power Cord (Black and Red)
- 3 Neutral Wire (White)
- Power Cord Ground Wire
- **5** Ground Screw (green)

# **Three-Wire Power Cord**

• A 3-wire connection is NOT permitted on new construction after January 1, 1996.



- A UL-listed strain relief is required.
- Use a 30-amp, 240-volt, 3-wire, UL-listed power cord with #10 AWG-minimum copper conductor and closed loop or forked terminals with upturned ends.

- **1** Remove the terminal block access cover on the upper back of the appliance.
- **2** Install the UL-listed strain relief into the power cord through-hole.
- **3** Thread a 30-amp, 240 volt, 3-wire, UL-listed power cord with #10 AWG-minimum copper conductor through the strain relief.



- 1 Terminal Block
- 2 UL-Listed Strain Relief
- **3** UL-Listed 3-Wire Power Cord
- 4 Attach the two hot leads (black and red) of the power cord to the outer terminal block screws.
- **5** Attach the neutral (white) wire to the center terminal block screw.
- 6 Connect the external ground (if required by local codes) to the green ground screw.
- **7** Tighten all screws securely.
- **8** Reinstall the terminal block access cover.



- White Wire from Dryer Harness
- 2 Hot Leads of Power Cord (Black and Red)

- Outral Wire (White)
- External Ground Wire (If required by local codes)
- Ground Screw (green)

# **Three-Wire Direct Wire**

• A 3-wire connection is NOT permitted on new construction after January 1, 1996.



- A UL-listed strain relief is required.
- Use UL-listed 3-wire, #10 AWG minimum copper conductor cable. Allow at least 5 ft. (1.5 m) length to allow for removal and installation of dryer.
- 1 Remove 3.5 inches (8.9 cm) of the outer covering from the wire. Strip 1 inch (2.5 cm) insulation from each wire. Bend the ends of the three wires into a hook shape.



- **2** Remove the terminal block access cover on the upper back of the appliance.
- **3** Install UL-listed strain relief into the power cord through-hole.
- **4** Thread the 3-wire, #10 AWG minimum copper conductor power cable prepared in step 1 through the strain relief.



- Terminal block
- 2 UL-listed strain relief
- 3 UL-listed 3-wire power cord

- **5** Attach the two hot leads (black and red) of the power cord to the outer terminal block screws.
- 6 Attach the neutral (white) wire to the center terminal block screw.
- 7 Connect the external ground (if required by local codes) to the green ground screw.
- **8** Tighten all screws securely.
- **9** Reinstall the terminal block access cover.



- Hot lead (black and red)
- 2 Neutral wire (white)
- External ground wire (if required by local codes)
- Wire from the appliance harness
- Ground screw (green)

# Installing the Dryer Side Vent Kit

The appliance is configured to vent to the rear. It can also vent to the side.

## 🛕 WARNING

- Use long-sleeved gloves and safety glasses.
- Use a heavy metal vent.
- Do not use plastic or thin foil ducts.
- Clean old ducts before installing the appliance.

### NOTE

- An adapter kit, part number 383EEL9001B, may be purchased from your LG retailer. This kit contains duct components necessary to change the appliance vent location.
- Right-side venting is not available on gas models (same side as gas connection).
- Bottom venting is not available on stacked or integrated stacked models.

# Side Venting

Remove the rear exhaust duct retaining screw
 and pull out the exhaust duct 2.



Press the tabs on the knockout and carefully remove the knockout for the desired vent opening. (Right-side venting is not available on gas models.) Press the adapter duct onto the blower housing and secure to the base of the dryer as shown.



3 Preassemble a 4" (10 cm) elbow S to the next 4" (10 cm) duct section, and secure all joints with duct tape. Be sure that the male end of the elbow faces AWAY from the dryer. Insert the elbow/duct assembly through the side opening and press it onto the adapter duct. Secure it in place with duct tape. Be sure that the male end of the duct protrudes 1 1/2" (3.8 cm) to connect the remaining ductwork. Attach the cover plate S to the back of the dryer with the included screw.



# Venting the Dryer

# 🛕 WARNING

- Gas dryers MUST exhaust to the outdoors.
- DO NOT use sheet metal screws or other fasteners which extend into the duct that could catch lint and reduce the efficiency of the exhaust system. Secure all joints with duct tape.
- To reduce the risk of fire, combustion, or accumulation of combustible gases, DO NOT exhaust dryer air into an enclosed and unventilated area, such as an attic, wall, ceiling, crawl space, chimney, gas vent, or concealed space of a building.
- To reduce the risk of fire, DO NOT exhaust the dryer with plastic or thin foil ducting.
- Do not exceed the recommended duct length limitations noted in the chart. Failure to follow these instructions may result in extended drying times, fire or death.
- Do not crush or collapse ductwork.
- Do not allow ductwork to rest on or contact sharp objects.
- If connecting to existing ductwork, make sure it is suitable and clean before installing the dryer.
- Venting must conform to local building codes.
- Use only 4 " (10 cm) rigid, semi-rigid or flexible metal ductwork inside the dryer cabinet and for venting outside.
- The exhaust duct must be 4 " (10 cm) in diameter with no obstructions. The exhaust duct should be kept as short as possible. Make sure to clean any old ducts before installing the new dryer.
- Rigid, semi-rigid or flexible metal ducting is recommended for use between the dryer and the wall. All non-rigid metal transition duct must be UL-listed. Use of other materials for transition duct could affect drying time.
- Ductwork is not provided with the dryer. You should obtain the necessary ductwork locally. The vent hood should have hinged dampers to prevent backdraft when the dryer is not in use.

• The total length of flexible metal duct must not exceed 8 ft. (2.4 m).

Du	ictw	ork
----	------	-----

Wall Cap Type	Number of 90° Elbows	Maximum length of 4-inch diameter rigid metal duct
Recommended	0	65 ft. (19.8 m)
	1	55 ft. (16.8 m)
- a -	2	47 ft. (14.3 m)
	3	36 ft. (11.0 m)
a: 4 " (10 cm)	4	28 ft. (8.5 m)
Use for only short run installations	0	55 ft. (16.8 m)
	1	47 ft. (14.3 m)
b: 2 1/2 ″ (6.4 cm)	2	41 ft. (12.5 m)
5.2 h2 (0.4 cm)	3	30 ft. (9.1 m)
	4	22 ft. (6.7 m)

### NOTE

- Deduct 6 ft. (1.8 m) for each additional elbow. Do not use more than four 90° elbows.
- In Canada, only those foil-type flexible ducts, if any, specifically identified for use with the appliance by the manufacturer should be used. In the United States, only those foil-type flexible ducts, if any, specifically identified for use with the appliance by the manufacturer and that comply with the Outline for Clothes Dryer Transition Duct, Subject 2158A, should be used.

# **Routing and Connecting Ductwork**

Follow the guidelines below to maximize drying performance and reduce lint buildup and condensation in the ductwork. Ductwork and fittings are NOT included and must be purchased separately.

- Use 4" (10 cm) diameter rigid, semi-rigid or flexible metal ductwork.
- The exhaust duct run should be as short as possible.
- Use as few elbow joints as possible.
- The male end of each section of exhaust duct must point away from the dryer.
- Use duct tape on all duct joints.
- Insulate ductwork that runs through unheated areas in order to reduce condensation and lint buildup on duct surfaces.
- Incorrect or inadequate exhaust systems are not covered by the dryer warranty. Dryer failures or

service required because of such exhaust systems will not be covered by the dryer warranty.



# **Connecting Gas Dryers**

# 🛕 WARNING

• To reduce the risk of fire or explosion, electric shock, property damage, injury to persons, or death when using this appliance, follow requirements including the following:

# Electrical Requirements for Gas Models

# MARNING

- This dryer is equipped with a three-prong grounding plug for protection against shock hazard which should be plugged directly into a properly grounded three-prong receptacle. Do not cut or remove the grounding prong from this plug.
- Do not, under any circumstances, cut or remove the third (ground) prong from the power cord.
- For personal safety, this dryer must be properly grounded.
- This dryer must be plugged into a 120-VAC, 60-Hz. grounded outlet protected by a 15-ampere fuse or circuit breaker.
- Where a standard 2-prong wall outlet is encountered, it is your personal responsibility and obligation to have it replaced with a properly grounded 3-prong wall outlet.

# Gas Supply Requirements

# 🛕 WARNING

- DO NOT attempt any disassembly of the dryer; disassembly requires the attention and tools of an authorized and qualified service technician or company.
- DO NOT use an open flame to inspect for gas leaks. Use a noncorrosive leak detection fluid.
- Gas pressure must not exceed 8-inch (20.4 cm) water column for NG, or 13-inch (33.1 cm) water column for LP.
- Isolate the dryer from the gas supply system by closing its individual manual shutoff valve during any pressure testing of the gas supply at pressures greater than 1/2 psi (3.5 kPa).
- Supply line requirements: Your laundry room must have a rigid gas supply line to your dryer. In the United States, an individual manual shutoff valve MUST be installed within at least 6

ft. (1.8 m) of the dryer, in accordance with the National Fuel Gas Code ANSI Z223.1 or Canadian gas installation code CSA B149.1. A 1/8-inch NPT pipe plug must be installed.

- If using a rigid pipe, the rigid pipe should be 0.5inch IPS. If acceptable under local codes and ordinances and when acceptable to your gas supplier, 3/8-inch approved tubing may be used where lengths are less than 20 ft. (6.1 m). Larger tubing should be used for lengths in excess of 20 ft. (6.1 m).
- To prevent contamination of the gas valve, purge the gas supply of air and sediment before connecting the gas supply to the dryer. Before tightening the connection between the gas supply and the dryer, purge remaining air until the odor of gas is detected.
- Use only a new AGA- or CSA-certified gas supply line (in compliance with the Standard for Connectors for Gas Appliances, ANSI Z21.24 • CSA 6.10) with flexible stainless steel connectors.
- Use Teflon tape or a pipe-joint compound that is insoluble in propane (LP) gas on all pipe threads.

# Connecting the Gas Supply

- In the Commonwealth of Massachusetts: This product must be installed by a licensed plumber or gas fitter. When using ball-type gas shut off valves, they must be T-handle-type. A flexible gas connector, when used, must not exceed 3 feet.
- Installation and service must be performed by a qualified installer, service agency, or the gas supplier.
- The dryer is configured for natural gas when shipped from the factory. Make sure that the dryer is equipped with the correct burner nozzle for the type of gas being used (natural gas or propane gas).
- Use only a new stainless steel flexible connector and a new AGA-certified connector.
- A gas shutoff valve must be installed within 6 ft. (1.8 m) of the dryer.
- If necessary, the correct nozzle (for the LP nozzle kit, order part number **383EEL3002D**) should be installed by a qualified technician and the change should be noted on the dryer.
- All connections must be in accordance with local codes and regulations. Gas dryers MUST exhaust to the outdoors.

- **1** Make sure that the gas supply to the laundry room is turned OFF and the dryer is unplugged. Confirm that the type of gas available in your laundry room is appropriate for the dryer.
- 2 Remove the shipping cap from the gas fitting at the back of the dryer. Be careful not to damage the threads of the gas connector when removing the shipping cap.
- **3** Connect the dryer to your laundry room's gas supply using a new flexible stainless steel connector with a 3/8-inch NPT fitting.

## 🛕 WARNING

- DO NOT use old connectors.
- **4** Securely tighten all connections between the dryer and your laundry room's gas supply.
- **5** Turn on your laundry room's gas supply.
- **6** Check all pipe connections (both internal and external) for gas leaks with a noncorrosive leak-detection fluid.
- **7** Proceed to Venting the Dryer.



- 1 3/8" NPT Gas Connection
- AGA/CSA-Certified Stainless Steel Flexible Connector
- 3 1/8" NPT Pipe Plug
- Gas Supply Shutoff Valve

## **High-Altitude Installations**

The BTU rating of this dryer is AGA-certified for elevations below 10,000 feet.

If your gas dryer is being installed at an elevation above 10,000 feet, it must be derated by a qualified technician or gas supplier.

# Connecting the Water Inlet Hoses

## How to Connect the Water Inlet Hoses

To avoid the risk of costly water damage, purchase and install new water inlet hoses when installing the appliance.

# 🛕 WARNING

- Do not overtighten the hoses or cross-thread the hose fittings. Overtightening or cross-threading can damage the valves or couplings, resulting in leaking and property damage.
- Do not reuse old hoses. Use only new hoses when installing the appliance. Old hoses could leak or burst causing flooding and property damage. Contact an LG Customer Information Center for assistance in buying hoses.

- Periodically check the hoses for cracks, leaks, and wear, and replace the hoses every five years.
- Do not stretch the water hoses intentionally, and make sure that they are not pinched, crushed or kinked by other objects.
- Water supply pressure must be between 20 psi and 120 psi (138 - 827 kPa). If the water supply pressure is more than 120 psi, a pressure reducing valve must be installed.
- Your hot water heater should be set to deliver water at 120–135 °F (48–57 °C) to allow the appliance to properly control wash temperatures.
- Do not store or install the appliance in a location subject to freezing temperatures. Damage to the water inlet hoses and internal mechanisms of the appliance can result. If the appliance was exposed to freezing temperatures prior to installation, allow it to stand at room temperature for several hours before use and check for leaks prior to operation.
- Do not use flood-preventing hoses with auto shut off devices. The devices can be tripped during fill and prevent the appliance from filling properly.

### NOTE

- In areas with hard water, mineral scale can form on internal components of the dryer. Use of a water softener is recommended in areas with hard water. Excessive scale buildup may lead to the need for certain part replacement or repair.
- If your water supply contains a lot of debris, a whole home water filter may help to remove the debris from the water before it reaches the washer inlets.
- Check the fittings and seals. Inspect the threaded fitting on each hose and make sure there is a rubber seal 

   in place in both ends of each hose to prevent leaking.



- **2** Connect the water supply hoses.
  - Connect the water inlet hoses to the hot and cold water faucets tightly by hand and then tighten another 2/3 turn with pliers.
  - Connect the blue hose to the cold water faucet and the red hose to the hot water faucet.



- **3** Flush out the inlet hoses.
  - After the hoses are connected, turn on the water faucets and flush out any foreign substances such as dirt, sand, or sawdust.
  - Let the water drain into a bucket, and check the water temperature to make sure you've connected the hoses to the correct faucets.



- **4** Attach the inlet hoses to the back of the washer.
  - Attach the hot water inlet hose to the hot water inlet on the back of the washer. Attach the cold water inlet hose to the cold water inlet on the back of the washer.
  - Tighten the fittings securely. Turn on both faucets all the way and check for leaks at both ends of the hoses.



# **Connecting the Drain Hose**

Connect the drain hose to either a standpipe or laundry tub.

# 🛕 WARNING

• The drain hose should always be properly secured. Failure to properly secure the drain hose can result in flooding and property damage.

- The drain must be installed in accordance with any applicable local codes and regulations.
- Make sure that the drain hose is not stretched, pinched, crushed, or kinked.
- The end of the drain hose should be located a minimum of 24" (61 cm) and a maximum of 96" (244 cm) above the bottom of the washer. For best results, locate the end of the drain hose no higher than 66" (168 cm) above the bottom of the washer. As the drain outlet is raised beyond 66" (168 cm), the drain function will be increasingly affected.
- If you are experiencing backflow or residual water in the dryer reservoir, try reducing the height of the dryer drain hose end to lower than 38" above the base of the washer.
- Never create an airtight seal between the hose and the drain with tape or other means. If no air gap is present, water can be siphoned out of the drum resulting in poor wash/rinse performance or clothing damage.

# Using a Standpipe to Drain

- 1 Clip the end of the hose into the elbow bracket.
  - Connect the elbow bracket 
     within 4
     inches (10 cm) of the end of the drain hose.
     If the drain hose is extended more than 4
     inches (10 cm) beyond the end of the elbow
     bracket, mold or microorganisms could
     spread to the inside of the washer.



**2** Insert the end of the drain hose into the standpipe.



**3** Use the provided tie strap **2** to secure the drain hose in place.



4 If the water valves and drain are built into the wall, fasten the drain hose to one of the water hoses with the provided tie strap ③ (ribbed side on inside).



# Using the Laundry Tub to Drain

- 1 Clip the end of the hose into the elbow bracket.
  - Connect the elbow bracket 
     within 4
     inches (10 cm) of the end of the drain hose.
     If the drain hose is extended more than 4
     inches (10 cm) beyond the end of the elbow
     bracket, mold or microorganisms could
     spread to the inside of the washer.



**2** Hang the end of the drain hose over the side of the laundry tub.



**3** Use the provided tie strap to secure the drain hose in place.



# **Leveling the Appliance**

The drum of the washer spins at very high speeds. To minimize vibration, noise, and unwanted movement, the floor must be a solid, level surface.

# 

- Using the appliance without leveling it may cause excess vibration and noise, leading to an appliance malfunction.
- Adjust the leveling feet only as far as necessary to level the appliance. Extending the leveling feet more than necessary can cause the appliance to vibrate.

### NOTE

• Before installing the appliance, make sure that the floor is clean, dry and free of dust, dirt, water and oil so the appliance feet cannot slide easily. Feet that move or slide on the floor can contribute to excessive vibration and noise.

# How to Level the Appliance

- **1** Position the appliance in its final location.



- **2** Adjust the leveling feet.
  - Turn all 4 leveling feet in one direction to raise the appliance or the other direction to lower it.



- **3** Check the level again.
  - Push or rock the top edges of the appliance gently to make sure the appliance does not rock. If the appliance rocks, readjust the leveling feet.
- 4 Tighten the locknuts 2.
  - Turn the locknuts counterclockwise and tighten them when the appliance is level.



# 🛕 WARNING

• Do not raise the front of the appliance with a wood block or similar object. Doing so can cause serious injury or death.

# Using Non-Skid Pads

If you install the appliance on a slippery surface, it may move because of excessive vibration. Incorrect leveling may cause malfunction through noise and vibration. If this occurs, install the nonskid pads under the leveling feet and adjust the level.

- 1 Clean the floor to attach the non-skid pads.
  - Use a dry rag to remove and clean foreign objects or moisture. If moisture remains, the non-skid pads may slip.
- **2** Adjust the level after placing the appliance in the installation area.

- **3** Place the adhesive side **3** of the non-skid pad on the floor.
  - It is most effective to install the non-skid pads under the front leveling feet. If it is hard to place the pads under the front leveling feet, place them under the back leveling feet.



- **4** Recheck the appliance's levelness.
  - Push or rock the top edges of the appliance gently to make sure the appliance does not rock. If the appliance rocks, level the appliance again.

# **Final Installation Check**

# Connecting the Washer to the Power Supply

Plug the washer into a **120 VAC, 60 Hz** grounded 3-prong outlet.

# MARNING

- Do not use a worn or damaged power cord or power plug. Replace or repair it immediately. Failure to do so may result in death, fire, electric shock, or malfunction.
- Do not modify the power cord and plug provided with the appliance. Do not damage it when installing or moving the appliance. Doing so may result in death, fire, electric shock, or malfunction.
- Make sure that the appliance is grounded.
- Connect this appliance to a grounded outlet conforming to the rating prior to use. Failure to do so may result in fire, electric shock, or malfunction.
- Do not damage or cut off the ground prong of the power cord. Doing so may cause death, fire, electric shock, or product malfunction.
- Improper connection of the equipment grounding conductor can result in risk of electric shock. Check with a qualified electrician or service technician if you are in doubt as to

whether the appliance is properly grounded. If the plug does not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.

- The appliance and outlet must be positioned so that the plug is easily accessible.
- Do not use an adapter or extension cord. Doing so may result in serious injury, fire, electric shock, or death.
- For best performance, plug the appliance into its own individual outlet. This helps prevent overloading house wiring circuits which could cause a fire hazard from overheated wires.
- If necessary, use a new, UL-listed 3-prong (grounding) plug rated at no less than the branch circuit. Do not use an extension cord longer than 3 feet. Failure to follow these warnings may result in serious injury, fire, electric shock, or death.

# **Testing the Washer**

Check if the washer is properly installed and run a test cycle.

- **1** Load the washer with 6 thick bath towels (approximately 6 pounds).
- 2 Press the **Power** button.
- **3** Press the **Speed Wash** button.
- **4** Select the **Start/Pause** button to start the wash cycle.
- **5** Make sure that water is supplied, that the washer does not rock or vibrate excessively, and that it drains well during the spin cycle.

- If water leaks during water supply, see **Connecting the Water Inlet Hoses** to connect them properly.
- If the appliance rocks and vibrates excessively, see **Leveling the Appliance** to level it again.
- If the drain does not work, see **Connecting the Drain Hose** to install the hose properly.

### NOTE

 Before the first wash, select the Normal cycle and add a half amount of detergent. Start the appliance without clothes. This will remove possible residue and water from the drum that may have been left during manufacturing.

# **Testing the Dryer**

Once you have completed the installation of the appliance, use this test to make sure the condition of the exhaust system is adequate for proper operation of the appliance. This test should be performed to alert you to any serious problems in the exhaust system of your home.

 Your appliance features Flow Sense(), an innovative sensing system that automatically detects blockages and restrictions in dryer ductwork. Keeping ductwork clean of lint buildup and free of restrictions allows clothes to dry faster and reduces energy use.

## **Testing Dryer Heating**

#### **Gas Models**

Close the dryer door and press the **Power** button to turn the dryer on. Press the **Time Dry** and **Start/Pause** buttons to start the test. When the dryer starts, the igniter should ignite the main burner.

#### NOTE

• If all air is not purged from the gas line, the gas igniter may turn off before the main burner ignites. If this happens, the igniter will reattempt gas ignition after approximately two minutes.

### **Electric Models**

Close the dryer door and press the **Power** button to turn the dryer on. Press the **Time Dry** and **Start/Pause** buttons to start the test. The exhaust air should be warm after the dryer has been operating for 3 minutes.

## **Checking Airflow**

Effective dryer operation requires proper airflow. The adequacy of the airflow can be measured by evaluating the static pressure. Static pressure in the exhaust duct can be measured with a manometer, placed on the exhaust duct approximately 2 ft. (60.9 cm) from the dryer. Static pressure in the exhaust duct should not exceed 0.6 inch (1.5 cm). The dryer should be checked while the dryer is running with no load.

### **Activating the Installation Test**

- **1** Do not load anything in the drum for this test, as it may affect the accuracy of the results.
- 2 Press the **Power** button and then press and hold the **Wrinkle Care** and **Less Time** buttons.
  - This button sequence activates the installation test. The code In5 will display if the activation is successful.
- **3** Press the **Start/Pause** button.
  - The appliance will start the test, which will last a few minutes. The heat will be turned on and the temperatures in the drum will be measured.
- 4 Check the display for results.
  - During the test cycle, monitor the Flow Sense()) display on the control panel. If the Flow Sense()) indicator has not turned on when the cycle ends, the exhaust system is adequate. If the exhaust system is severely restricted, the Flow Sense()) indicator will turn on. Other problems may also be shown with error codes. See the chart on the next page for error code details and solutions.
  - If the Flow Sense() display indicates that the exhaust system is severely restricted, have the system checked immediately, as performance will be poor.
- **5** End of cycle.
  - At the end of the test cycle, End will display. The test cycle will end and the appliance will shut off automatically after a short delay.

## **Check the Duct Condition**

If the **Flow Sense**(**(**) indicator is turned on, check the exhaust system for restrictions and damage. Repair or replace the exhaust system as needed.

### NOTE

• When the appliance is first installed, this test should be performed to alert you to any existing

problems with the exhaust duct in your home. However, since the test performed during normal operation provides more accurate information on the condition of the exhaust duct than the installation test, the number of bars displayed during the two tests may not be the same.

- Do not interrupt the test cycle, as this could result in inaccurate results.
- Even if no bars are displayed during the test cycle, some restrictions may still be present in the exhaust system. Refer to the **Venting the Dryer** section of this manual for complete exhaust system and venting requirements.

# **Error Codes**

Check the error code before you call for service.

Error Code	Possible Cause & Solution	
EE I or	Temperature sensor failure.	
FE5	<ul> <li>Turn off the appliance and call for service.</li> </ul>	
HS	Humidity sensor failure.	
	<ul> <li>Turn off the appliance and call for service.</li> </ul>	
P5, PF, or ∩P	Electric dryer power cord is not connected correctly, or house power supply is incorrect.	
	<ul> <li>Reset circuit breaker or replace fuse. Do not increase the fuse capacity.</li> </ul>	
	House fuse is blown, circuit breaker has tripped, or power outage has occurred.	
	<ul> <li>If the problem is a circuit overload, have it corrected by a qualified electrician.</li> </ul>	
985	Gas supply or service turned off. (Gas Model only.)	
	<ul> <li>Confirm that house gas shutoff and the dryer gas shutoff are both fully open.</li> </ul>	

# **Restricted or Blocked Airflow**

Avoid long runs or runs with multiple elbows or bends.

# Excess or crushed transition duct



### Too many elbows or exhaust too long



# Check for blockages and lint buildup.



# Make sure the ductwork is not crushed or restricted.



# **OPERATION-WASHER**

# **Using the Washer**

## 🛕 WARNING

• To reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons, read the SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS before operating this appliance.

# **Operation Overview**

- **1** Sort laundry and load the washer.
  - Sort laundry by fabric type, soil level, color and load size as needed. Open the door and load items into the washer.
  - If using single-use detergent packs, or gel or tablet detergents, place them in the drum before loading the laundry.
- **2** Add cleaning products.
  - Add the proper amount of HE (High-Efficiency) detergent to the detergent dispenser.
  - If desired, add bleach or fabric softener to the appropriate areas of the dispenser drawer.
  - Do not place liquid or powdered detergent packs, or gel or tablet detergents in the dispenser.
- **3** Turn on the washer.
  - Press the **Power** button to turn on the washer.
- **4** Select a cycle.
  - Turn the cycle selector knob or press the cycle buttons to select the desired cycle.
  - The preset wash temperature, spin speed, soil level and option settings for the selected cycle are shown.
  - The **Normal** cycle must be selected in order to change its default settings.
  - Pressing the **Start/Pause** button without selecting a cycle immediately starts the **Normal** cycle with the default settings.

- **5** Adjust settings.
  - Default settings for the selected cycle can be changed, if desired, using the cycle modifier and option buttons.
  - Not all modifiers and options are available on all cycles. A different chime sounds and the LED does not light up if the selection is not allowed.
- **6** Begin cycle.
  - Press the **Start/Pause** button to begin the cycle. The door locks, and the washer agitates briefly without water to measure the weight of the load.
  - If the **Start/Pause** button is not pressed within a certain time, the washer shuts off and all settings are lost.
- **7** End of cycle.
  - When the cycle is finished, a melody sounds. Immediately remove the clothing from the washer to reduce wrinkling.
  - Check around the door seal when removing the load for small items that may be caught in the seal.

### NOTE

• The washer rotates the laundry in a way that allows it to use less water while still fully saturating the clothing. It is normal to be unable to see water during the wash cycle.

# **Sorting Laundry**

# **CAUTION**

- Clothing or articles that are waterproof or water-resistant must be washed in the Waterproof, Bedding, Bulky/Large, or Jumbo Wash cycle only. (Examples include water resistant clothing, mattress covers, outdoor clothes, and plastic mats.) Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the washer, clothes, walls, floor, and surrounding objects due to abnormal vibration.
- Remove the stuffing from pillows and cushions before washing the covers. Failure to do so can cause excessive vibration, resulting in damage to the washer, clothes, nearby objects, walls, and floor.

## **Grouping Similar Items**

For the best washing results, and to reduce the possibility of damage to clothing, sort clothing into loads made up of similar items.

Mixing different fabric types and/or soil levels can result in poor wash performance, color transfer, discoloration, fabric damage or linting. Fabrics should be sorted into groups as described below.

### Colors

Sort articles by color. Wash dark clothes separately from light colors or whites. Mixing dark clothes with light clothes can result in dye transfer or discoloration of the lighter clothes.

### Soil Level

Wash heavily soiled clothing together. Washing lightly soiled clothing in the same load with heavily soiled clothing could result in poor wash performance for the lightly soiled clothing.

### **Fabric Type**

Delicate articles should not be mixed with heavy or sturdy fabric types. Washing heavy fabrics with delicates can result in poor wash performance for the heavy fabrics and possible damage to the delicates.

### Lint Type

Some fabrics attract and bind lint to them while others give off lint in the laundry process. Avoid mixing these lint collectors and lint producers in the same load. Mixing these fabrics will result in pilling and linting on the lint collectors. (For example, lint collector - knit sweater; lint producer - terry cloth towels.)

### How to Sort Laundry

By Colors	By Soil	By Fabric	By Lint
White	Heavy	Delicates	Lint Producer
Lights	Normal	Easy Care	Lint Collector
Darks	Light	Sturdy	

## **Fabric Care Labels**

Many articles of clothing include a fabric care label. Using the chart below, adjust the cycle and option selections to care for your clothing according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Category	Label	Directions	
$\sim$	<b>M</b>	Hand wash	
Washing	$\square$	Machine wash, Normal cycle	
	$\square$	Perm Press/Wrinkle Resistant setting (which has a cool down or cold spray before the slower spin)	
	$\underline{\square}$	Gentle/Delicate setting (slow agitation and/or reduced wash time)	
	X	Do not wash	
	赘	Do not wring	
Water Temperature	•••	Hot	
	••	Warm	
	٠	Cold/Cool	
$\triangle$	$\triangle$	Any bleach (when needed)	
Bleach Symbols	$\bigtriangleup$	Only non-chlorine bleach (when needed)	
	*	Do not bleach	

# Loading the Washer

# **WARNING**

• Clothing or articles that are waterproof or waterresistant must be washed in the **Waterproof**, **Bedding**, **Bulky/Large**, or **Jumbo Wash** cycle only. (Examples include water resistant clothing, mattress covers, outdoor clothes, and plastic mats.) Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the washer, clothes, walls, floor, and surrounding objects due to abnormal vibration.

# **General Tips**

- Check and empty pockets. Paper clips, coins, matches, etc.can damage clothing and the washer.
- Close zippers and hooks, and tie drawstrings to prevent snagging or tangling of clothes.
- Pretreat heavily stained areas for best results.
- Brush off heavy soil, dust, and hair from items before washing. Excess dirt or sand can abrade other fabrics and lead to poor wash performance.

• For best performance, load clothes as shown.



- Do not press down on items while stacking them in the drum.
- Load clothes loosely, and do not overfill the drum. Clothes need room to circulate in order to get clean.
- Combine large and small items in the drum. Load large items first. Large items should not be more than half of the total load.
- The washer can be fully loaded, but the drum should not be tightly packed with items. The door of the washer must close easily.
- The washer will not fill or operate with the door open.

## **Bulky Items**

• Wash thick, bulky items individually. Heavy blankets, comforters, bedspreads, or pet beds can get tangled or cause an unbalanced load if combined with other items.

ENGLISH

### Small Items

- Do not wash a single small item. Add enough similar items to the load to prevent an out-ofbalance load.
- Wash small, light items in a mesh bag. Small items can get caught in the door seal, and brassiere hooks can snag on other clothing or the drum.

# **Adding Cleaning Products**

## About Detergent Use

This washer is designed for use with only HE (High-Efficiency) detergents.



- HE detergents produce fewer suds, dissolve more efficiently to improve washing and rinsing performance, and help to keep the interior of the washer clean. Using detergent that is not HE may cause oversudsing and unsatisfactory performance which could result in error codes, cycle failure, and washer damage.
- Detergents designated as HE-compatible may not provide optimal results.
- · For proper wash performance, always measure detergent using the measuring device provided by the detergent manufacturer. For an average load, use less than half of the recommended maximum. Use less detergent for soft water. light soil, or smaller loads.
- Use extra care when measuring 2X and 3X concentrated detergents because even a small amount of extra detergent can lead to problems.
- Never use more than the maximum amount of detergent recommended by the manufacturer. Using too much detergent can lead to oversudsing, poor rinsing, detergent buildup in clothing, and residue buildup that can contribute to odors in the washer.



- 3 Liquid detergent

Powdered detergent

## Single-Use Detergent Packs / Gel or **Tablet Detergents**

- · Do not use more than one single-use detergent pack in the washer. Using too much detergent may cause oversudsing and unsatisfactory performance. Reduce detergent amount or add an extra rinse if detergent residue is left on fabrics. To add an extra rinse, select the Extra Rinse option.
- Place liquid or powdered detergent packs, or gel or tablet detergents in the tub before loading laundry. Do not place these detergents in the dispenser.

# Using the Dispenser

To add cleaning products to the automatic dispenser:

- 1 Open the dispenser drawer.
- 2 Load the laundry products into the appropriate compartments.
  - Follow the manufacturer's recommendations when adding cleaning products.



- Pre-wash detergent compartment (on some models)
- 2 Liquid detergent cup
- 3 Main wash detergent compartment
- 4 Liquid fabric softener compartment
- 5 Liquid chlorine bleach compartment

- **3** Gently close the detergent dispenser drawer before starting the cycle.
  - Slamming the drawer closed may result in the detergent overflowing into another compartment or dispensing into the drum earlier than programmed.
  - Be careful not to get a hand caught in the drawer while closing.
  - It is normal for a small amount of water to remain in the dispenser compartments at the end of the cycle.

# 

• Do not place or store laundry products, such as detergent, bleach, or liquid fabric softener, on top of your washer. These products can damage the washer's finish and controls.

## Pre-wash Detergent Compartment

Add liquid or powdered detergent to this compartment when using the **Pre-wash** option. Always use HE (High-Efficiency) detergent with your washer.

- When using the **Pre-wash** option, liquid detergent for the main wash needs to be loaded in the liquid detergent cup accessory in the main wash dispenser (where applicable), to prevent it from being dispensed with the pre-wash detergent.
- The amount of detergent added for the **Prewash** option is 1/2 the amount recommended for the main wash cycle. For example, if the main wash cycle requires one measure of detergent, add 1/2 measure for the **Pre-wash** option.

# Main Wash Detergent Compartment

This compartment holds laundry detergent for the main wash cycle. Either powdered or liquid detergent may be used in this compartment.

- The detergent is added to the load at the beginning of the cycle. Always use HE (High-Efficiency) detergent with your washer.
- Do not exceed the maximum fill line. Using too much detergent can result in detergent buildup in clothing and the washer.
- Liquid or powdered color-safe bleach may be added to the main wash compartment with detergent of the same type. Do not mix liquids and powders
- If the dispenser has a liquid detergent cup and insert:
  - Make sure they are in place when using liquid detergent.

- Make sure to remove them when using powdered detergent. Powdered detergent will not dispense with the liquid detergent cup and insert in place.
- Guidelines on the dispenser indicate the amount of detergent added.



• If you use a detergent that does not dissolve easily or a detergent with high viscosity, it will leave a residue and clog the dispenser.

# Liquid Bleach Compartment

This compartment holds liquid bleach, which is dispensed automatically at the proper time during the wash cycle. The dispenser is activated twice to ensure complete dispensing of the bleach. Any liquid remaining in the dispenser at the end of the cycle is water, not bleach.

# 🛕 WARNING

• Do not mix chlorine bleach with ammonia or acids such as vinegar or rust/scale remover. Mixing chemicals like these can produce a lethal gas, resulting in severe injury or death.

- Do not add powdered bleach to this compartment. The bleach compartment is designed to dispense liquid chlorine bleach only. Powdered or liquid color-safe bleach will not dispense properly.
- Follow the manufacturer's recommendations when adding bleach. Never add more than one cup, and do not exceed the maximum fill line or the bleach may be dispensed immediately and damage fabrics. Using too much bleach can also damage fabrics.
- Never pour undiluted liquid chlorine bleach directly onto the load or into the drum. Fabric damage can occur.
- Do not use color-safe bleach or oxygen bleach in the same cycle with liquid chlorine bleach.

### **Fabric Softener Compartment**

This compartment holds fabric softener, which is automatically dispensed during the final rinse cycle. Either powdered or liquid fabric softener may be used.

- Do not exceed the maximum fill line. Using too much fabric softener may stain clothes or cause buildup on fabrics or in the washer.
- Dilute concentrated fabric softeners with warm water.
- Never pour fabric softener directly onto the load or into the drum.

# **Control Panel**







### Power On/Off Button

- Press this button to turn the washer on or off.
- Pressing this button during a cycle will cancel that cycle and any load settings will be lost.
- The door will unlock after a brief pause.

### NOTE

• If there is any water remaining in the drum after the washer shuts off, it will drain after a delay. The washer can be restarted at any time before the drain begins. However, once the water begins to drain, all functions will be suspended until the water has been completely drained and the washer shuts off.

### 2 Cycles

- Press a button to select the desired cycle.
- Once the desired cycle has been selected, the standard presets will appear in the display. These settings can be adjusted using the **Cycle Modifier buttons** at any time before starting the cycle.

### Start/Pause Button

- Press and hold this button to start the selected cycle.
- If the washer is running, use this button to pause the cycle without losing the current settings.

#### NOTE

• If the **Start/Pause** button is not pressed to start the selected cycle, after a delay the washer automatically turns off and all cycle settings are lost. Any water remaining in the drum will be drained.

### Ocycle Modifier Buttons

- Use these buttons to adjust the wash temperature, spin speed and soil level settings for the selected cycle.
- The current settings are shown in the display.
- Press the button for that option to select other settings.

### Option and Extra Function Buttons

• These buttons allow you to select additional cycle options. Certain buttons also allow you to activate special functions by pressing and holding the button for **3 seconds**.

### **Remote Start**

Use a smartphone to control your washer remotely.

- For more information, see **SMART FUNCTIONS** in this manual.

### Wi-Fi

When the washer is connected to a home Wi-Fi network, the  $\widehat{\gamma}$  icon on the control panel is lit.

- To connect the washer to the LG ThinQ application, press and hold the Temp. button for 3 seconds.

### **Time and Status Display**



### Wi-Fi Indicator

• This indicator is lit when the product is connected to a home Wi-Fi network.

### 2 Remote Start Indicator

• This indicator lights up when the Remote Start feature is activated.

### Ooor Lock Indicator

- This indicator lights up when the cycle starts and the door is locked.
- The indicator light stays on until the cycle is paused, stopped or has finished.

### Isignal Indicator

• This indicator lights up when the end-of-cycle and button tones are turned on.

### Estimated Time Remaining

- When a cycle is selected, the default time for that cycle is displayed. This time will change as modifiers or options are selected.
- If the display shows -! --, then the time will be displayed after the load sensing has detected the load size.
- The time shown is only an estimate. This time is based on normal operating conditions. Several external factors (load size, room temperature, incoming water temperature, etc.) can affect the actual time.

### NOTE

- Once the **Start/Pause** button is pressed, the washer will measure the size of the load. The estimated time may change once the load size has been measured.
- If the **Delay Wash** function is set, the remaining delay time counts down until the cycle begins.

### 6 AI DD Indicator

• This feature offers optimized washing by detecting the load size and laundry characteristics. The indicator lights up when the **Normal** cycle is selected with a **Warm** wash temperature setting.

### NOTE

• The **AI DD** functionality may vary depending on the environment and model.

### **O** Cycle Status Indicators

- These LEDs will blink when a cycle is selected to indicate which stages will run.
- When a cycle is running, the LED for the active stage will blink, and the LEDs for the remaining stages will remain steady. Once a stage is complete, the LED will turn off. If a cycle is paused, the active stage LED will stop blinking.

# Wash Cycles

The wash cycles are designed for specific types of wash loads. Select the cycle that best matches the load contents for maximum wash performance and fabric care. See **Sorting Laundry** section for best results, and follow the fabric care labels on your garments. For a guide to fabric care symbols, see the **Sorting Laundry** section.

# Cycle Guide

Turn the knob or press the button to select the desired cycle. When you select a wash cycle, the light for the corresponding wash cycle will turn on.

### NOTE

• Whenever load weights are mentioned, assume 1 lb (0.45 kg) = 1 thick bath towel (dry).

Hot	High •	Heavy	<ul> <li>Temperature: Cold &gt; Cool &gt; Warm &gt; Very Warm &gt; Hot</li> </ul>
•	•	•	• Spin: No Spin > Low > Medium > Medium High > High
Cold Temp.	No Spin <b>Spin</b>	Light Soil	• Soil: Light > Medium Light > Normal > Medium Heavy > Heavy

Cycle	Normal			
Description	<ul> <li>Use to wash all normal items such as cotton, linen, shirts, jeans or mixed loads, except delicate fabrics such as wool or silk.</li> <li>Pressing the <b>Start/Pause</b> button without selecting a cycle will cause the <b>Normal</b> cycle to begin immediately, using the default settings.</li> </ul>			
Wash Temp.	Default: Warm Available: All			
Spin Speed	Default: Medium High Available: High, Medium High, Medium Low			
Soil Level	Default: Normal	Available: All		

Cycle	Bedding		
Description	Suitable for washing blankets or bulky items which have difficulty absorbing water, such as pillows, blankets, comforters, sheets or pet bedding.		
	• Do not use this cycle to wash a mixed load of bedding and non-bedding items.		
	• Do not mix large/bulky items with smaller articles of clothing.		
	• Do not wash excessively large items. If large/bulky items do not fit easily into the tub, there may not be enough room for them to move during washing.		
Wash Temp.	Default: Warm Available: Very Warm, Warm, Cool, Cold		
Spin Speed	Default: Medium Available: Medium, Low, No Spin		
Soil Level	Default: Normal Available: All		

Cycle	Delicates	
Description	Suitable for washing dress shirts/blouses, nylons, lingerie, or sheer and lacy clothes which can easily be damaged. <b>(less than 8 lb (3.63 kg))</b>	
Wash Temp.	Default: <b>Cool</b>	Available: Warm, Cool, Cold
Spin Speed	Default: Medium	Available: Medium, Low, No Spin
Soil Level	Default: Normal	Available: All

Cycle	Heavy Duty	
Description	Suitable for washing heavily soiled laundry, such as cotton fabrics, using more powerful wash motions.	
	<ul> <li>When washing large loads, there will be brief periods of 2 minutes or more without agitation. These soak periods are part of the cycle's design, and are normal.</li> </ul>	
Wash Temp.	Default: Warm	Available: All
Spin Speed	Default: <b>High</b>	Available: <b>High</b> , <b>Medium High</b> , <b>Medium</b> , <b>Low</b>
Soil Level	Default: <b>Heavy</b>	Available: All

Cycle	Speed Wash	
Description	<ul> <li>Quickly washes lightly soiled clothing and small loads. For high wash and rinse efficiency, wash small loads of 2-3 lightly soiled garments. (less than 3 lb (1.36 kg))</li> <li>Use very little detergent in this cycle. To add an extra rinse, use the Extra Rinse option.</li> </ul>	
Wash Temp.	Default: Very Warm	Available: Very Warm, Warm, Cool, Cold
Spin Speed	Default: <b>High</b>	Available: All
Soil Level	Default: <b>Light</b>	Available: All

Cycle	Downloaded (Rinse+Spin)	
Description	<ul> <li>Use a smartphone to download a specialized cycle to this cycle position.</li> <li>The default cycle is <b>Rinse+Spin</b>. This cycle is also available for download.</li> <li>Refer to the <b>LG ThinQ</b> application to see the cycles available for download.</li> </ul>	
Wash Temp.	Default: <b>Cool</b>	Available: Cool
Spin Speed	Default: Medium High	Available: All
Soil Level	Default: -	Available: -

# **Available Options**

## NOTE

• **Delay Wash** and **Extra Rinse** can be selected for every cycle in this table.

Cycle	Steam	Pre-wash
Normal	•	•
Bedding	•	•
Delicates		•
Heavy Duty	•	•
Speed Wash		

### 42 OPERATION-WASHER

Cycle	Steam	Pre-wash
Downloaded default: Rinse+Spin		

# **Cycle Modifiers**

# **About Modifier Buttons**

Each cycle has default settings that are selected automatically. You can also customize these settings using the cycle modifier buttons.

- Repeatedly press the button for the desired modifier until the indicator light for the desired setting is lit.
- The washer automatically adjusts the water level for the type and size of wash load for best results and maximum efficiency.
- This is a high-efficiency washer, and the water levels may be much lower than you expect. This is normal, and cleaning/rinsing performance will not be compromised.

Hot	High	Heavy
•	•	•
•	•	•
•	•	•
Cold	No Spin	Light
Temp.	Spin	Soil

## NOTE

- The LED next to the setting lights up when the setting is selected.
- To protect your garments, not every wash temperature, spin speed, soil level, or option is available with every cycle.
- A chime will sound twice and the LED will not light if the desired setting is not allowed for the selected cycle.
- Follow the fabric care labels on the garment for best results.

### Temp.

Make sure the wash temperature is suitable for the type of load you are washing.

- Press the **Temp.** button repeatedly to select the wash and rinse temperature combination for the selected cycle.
- All rinses use unheated cold water.
- Cold rinses use less energy. The actual cold rinse temperature depends on the temperature of the cold water at the faucet.

### Spin

Higher spin speeds extract more water from clothes, reducing drying time and saving energy.

Press the **Spin** button repeatedly until the desired speed is selected.

• Some fabrics, such as delicates, require a slower spin speed.

### Soil

Adjusting the soil level setting will modify the cycle times and/or wash actions.

- Press the **Soil** button repeatedly until the desired soil level is selected.
- The **Heavy** soil setting may increase cycle times. The **Light** soil setting may decrease cycle times.

# **Options and Extra Functions**

Your washer includes several additional cycle options to customize cycles to meet your individual needs.

• Select the desired option after selecting the desired cycle and settings.

### NOTE

- The indicator for the option will light when the option is selected.
- To protect your garments, not every option is available with every cycle.
- A chime will sound twice and the indicator will not light if the selected option is not allowed for the selected cycle.

# Special Cycles

### Sanitary

This cycle washes clothes at a high temperature.

### Tub Clean

This is a special cycle designed to clean the inside of the washer.

### Steam

Adding this option to a wash cycle helps provide superior cleaning performance. Using steam gives fabrics the cleaning benefits of a very hot wash.

- Steam may not be clearly visible during steam cycles. This is normal. Too much steam could damage clothing.
- Do not use steam with delicate fabrics such as wool and silk, or easily discolored fabrics.

## 🛕 WARNING

- Do not touch the door during steam cycles. The door surface can become very hot and can cause severe burns. Allow the door lock to release before opening the door.
- Do not attempt to override the door lock mechanism or reach into the washer during a steam cycle. Steam can cause severe burns.

# **Delay Wash**

Once you have selected the cycle and other settings, press the **Delay Wash** button to delay the start of the wash cycle.

- Each press of this button increases the delay time by 1 hour, for up to 19 hours.
- Once the desired delay time is set, press the **Start/Pause** button to start the delay time.

### NOTE

• If the **Start/Pause** button is not pressed to begin the delay time, the washer automatically turns off after a certain time and all cycle settings are lost.

## **Extra Rinse**

This option adds an extra rinse to the selected cycle. Use this option to help ensure the removal of detergent or bleach residue from fabrics.

• Press the **Extra Rinse** button to add additional rinses to the cycle.

# **Using the Pre-wash Option**

This option adds a pre-wash (for about **15 - 17 minutes**) for improved cleaning of heavily soiled or stained clothing.

### NOTE

• If you select **Pre-wash** after putting the detergent directly in the drum, the detergent may be washed away, reducing the washing performance.

# **Control Lock**

Use this function to disable the controls. This function can prevent children from changing cycles or operating this washer.

## ΝΟΤΕ

- The function does not lock the door.
- Once this function is set, all buttons are locked except the **Power** button.
- When the controls are locked, EL and the remaining time are alternately shown on the display during the wash cycle.
- Turning off the power will not reset this function. You must deactivate this function before you can access any other options and functions.

## Locking/Unlocking the Control Panel

- **1** Turn on the power.
- **2** Press and hold the **Soil** button for 3 seconds to activate/deactivate this function.
- When the function is deactivated, a chime will sound and the remaining time for the current cycle will reappear on the display.

# Signal

The washer plays a melody when the wash cycle is finished. The buttons make a sound each time a button is pressed. Use this button to turn the melody and button tones on or off.

• To turn the function on/off, press and hold the **Extra Rinse** button for 3 seconds.
# **OPERATION-DRYER**

# Using the Dryer

#### 🛕 WARNING

• To reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons, read the SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS before operating this appliance.

#### **Operation Overview**

- 1 Clean the Lint Filter.
  - If the lint filter has not already been cleaned, lift out the filter and remove the lint from the last load. This will help ensure the fastest and most efficient drying performance. Make sure to reinstall the filter, pressing down until it clicks firmly into place.
- **2** Load the Dryer.
  - Load the dryer with the wet laundry from the washer. If the load is extra large, you may need to divide it into smaller loads for proper performance and fabric care.
- **3** Turn on the Dryer.
  - Press the **Power** button to turn on the dryer. The cycle LEDs will illuminate and a chime will sound.
- **4** Select a Cycle.
  - Press a cycle button to select a cycle. The preset temperature, dry level, and option settings for that cycle will be shown.
- 5 Adjust Settings. Default settings for the selected cycle can now

be changed, if desired, using the cycle carries modifier and option buttons.

 Not all modifiers and options are available on all cycles. A different chime will sound and the LED will not come on if the selection is not allowed.

- **6** Begin Cycle.
  - Press the **Start/Pause** button to begin the cycle. The cycle can be paused at any time either by opening the door or by pressing the **Start/Pause** button.
  - If the **Start/Pause** button is not pressed within a certain time, the dryer shuts off and all settings are lost.

#### 7 End of Cycle

 When the cycle is finished, the chime will sound. Immediately remove your clothing from the dryer to reduce wrinkling. If
 Wrinkle Care is selected, the dryer will tumble briefly every few minutes to help prevent wrinkles from setting in the clothes.

#### Check the Lint Filter Before Every Load

Always make sure the lint filter **①** is clean before starting a new load; a clogged lint filter will increase drying time. To clean, pull the lint filter straight up and roll any lint off the filter with your fingers. Push the lint filter firmly back into place. See **Regular Cleaning** for more information.



Always ensure the lint filter is properly installed before running the dryer. Running the dryer with a loose or missing lint filter will damage the dryer and articles in the dryer.

#### Loading the Dryer

#### **General Tips**

• Combine large and small items in the same load.

• Close zippers, hooks and drawstrings to prevent these items from snagging or tangling on other clothes.

#### NOTE

• Damp clothes will expand as they dry. Do not overload the dryer; clothes require room to tumble and dry properly.

#### **Grouping Similar Items**

For the best drying results, and to reduce the possibility of damage to clothing, sort clothes into loads that can be dried with the same drying cycle.

Different fabrics have different care requirements, and some fabrics will dry more quickly than others.

#### **Woolen Items**

Always follow fabric care labels before drying woolen items in a dryer. After the cycle, the items may still be damp. Do not repeat the cycle. Pull the items to their original shape if needed and lay them flat to finish drying.

#### **Woven and Loopknit Materials**

Some woven and loopknit materials may shrink, depending on quality.

#### **Permanent Press and Synthetics**

Do not overload your dryer. Take out permanent press items as soon as the dryer stops to reduce wrinkles.

#### **Baby Clothes and Nightgowns**

Always check the manufacturer's instructions.

#### **Rubber and Plastics**

Do not dry any items made from or containing rubber or plastics such as:

- · Aprons, bibs and chair covers
- Curtains and tablecloths
- Bath mats

#### Fiberglass

Do not dry fiberglass articles in your dryer. Glass particles left in the dryer could be picked up by your clothes the next time you use the dryer and irritate your skin.

#### **Fabric Care Labels**

Sort and dry laundry according to care labels, size, and fabric type. Do not overload the dryer. This will save energy and time and give the best drying performance.

#### Fabric Care Labels

Many articles of clothing include a fabric care label. Using the chart below, adjust the cycle and option selections to care for your clothing according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Tumble Dry	
Label	Directions
	Dry
$\bigcirc$	Normal
$\bigcirc$	Permanent Press / Wrinkle Resistant
$\bigcirc$	Gentle / Delicate
	Do not tumble dry
$\square$	Do not dry (used with do not wash)

Heat Setting	
Label Directions	
•••	High
$\odot$	Medium
$\odot$	Low
	No Heat / Air

# **Control Panel**



#### Power Button

• Press the button to turn the appliance on. Press again to turn the appliance off.

#### NOTE

• Pressing the Power button during a cycle will cancel that cycle and any load settings will be lost.

#### 2 Cycles

• Press a button to select the desired cycle. Once the desired cycle has been selected, the standard presets will be shown in the display.

#### Start/Pause Button

• Press and hold this button to start the selected cycle. If the appliance is running, use this button to pause the cycle without losing the current settings.

#### NOTE

• If you do not press the **Start/Pause** button to resume a cycle within a certain time, the appliance turns off automatically and all cycle settings are lost.

#### Ocycle Modifier Buttons

• Press these buttons to select additional cycle options. Press and hold any button marked with an asterisk for 3 seconds to activate a special function.

#### Extra Options and Functions

- Use these buttons to select the desired options for the selected cycle. Not all options are available for each cycle.
- Remote Start
  - With the LG ThinQ app, you can use a smartphone to control your appliance remotely.
- Wi-Fi
  - Press and hold the **Temp.** button for 3 seconds to initiate the connection of the appliance to the **LG ThinQ** application.

#### Time and Status Display



#### Wi-Fi Indicator

• This indicator is lit when the product is connected to a home Wi-Fi network.

#### 2 Remote Start Indicator

• This indicator lights up when the Remote Start feature is activated.

#### Flow Sense Indicator

• The Flow Sense duct blockage sensing system detects and alerts you to blockages in the ductwork that reduce exhaust flow from the dryer. Maintaining a clean exhaust system improves operating efficiency and helps minimize service calls, saving you money.

#### Isignal Indicator

• This indicator lights up when the end-of-cycle and button tones are turned on.

#### Estimated Time Remaining

- When a drying cycle is selected, the estimated drying time for the selected cycle is displayed. This time will change if you select extra options for the cycle.
- The cycle time on Sensor Dry cycles may fluctuate as the appliance recalculates drying time for optimal results.

#### **6** AI Sensor Dry Indicator

• This feature optimizes drying times and temperatures by detecting the laundry's characteristics. The indicator lights up when the **Normal** cycle is selected with the **Normal** dry level, except when the **Energy Saver** option is turned on.

#### Lint Filter Status Indicator

• 🖾 lights up when the appliance is turned on as a reminder to clean the lint filter. It turns off when the **Start/Pause** button is pressed. It also lights up if the lint filter needs to be cleaned.

#### 8 Cycle Status Indicators

- $\Sigma$  lights up when the appliance is in the drying stage.
- Solution lights up when the appliance is in the cool down stage.

# **Dry Cycles**

#### Cycle Guide

The appliance automatically sets the dryness level and temperature at the recommended setting for each cycle. The estimated time remaining will be shown in the display.



- Temperature indicator lights up when Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium High or High is selected.
- Dry Level indicator lights up when Damp, Less, Normal, More or Very is selected.

Cycle	Normal	
Description	Use this cycle for drying all normal items such as cotton, linen, shirts, jeans or mixed loads, except delicate fabrics such as wool or silk.	
Temp.	Default: Medium High Available: Medium High	
Dry Level	Default: Normal	Available: All

Cycle	Bedding	
Description	Use this cycle for drying blankets or bulky items such as pillows, blankets, comforters, sheets or pet bedding.	
Temp.	Default: Medium Available: Medium	
Dry Level	Default: <b>Normal</b>	Available: Very, More, Normal

Cycle	Delicates	
Description	Use this cycle for drying dress shirts/blouses, nylons, lingerie, or sheer and lacy clothes which can easily be damaged.	
Temp.	Default: Medium Low Available: Medium Low	
Dry Level	Default: Normal	Available: All

Cycle	Heavy Duty	
Description	Use this cycle for drying heavy-duty clothes like jeans or garments that need extra drying.	
Temp.	Default: High Available: High	
Dry Level	Default: <b>Normal</b>	Available: <b>All</b>

Cycle	Small Load	
Description	Use this cycle for drying light or small items. (up to 3 items)	
Temp.	Default: <b>High</b>	Available: <b>High</b>
Dry Level	Default: <b>Normal</b>	Available: Very, More, Normal

Cycle	Downloaded (Perm. Press)	
Description	<ul> <li>You can use a smartphone to download a specialized cycle to this cycle position.</li> <li>The default cycle is <b>Perm. Press</b>. This cycle is also available for download.</li> <li>Refer to the <b>LG ThinQ</b> application to see the cycles available for download.</li> </ul>	
Temp.	Default: <b>Medium</b>	Available: Medium
Dry Level	Default: Normal	Available: All

#### **Available Options**

<sup>†</sup> This option is automatically included in the cycle and can be deselected.

#### NOTE

• The **Energy Saver** option is set to on by default. If you turn on the dryer and set the **Energy Saver** option to off, the **Energy Saver** option is turned off when you turn on the dryer.

Cycle	Wrinkle Care	Energy Saver
Normal	•	•†
Bedding		
Delicates	•	
Heavy Duty	•	
Small Load	•	
Downloaded default: Perm. Press	•	

# **Cycle Modifiers**

#### **About Modifier Buttons**

Each cycle has default settings that are selected automatically. Customize these settings using the cycle modifier buttons. Press the button for the desired modifier to open the modifier's screen.

Temp.	Dry Level	Time Dry
Low	Damp	20
•	•	٠
•	•	٠
•	•	•
High	Very	60

#### Temp.

Use this button to adjust the temperature setting. This allows precise care of fabrics and garments. Press the **Temp.** button repeatedly to scroll through available settings.

#### Dry Level

Use this button to select the dryness level for the cycle. Press the **Dry Level** button repeatedly to scroll through available settings.

- The appliance will automatically adjust the cycle time according to the selected dryness level.
   Selecting More or Very will increase the cycle time, while Less or Damp will decrease the cycle time.
- Use a **Less** or **Damp** setting for items that you wish to iron.

#### **Time Dry**

Use this button to manually select the drying time, from 20 to 60 minutes, in 10-minute increments.

• Use this for small loads or to remove wrinkles.

# **Options and Extra Functions**

Your dryer includes several additional cycle options to customize cycles to meet your individual needs.

Select the desired option after selecting the desired cycle and settings.

#### NOTE

- The LED for the option will light up when the option is selected.
- To protect your garments, not every option is available with every cycle.

• A chime will sound twice and the LED will not light up if the selected option is not allowed for the selected cycle.

#### More Time / Less Time

Use these buttons to increase or decrease drying time in 5 minutes increments when you use the **Time Dry** function.

#### Wrinkle Care

Selecting this option will tumble the load periodically for up to 3 hours after the selected cycle, or until the door is opened. This is helpful in preventing wrinkles when you are unable to remove items from the dryer immediately.

Press the **Wrinkle Care** button before you start a drying cycle.

#### NOTE

- When the option is set, a rectangle with a dashed line and End appears on the display until the feature is off.
- When the option is set, only the **Power** button works after the drying cycle ends.
- When a drying cycle is running, pause the cycle first to set the option.
- Always turn off the appliance before unloading the clothes.

#### **Energy Saver**

This option helps to reduce the energy consumption of the **Normal** cycle, depending on the load size. When the **Energy Saver** option is selected, the cycle begins with an air dry section and the drying time is increased.

#### NOTE

- The **Energy Saver** option is turned on by default in the **Normal** cycle.
- Turning the **Energy Saver** option off changes the default cycle to the last cycle used. To return to the default settings, turn the **Energy Saver** option on.

#### **Control Lock**

Use this function to disable the controls. This function can prevent children from changing cycles or operating this dryer.

#### NOTE

- The function does not lock the door.
- Once this function is set, all buttons are locked except the **Power** button.
- When the controls are locked, L and the remaining time are alternately shown on the display during the dry cycle.
- Turning off the power will not reset this function. You must deactivate this function before you can access any other options and functions.

#### Locking/Unlocking the Control Panel

- **1** Turn on the power.
- **2** Press and hold the **Time Dry** button for 3 seconds to activate/deactivate this function.
- When the function is deactivated, a chime will sound and the remaining time for the current cycle will reappear on the display.

#### Signal

The dryer plays a melody when the dry cycle is finished. The buttons make a sound each time a button is pressed. Use this button to turn the melody and button tones on or off.

• To turn the function on/off, press and hold the **Wrinkle Care** button for 3 seconds.

# **SMART FUNCTIONS**

# **Using LG ThinQ Application**

The **LG ThinQ** application allows you to communicate with the appliance using a smartphone.

#### LG ThinQ Application Features

#### • Remote Start

- Control the appliance remotely from the **LG ThinQ** application.
- Downloaded
  - Download new and specialized cycles that are not included in the standard cycles on the appliance. Once cycle download is completed in the appliance, the product keeps the downloaded cycle until a new cycle is downloaded.
- Cloud Cycle
  - The Cloud cycles include many cycles which are started from the Cloud and offer various options. However, the downloaded cycle is deleted from the appliance when the power is turned off.
- Tub Clean Coach (Washer)
  - Find out how many cycles remain before it is time to run the **Tub Clean** cycle.
- Venting Tips (Dryer)
  - Access tips for optimizing dryer ventilation.
- Energy Monitoring
  - Keep track of the appliance's power consumption and how it is affected by your selected wash cycles and options.
- Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup>
  - This function provides useful information for diagnosing and solving issues with the appliance based on the pattern of use.
- ・ Push Alerts
  - When the cycle is complete or the appliance has problems, you will receive a push message.
- Settings
  - Set various options on the appliance and in the application.

#### NOTE

• If you change your wireless router, Internet service provider, or password, delete the connected appliance from the **LG ThinQ** application and connect it again.

• This information is current at the time of publication. The application is subject to change for product improvement purposes without notice to users.

# ENGLISH

#### Installing LG ThinQ App and Connecting an LG Appliance

#### Models with QR Code

Scan the QR code attached to the product using the camera or a QR code reader app on your smartphone.



#### Models without QR Code

- **1** Search for and install the **LG ThinQ** app from the Google Play Store or Apple App Store on a smartphone.
- 2 Run the LG ThinQ app and sign in with your existing account or create an LG account to sign in.

3 Touch the add (+) button on the LG ThinQ app to connect your LG appliance. Follow the instructions in the app to complete the process.

#### NOTE

- You may be asked to provide a password to connect to the LG network (not your home network) during the Wi-Fi setup. The password is the last 4 characters of the network name, repeated twice, with no spaces. For example, if the network name appears as LG\_XXXX\_8b92, then you would enter 8b928b92 as your password. The password is case sensitive and the last 4 characters are unique to your appliance.
- The appliance supports 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi networks only. To check your network frequency, contact your Internet service provider or refer to your wireless router manual.
- LG ThinQ is not responsible for any network connection problems or any faults, malfunctions, or errors caused by network connection.
- If the appliance is having trouble connecting to the Wi-Fi network, it may be too far from the router. Purchase a Wi-Fi repeater (range extender) to improve the Wi-Fi signal strength.
- The Wi-Fi connection may not connect or may be interrupted because of the home network environment.
- The network connection may not work properly depending on the Internet service provider.
- The surrounding wireless environment can make the wireless network service run slowly.
- If the appliance cannot be registered due to problems with the wireless signal transmission, unplug the appliance and wait about a minute before trying again.
- If the firewall on your wireless router is enabled, disable the firewall or add an exception to it.
- The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)
- Smartphone user interface (UI) may vary depending on the mobile operating system (OS) and the manufacturer.
- If the security protocol of the router is set to **WEP**, network setup may fail. Change the security protocol (**WPA2** is recommended) and connect the product again.

# Using the Washer/Dryer Remotely

#### **Remote Start**

Use a smartphone to control your appliance remotely. You can also monitor your cycle operation so you know how much time is left in the cycle.

#### **Using Remote Start**

- 1 Load the laundry.
- 2 Press the **Power** button.
- **3** Press and hold the **Remote** button for 3 seconds to enable the remote control function.
- **4** Start a cycle from the **LG ThinQ** application on your smartphone.

#### NOTE

- Once this function is enabled, you can only start a cycle from the **LG ThinQ** smartphone application. If the cycle is not started, the appliance will wait to start the cycle until it is turned off remotely from the application or this function is disabled.
- If the door has been opened, you cannot start a cycle remotely.

#### **Disabling Remote Start Manually**

When the function is activated, press and hold the **Remote** button for 3 seconds.

#### **Downloaded Cycle**

You can download new and specialized cycles that are not included in the standard cycles on the appliance.

Appliances that have been successfully connected can download a variety of specialty cycles specific to the appliance.

Once cycle download is completed in the appliance, the product keeps the downloaded cycle until a new cycle is downloaded.

#### NOTE

• Only one downloaded cycle can be stored on the appliance at a time.

#### **Cloud Cycle**

Use the **LG ThinQ** app to start cycles with various options. Cloud cycles are deleted from the appliance once the power is turned off.

#### **Wireless LAN Module Specifications**

Frequency Range	2412 - 2462 MHz
Output Power (Max)	< 30 dBm

#### **FCC Notice**

The following notice covers the transmitter module contained in this product.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This transmitter must not be colocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20 cm (7.8 inches) between the antenna and your body. Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

#### Open Source Software Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligation to disclose source code, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents, please visit https:// opensource.lge.com.

LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com.

This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

# Smart DiagnosisTM Function

Use this feature to help you diagnose and solve problems with your appliance.

#### NOTE

- For reasons not attributable to LGE's negligence, the service may not operate due to external factors such as, but not limited to, Wi-Fi unavailability, Wi-Fi disconnection, local app store policy, or app unavailability.
- The feature may be subject to change without prior notice and may have a different form depending on where you are located.

#### Using LG ThinQ to Diagnose Issues

If you experience a problem with your Wi-Fi equipped appliance, it can transmit troubleshooting data to a smartphone using the **LG ThinQ** application.

 Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> feature in the menu. Follow the instructions provided in the **LG ThinQ** application.

#### Using Audible Diagnosis to Diagnose Issues

Follow the instructions below to use the audible diagnosis method.

- Launch the LG ThinQ application and select the Smart Diagnosis<sup>TM</sup> feature in the menu. Follow the instructions for audible diagnosis provided in the LG ThinQ application.
- **1** Press the **Power** button to turn on the appliance.
  - Do not press any other buttons.
- **2** Hold the mouthpiece of your phone in front of the appliance.
  - Washer: Hold the phone to the right of the **Start/Pause** button.
  - Dryer: Hold the phone to the left of the **Power** button.
- 3 Press and hold the Steam + Extra Rinse (Washer) / More Time + Wrinkle Care (Dryer) buttons for 3 seconds or until the audible tones start. Hold the smartphone mouthpiece to the logo until the data transfer is complete.
  - Keep the smartphone in place until the data transfer has finished. Time remaining for data transfer is displayed.
- **4** After the data transfer is complete, the diagnosis will be displayed in the application.

#### NOTE

• For best results, do not move the smartphone while the tones are being transmitted.

# MAINTENANCE

#### **WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons, read this entire owner's manual, including the SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS, before operating this appliance.
- Unplug the appliance before cleaning to avoid the risk of electric shock. Failure to follow this warning can cause serious injury, fire, electric shock, or death.
- Do not use volatile substances (benzene, paint thinner, alcohol, acetone, etc.), abrasive cleaners, or detergents with strong chemical components when cleaning the appliance. Doing so may cause discoloration or damage to the appliance, or may cause a fire.
- Certain internal parts are intentionally not grounded and may present a risk of electric shock only during servicing. Service personnel Do not contact the following parts while the appliance is energized: pump, valve, motor, control board.

# Washer

#### **Regular Cleaning**

#### Care after Wash

After the cycle is finished, wipe the door and the inside of the door seal to remove any moisture.

- Wipe the body of the washer with a dry cloth to remove any moisture.
- Leave the door open to dry the drum interior.

#### MARNING

• Make sure children and pets do not climb into the drum. Engage the **Control Lock** feature if needed to prevent children from accidentally starting a wash cycle.

#### **Cleaning the Exterior**

Proper care of your washer can extend its life.

#### Door:

Wash with a damp cloth on the outside and inside and then dry with a soft cloth.

#### Exterior:

- · Immediately wipe off any spills.
- Wipe with a damp cloth.
- Do not touch the surface or the display with sharp objects.

#### **Cleaning the Drum**

Over time, residue may build up in the drum, leading to mildew or a musty odor. Run the **Tub Clean** cycle **monthly** to remove residue and prevent odor.

#### NOTE

- Make sure to run the **Tub Clean** cycle only when the drum is empty. Never load laundry while using this cycle. The laundry may be damaged or contaminated with cleaning products.
- Run the cycle more often under heavy use conditions or if odor is already present.
- If mildew or musty smell already exists, run this cycle once a week for three consecutive weeks.
- **1** Remove any clothing from the drum.

#### **2** Add cleaning agents.

Cleaner	Instructions
Drum cleaner	Add to main detergent compartment of detergent dispenser
Lime scale remover	
Liquid chlorine bleach	Add to bleach compartment of detergent dispenser.
Powdered cleaner	Pull out liquid detergent cup before adding to main detergent compartment
Cleaning tablets	Place directly into the washer drum.

#### 58 MAINTENANCE

- For other drum cleaning products, follow the cleaner manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
- Do not exceed the maximum fill line when adding bleach or powdered cleaners. Powdered cleaners may remain in the drum after cleaning.
- **3** Close the door and press the **Power** button.
- 4 Select the **Tub Clean** cycle and press the **Start/Pause** button to begin the cycle.
- **5** After the cycle ends, open the door and allow the drum interior to dry completely.

#### **WARNING**

• Make sure children and pets do not climb into the drum. Engage the **Control Lock** feature if needed to prevent children from accidentally starting a wash cycle.

#### NOTE

• If you use a descaler or drum cleaner during the **Tub Clean** cycle, use the **Speed Wash** option to rinse the washer drum before running your next wash cycle.

#### **Automatic Alert for Tub Clean**

When the power is on and the EcL message blinks on the display, it means the washer drum needs cleaning. Use the **Tub Clean** cycle to clean the washer drum. The frequency of the automatic alert's appearance depends on how often the washer is used. However, the message will generally appear every one to two months.

## **Removing Mineral Buildup**

In areas with hard water, mineral scale can form on internal components of the washer. Periodically clean the mineral buildup on the internal components to extend the lifespan of the washer. Use of a water softener is recommended in areas with hard water.

- Use a descaler to remove visible mineral buildup on the washer drum.
- After descaling, always run the **Tub Clean** cycle before washing clothing.

- Mineral scale and other spots may be removed from the stainless steel drum using a soft cloth soaked in stainless steel cleaner.
- Do not use steel wool or abrasive cleaners.

#### Leaving the Door Open

After you finish using the appliance, leave the door open overnight to allow air to circulate and dry the drum. This helps prevent odors. In high-traffic areas or where space is tight, use the magnetic door stop to keep the door slightly ajar. To use, gently close the door until the magnet just contacts the inner door frame.

### **Cleaning the Dispenser Drawer**

Leaving detergent in the detergent dispenser drawer for an extended period of time or using the washer for a long period of time may cause the build-up of residue in the detergent dispenser drawer. Remove and clean the detergent dispenser drawer **once or twice a month**.

#### 🛕 WARNING

- Do not spray water inside the washer. Doing so may cause fire or electric shock.
- **1** Turn off the washer, and unplug the power cord.
- **2** Pull the drawer straight out until it stops.
- **3** Press down hard on the disengage button **1** and pull the drawer completely out.



- **4** Remove the inserts from the drawer.
- **5** Clean the inserts and drawer with warm water.
  - Use a soft cloth or brush to clean and to remove any residue.

- Do not use soap when cleaning the drawer and inserts.
- **6** Wipe off any moisture with a dry towel or cloth after cleaning.
- 7 To clean the drawer opening, use a small, non-metal brush to clean the recess. Remove all residue from the upper and lower parts of the recess.
- **8** Replace the drawer.



#### **Cleaning the Door Seal**

Clean the door seal **once a month** to prevent build-up of dirt.

#### 

- Cleaning the door seal with undiluted bleach may cause malfunction of the door seal and washer parts. You must add water to the bleach before using it.
- **1** Wear rubber gloves and protective goggles.
- **2** Dilute 3/4 cup (177 mL) of liquid chlorine bleach in 1 gallon (3.8 L) of water.
- **3** Wipe around the door seal.
  - Soak a sponge or a soft cloth in this diluted solution and wipe all around the door seal.
- **4** Wipe up any moisture with a dry towel or cloth after cleaning.
- **5** Leave the door open to allow the door seal to dry completely.

#### **Cleaning the Water Inlet Filters**

If the washer does not fill properly, an error message will appear on the display. The inlet valve filter screens could be clogged by hard water scale, sediment in the water supply, or other debris.

#### 🛕 WARNING

• The inlet screens protect the delicate parts of the inlet valve from being damaged by particles that could enter the valves with the water supply. Operating the washer with these filters removed could cause a valve to open continuously, resulting in flooding and/or property damage.

#### **CAUTION**

- Do not use the washer without the inlet filters. Doing so will cause leaks and malfunction.
- If you use the washer in an area with hard water, the inlet filter may clog due to lime buildup and require more frequent cleaning.
- **1** Turn off the washer, and unplug the power cord.
- **2** Turn off hot and cold water faucets.
- **3** Unscrew the hot and cold water hoses from the back of the washer.
- **4** Remove the filters from the water valves carefully.
  - Use pliers to pull out the filters from the water valves.



- **5** Remove foreign objects and soak the filters in white vinegar or a lime scale remover.
  - If using a lime scale remover, follow the manufacturer's instructions. Be careful not to damage the filters while cleaning them.

#### **60** MAINTENANCE

- **6** Rinse filters thoroughly and press them back into place.
- **7** Flush then reattach the water hoses.
  - Before reattaching the water inlet hoses, flush them by running several gallons of water through them into a bucket or drain, preferably with the faucets wide open for maximum flow.

#### NOTE

• An I E error message may blink on the display when the water pressure is low or an inlet filter is clogged with dirt. Clean the inlet filter.

## **Cleaning the Drain Pump Filter**

The washer fails to drain if the drain pump filter is clogged. Periodically clean the drain filter to prevent clogging with foreign objects.

#### MARNING

- Opening the drain filter will result in water overflowing if there is water in the drum. Use a bucket if the drum is not completely drained before you open the drain filter.
- Using the washer without the drain filter or with an incorrectly assembled drain filter may cause leaks or malfunction of the washer.
- **1** Turn off the washer, and unplug the power cord.
- **2** Open the drain pump filter cover.



- **3** Drain any remaining water.
  - Unclip the drain hose and remove the plug from the drain hose to drain the remaining water.



- **4** Remove the pump filter.
  - Twist the pump filter counterclockwise to remove.



**5** Clean the pump filter and opening.



6 Reassemble the plug onto the drain hose and reclip the drain hose.



7 Insert the drain pump filter and twist it clockwise.



**8** Close the drain pump filter cover.

#### NOTE

• An DE message blinks on the display when the drain pump filter is clogged with dirt. Clean the drain pump filter.

#### **Care in Cold Climates**

#### **Storing the Appliance**

If the washer will not be used for an extended period of time and is in an area that could be exposed to freezing temperatures, follow these steps to protect the washer from damage.

#### NOTE

- Make sure the drum is empty before following these steps.
- **1** Turn off the washer, and unplug the power cord.
- **2** Turn off the water faucets.
- **3** Disconnect the water inlet hoses. Drain any water from the hoses.



4 Plug the power cord into a properly grounded electrical outlet.

- **5** Add 1 gallon of nontoxic recreational vehicle (RV) antifreeze to the empty drum and close the door.
  - Never use automotive antifreeze.
- **6** Turn on the washer and press the **Spin** button.
- 7 Press the **Start/Pause** button to start the drain pump for **1 minute**.
  - This will expel some of the antifreeze, leaving enough to protect the washer from damage.
- **8** Turn off the washer and unplug the power cord.
- **9** Dry the drum interior with a soft cloth, and close the door.
- **10** Store the washer in an upright position.
- **11** Remove the inserts from the dispenser. Drain any water in the compartments and let them dry.
- **12** To remove the antifreeze from the washer after storage, run the **Speed Wash** cycle using detergent.
  - Do not add laundry to this cycle.

#### When the Water Inlet Hoses Are Frozen

- **1** Turn off the washer, and unplug the power cord.
- **2** Turn off the faucets connected to the water inlet hoses.
- **3** Pour hot water on the frozen faucets to thaw the water inlet hoses and remove the water inlet hoses.

#### 62 MAINTENANCE

- **4** Immerse the water inlet hoses in hot water to thaw them.
- **5** Reconnect the water inlet hoses to the water inlets of the washer and to the faucets.
  - See **Connecting the Water Inlet Hoses** for details.
- **6** Turn on the faucets.
- 7 Press the **Power** button to turn on the washer.
- 8 Press the **Spin** button to operate spin only cycle for draining and spinning.
- **9** Press the **Start/Pause** button.

#### When the Drain Hose is Frozen

- **1** Pour hot water in the washer drum and close the door.
- 2 Wait for 1 2 hours.
- **3** Press the **Power** button.
- 4 Press the **Spin** button to operate spin only cycle for draining and spinning.
- **5** Press the **Start/Pause** button to make sure the water drains.

# Dryer

### **Regular Cleaning**

#### **Cleaning the Exterior**

Proper care of your appliance can extend its life. The outside of the appliance can be cleaned with warm water and a mild, nonabrasive household detergent. Immediately wipe off any spills with a soft, damp cloth.

#### NOTE

- Do not use methylated spirits, solvents, or similar products.
- Never use steel wool or abrasive cleansers; they can damage the surface.

#### **Cleaning the Interior**

- Wipe around the door opening and seal with a soft, damp cloth to prevent lint and dust buildup that could damage the door seal.
- Clean the window with a soft cloth dampened with warm water and a mild, nonabrasive household detergent. Then wipe dry.
- The stainless steel drum can be cleaned with a conventional stainless steel cleaner, used according to the manufacturer's specifications. Never use steel wool or abrasive cleansers; they may scratch or damage the surface.

#### Cleaning Around and Under the Appliance

Vacuum lint and dust from around the dryer and underneath it regularly.

#### **Maintaining Ductwork**

Vent ductwork should be checked for lint build up once per month and cleaned at least once per year. If any noticeable reduction in airflow or drying performance occurs, immediately check ductwork for obstructions and blockages and contact a qualified technician or service provider.

#### **Cleaning the Lint Filter**

Always clean the lint from the filter after every cycle.



#### Lint Filter

To clean the lint filter, open the dryer door and pull the lint filter straight up. Then:

**1** For everyday cleaning, roll any lint off the filter with your fingers, or



**2** Vacuum the lint filter.



**3** If the lint filter has become very dirty or clogged with fabric softener, wash the lint filter in warm, soapy water and allow it to dry thoroughly before reinstalling.



#### NOTE

• NEVER operate the appliance without the lint filter in place.

# **APPENDIX**

# Disassembly

#### **Disassembling the Washer and** Dryer

The washer and dryer cannot be disassembled and installed for use side by side. If it is necessary to disassemble the appliance in order to move or reinstall it, follow these instructions.

#### **WARNING**

• Protect your hands and arms from sharp edges. To reduce the risk of injury to persons, adhere to all industry recommended safety procedures including the use of long-sleeved gloves and safety glasses.

#### NOTE

- · Any damage resulting from improper disassembly/assembly or installation of the product is not covered by the product warranty.
- 1 Be sure to unplug the appliance.
- 2 Loosen screws assembled on the stacking bracket on the back of the appliance.



3 Push open the caps at the left and right sides of the control panel on the front of the appliance. Loosen the screws under the caps.







5 Disconnect the wire harnesses from the washer **1** and dryer **2** to the control panel.



#### **CAUTION**

Always ground yourself before touching the PCB or wiring. Discharge of static electricity may cause product malfunction.

#### NOTE

- Tuck the wire harnesses to the side to avoid pinching them.
- 6 Unscrew the second screw from the top of the four screws on the left and right.



7 Lift the dryer and separate it from the washer.



### 

- Protect your hands and arms from sharp edges of the panel frame exposed on the top of the washer.
- To avoid strain injuries, use 2 or more people to lift the dryer.

#### NOTE

• When assembling the appliance, proceed in reverse order.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

The appliance is equipped with an automatic error-monitoring system to detect and diagnose problems at an early stage. If the appliance does not function properly or does not function at all, check the following before you call for service.

# ENGLISH

# Washer

#### **FAQs: Frequently Asked Questions**

#### Q: Why does my washer make loud banging noises while it is filling with water?

**A:** This is actually a problem with the plumbing in your home. When the water valve in the washer shuts off, it can cause pipes in your home to move, resulting in a loud banging noise. This effect, called water hammer, can be reduced by installing an item called a water hammer arrestor. Add-on arrestors can be purchased through your local hardware or home improvement store.

#### Q: Why is there so little water in my washer? How can it clean the clothes?

- **A:** HE (High-Efficiency) washers are designed to properly wash your laundry while using a minimum amount of water and energy. Because the water volume is low, the small amount of detergent used is more concentrated in the water, resulting in excellent cleaning performance.
- Q: When I press a button, why does my washer beep and then nothing happens?
- A: The **Control Lock** feature is turned on. To turn it off, turn on the washer, then press and hold the button that has **Control Lock** on or under it for **3 seconds**.
- Q: Where should I pour the powdered laundry products when doing my laundry?
- **A:** If you are using powdered laundry detergent, load it in the main detergent dispenser after removing the liquid detergent insert. Powdered laundry agents or powdered color safe bleach should be put directly into the drum. These products can be put in the empty drum before loading or on top of the laundry after loading the washer.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
I E	Water supply faucets are not fully open.
INLET ERROR	Make sure that the water faucets are fully open.
	Water inlet hoses are kinked, pinched, or crushed.
	• Make sure that the hoses are not kinked, pinched or crushed behind or under the washer. Be careful when moving the washer during cleaning or maintenance.
	Water inlet filters are clogged.
	Clean the inlet filters. See MAINTENANCE.
	Water supply pressure to faucet or house is too low.
	• Check another faucet in the house to make sure that household water pressure is adequate and flow is not restricted.
	• Disconnect the water inlet hoses from the washer and run a few gallons of water through the hoses to flush out any dirt.
	• If flow is too low, contact a plumber to have the water supply lines repaired.

#### Error Messages

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
ΙE	Water supply connected with leak-limiting hoses.
INLET ERROR	• The use of hoses designed to limit leaks is not recommended. Leak limiting hoses can trip falsely and prevent the washer from filling.
UE	The load is too small.
UNBALANCE ERROR	• Add additional items to allow the washer to balance the load.
	Heavy articles are mixed with lighter items.
	<ul> <li>Always try to wash articles of somewhat similar weight to allow the washer to evenly distribute the weight of the load for spinning.</li> </ul>
	The load is out of balance.
	<ul> <li>Manually redistribute the load if articles have become tangled, preventing the automatic rebalancing from working properly.</li> </ul>
dE, dE 1, dE2, dE4	The door is not secured.
DOOR OPEN ERROR	• Close and secure the door. If the message keeps appearing, unplug the power cord and call for service.
DE	Drain hose is kinked, pinched, or clogged.
WATER OUTLET ERROR	• Make sure that the drain hose is free of clogs or kinks and is not pinched behind or under the washer.
	The end of the drain hose is more than 96 inches (2.4 m) above the bottom of the washer.
	• Move the end of the drain hose so that it is lower than <b>96 inches (2.4 m)</b> .
ΕE	Control error.
TEMPERATURE SENSOR ERROR	• Unplug the power cord and call for service.
FE	Water level is too high due to a faulty water valve.
OVERFLOW ERROR	Close the water faucets, unplug the washer, and call for service.
PE	The water level sensor is not working correctly.
PRESSURE SENSOR ERROR	• Close the water faucets, unplug the washer, and call for service.
LE	A motor error has occurred.
MOTOR LOCKED	• Allow the washer to stand for 30 minutes and then restart the cycle.
ERROR	If the error code is still displayed, call for service.
Sud	Oversudsing of detergent
OVERSUDSING	• Do not add more than the manufacturer's recommended amount of detergent.
DETECTION	• If too many suds are detected during spinning, the washer stops to help prevent leaking.
PF	Power failure or inadequate electrical service may have occurred during operation.
POWER FAILURE	Press the <b>Start/Pause</b> button to restart the cycle.
FF	Inlet hose, drain hose or drain pump is frozen.
FROZEN ERROR	• See Care in Cold Climates.
CL	The Control Lock function is on to prevent anyone from changing cycles or operating
CONTROL LOCK	the washer.
FUNCTION	<ul> <li>Turn off the Control Lock function in the control panel. See Control Lock under Options and Extra Functions.</li> </ul>
tcL	It is time to run the Tub Clean cycle.
TUB CLEAN ALARM	• This is not an error code. It indicates that the <b>Tub Clean</b> cycle is running or needs to be run to clean the washer drum.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
ບ5 VIBRATION SENSOR ERROR	<ul><li>Vibration sensor malfunctions.</li><li>Call for service.</li></ul>	-

#### Noises

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Clicking	Door lock sounds when the door locks or unlocks.
	Normal operation
Spraying or hissing	Water spraying or circulating during the cycle
	Normal operation
Humming or	Drain pump is pumping water from the washer at times during a cycle.
Gurgling	Normal operation
Water sloshing	A liquid in the balance ring around the pulsator helps the basket spin smoothly.
	Normal operation
Water being added	The washer adapts to the load size and type to add more water to the cycle as needed.
after the washer has already begun to	Normal operation
operate	The wash load may be unbalanced. If the washer senses that the load is unbalanced, it will stop and refill to redistribute the load.
	Normal operation
	The washer may be diluting laundry additives to add to the wash load.
	Normal operation
Rattling and	Foreign objects, such as keys, coins, or safety pins may be in drum or pump.
clanking noise	• Stop the washer, check the drum and the drain filter for foreign objects.
	• If noise continues after the washer is restarted, call for service.
Thumping sound	Heavy wash loads may produce a thumping sound.
	• This is normal, but if the sound continues, the washer is probably out of balance. Stop and redistribute wash load.
	Wash load may be out of balance.
	• Pause the cycle and redistribute the load after the door unlocks.
Vibrating noise	Packaging materials were not removed.
	• See Unpacking and Removing Shipping Material in INSTALLATION.
	Wash load may be unevenly distributed in the drum.
	• Pause the cycle and redistribute the load after the door unlocks.
	Not all leveling feet are resting firmly and evenly on the floor.
	See Leveling the Appliance in INSTALLATION.
	Floor is not rigid enough.
	• Make sure that the floor is solid and does not flex. See Flooring in <b>INSTALLATION</b> .
Squeaking noise	Packaging materials were not removed.
	<ul> <li>See Unpacking and Removing shipping Material in INSTALLATION.</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Banging noise when the washer is filling with water. (Water hammer)	<ul> <li>Plumbing in the home moves or flexes when the water valves in the washer shut off.</li> <li>Water hammer is not caused by a defect in the washer. Install water hammer arrestors (purchased separately at hardware or home improvement store) between the fill hose and the washer for best results.</li> </ul>
	<ul><li>Household water supply pressure is very high.</li><li>Adjust household water supply regulator to a lower pressure or contact a plumber.</li></ul>

# Operation

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Water Leaking	Hoses are not connected correctly.
	Check hoses and connectors for leaks, cracks, and splits.
	Check and tighten hose connections.
	House drain pipes are clogged.
	• The washer pumps out water very rapidly. Check for water backing up out of the drain pipe during drain. If water is seen coming out of the drain, check for proper drain hose installation and check for restrictions in the drain.
	Contact a plumber to repair drain pipe.
	Drain hose has come out of the drain connector or is not inserted far enough.
	• Tie drain hose to inlet hose or standpipe to prevent it from coming out during drain.
	• For smaller drain pipes, insert the drain hose into the pipe as far as the drain hose flange. For larger drain pipes, insert the drain hose into the pipe 1 - 2 inches past the flange.
	Oversudsing of detergent
	• Oversudsing may create leaks, and may be caused by the type and amount of detergent used. HE (High-Efficiency) detergent is the only detergent recommended. The normal amount of detergent to use is 1/4 to 1/2 of the maximum amount recommended by the detergent manufacturer.
	• Always reduce the amount of detergent if the load is small or lightly soiled, or if the water is very soft.
	<ul> <li>Never use more than the maximum amount recommended by the detergent manufacturer.</li> </ul>
Excessive sudsing	Too much detergent or incorrect detergent
	<ul> <li>HE detergents are formulated specifically for HE (High-Efficiency) washers and contain suds reducing agents. Only use detergent with the HE (High-Efficiency) logo.</li> </ul>
	• For detergent quantities refer to <b>Detergent Use</b> in <b>OPERATION</b> . If sudsing or detergent residue continues to be an issue, add an extra rinse.
Washer will not turn	Power cord is not properly plugged in.
on.	<ul> <li>Make sure that the plug is plugged securely into a grounded, 3-prong, 120-VAC, 60 Hz outlet.</li> </ul>
	House fuse is blown, circuit breaker has tripped, or power outage has occurred.
	<ul> <li>Reset circuit breaker or replace fuse. Do not increase fuse capacity. If the problem is a circuit overload, have it corrected by a qualified election.</li> </ul>
Wash cycle time is longer than usual.	The washer automatically adjusts the wash time for the amount of laundry, water pressure and other operating conditions.
	• This is normal. The washer adjusts cycle time automatically to provide optimal results for the selected cycle. The time remaining shown in the display is only an estimate. Actual time may vary.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Incomplete or no	Detergent compartments clogged from incorrect filling.
dispensing of detergent	• Make sure that detergent and additives are put into the correct dispenser compartments.
	• For all detergent types, always make sure that the dispenser drawer is fully closed before the start of the cycle.
	Too much detergent used.
	<ul> <li>Make sure that the suggested amount of detergent is used according to the manufacturer's recommendations. You may also dilute the detergent with water to the maximum fill line on the compartment to avoid clogging. Use only HE (High-Efficiency) detergent.</li> </ul>
	NOTE
	<ul> <li>Always use as little detergent as possible. HE (High-Efficiency) washers need very little detergent to achieve optimum results. Using too much detergent will cause poor wash and rinse performance and may contribute to odors in the washer.</li> </ul>
	Insufficient water supply
	<ul> <li>Make sure that both hot and cold water faucets are turned on all the way.</li> </ul>
	Normal residue
	<ul> <li>It is normal for a small amount of detergent to remain in the dispenser. If this residue builds up, it can interfere with normal dispensing of detergents. Refer to the cleaning instructions.</li> </ul>
Washer will not	Control panel has powered off due to inactivity.
operate.	• This is normal. Press the <b>Power</b> button to turn on the washer.
	Washer is unplugged.
	• Make sure that the power cord is plugged securely into an electrical outlet.
	Water supply is turned off.
	Turn both hot and cold faucets fully on.
	Controls are not set properly.
	<ul> <li>Make sure that the cycle was set correctly, close the door and press the Start/Pause button to start the wash cycle.</li> </ul>
	Door is open.
	• Close the door and make sure that nothing is caught under the door preventing it from closing completely.
	Circuit breaker/fuse is tripped/blown.
	• Check house circuit breakers/fuses. Replace fuses or reset breaker. The washer should be on a dedicated branch circuit.
	Start/Pause button was not pressed after the cycle was set.
	• Press the <b>Power</b> button then reselect the desired cycle and press the <b>Start/Pause</b> button. If the <b>Start/Pause</b> button is not pressed within a certain time, the washer will be turned off. (The time varies by model, from 4 to 60 minutes.).
	Extremely low water pressure.
	• Check another faucet in the house to make sure that household water pressure is adequate.
	Washer is too cold.
	• If the washer has been exposed to temperatures below freezing for an extended period of time, allow it to warm up before pressing the <b>Power</b> button. Otherwise, the display will not come on.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Washer is not filling properly.	Filter is clogged.
	• Make sure that inlet filters on the fill valves are not clogged. Refer to <b>Cleaning the Water</b> <b>Inlet Filters</b> in <b>MAINTENANCE</b> .
	Inlet hoses may be kinked.
	Check that inlet hoses are not kinked or clogged.
	Energy efficiency
	• This is a High-Efficiency (HE) washer. As a result, the water level settings for this washer may be different than for conventional washer.
	Insufficient water supply
	Make sure that both hot and cold water faucets are turned on all the way.
	Washer door is open.
	• Close the door and make sure that nothing is caught under the door preventing it from closing completely.
	Water level is too low.
	• The water will not normally cover the clothes. The fill level is optimized for the wash motion to achieve the best wash performance.
Water in the washer	Drain hose is kinked, pinched, or clogged.
does not drain or drains slowly.	• Make sure that the drain hose is free of clogs or kinks and is not pinched behind or under the washer.
	The end of the drain hose is more than 96 inches (2.4 m) above the bottom of the washer.
	• Move the end of the drain hose so that it is lower than 96 inches (2.4 m).
Bleach does not	Bleach dispenser cover is not properly installed (on some models).
dispense.	• Make sure that the bleach cover is properly installed and snapped into place before the beginning of the cycle.
	Bleach dispenser is dirty or clogged.
	• Lift out the bleach dispenser cover and clean out the reservoir. Lint and other foreign debris that are collected inside the dispenser may prevent proper dispensing of the bleach.
Premature	Bleach dispenser filled for future load.
dispensing of bleach	• You cannot store bleach in the dispenser for future use. The bleach will be dispensed every load.
	Overfilling the bleach dispenser
	• Overfilling the bleach dispenser will cause the bleach to dispense immediately, which will damage the laundry or the washer. Always measure bleach, but never fill above the max line on the dispenser. A half cup of bleach is sufficient for most loads. Never use more than 1 cup of bleach.

#### Performance

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Wrinkling	Washer is not unloaded promptly.
	• Always remove items from the washer as soon as the cycle is complete.
	Washer is overloaded.
	• The washer can be fully loaded, but the drum should not be tightly packed with items. The door of the washer should close easily.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Wrinkling	Hot and cold water inlet hoses are reversed.
	• Hot water rinse can set wrinkles in garments. Check the inlet hose connectors.
Staining	Bleach or softener dispensed too soon.
	<ul> <li>Dispenser compartment was overfilled or closed too quickly, causing the bleach or softener to dispense immediately. Always measure bleach, and never use more than 1 cup.</li> </ul>
	Bleach or softener was added directly to the wash load in the drum.
	<ul> <li>Always use the dispensers to ensure that laundry products are properly dispensed at the right time in the cycle.</li> </ul>
	Washer was not unloaded promptly.
	• Always remove items from the washer as soon as possible after the cycle is completed.
	Clothes were not properly sorted.
	• Always wash dark colors separately from light colors and whites to prevent discoloration.
	<ul> <li>Never wash heavily soiled items with lightly soiled items.</li> </ul>
Poor stain removal	Proper options are not selected.
	• Heavier soils and tougher stains may require extra cleaning power. Select the <b>Heavy Soil</b> feature to boost the cleaning power of the selected cycle.
	Previously set stains.
	<ul> <li>Articles that have previously been washed may have stains that have been set. These stains may be difficult to remove and may require hand washing or pre-treating to aid in stain removal.</li> </ul>
Musty or mildewy	Incorrect or too much detergent has been used.
odor in the washer	<ul> <li>Use only HE (High-Efficiency) detergent in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.</li> </ul>
	Inside of the drum was not cleaned properly.
	Run the <b>Tub Clean</b> cycle regularly.

### Odor

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Odor	Some odor is caused by the rubber attached to the washing machine.
	• This odor is normal for new rubber and will disappear after the machine has been run a few times.
	If the rubber door gasket and door seal area are not cleaned regularly, odors can occur from mold or foreign substances.
	• Be sure to clean the gasket and door seal regularly and check under the door seal for small items when unloading the washer.
	Odors can occur if foreign substances are left in the drainage pump filter.
	• Be sure to clean the drainage pump filter regularly.
	Odors can occur if the drainage hose is not properly installed, causing siphoning (water flowing back inside the washing machine).
	• When installing the drainage hose, be sure that it doesn't become kinked or blocked.

# Dryer

#### **FAQs: Frequently Asked Questions**

#### Q: When I press a button, why does my dryer beep and then nothing happens?

A: The **Control Lock** feature is turned on. To turn off **Control Lock**, turn the dryer on, then press and hold the button that has **Control Lock** on or under it for 3 seconds.

#### Q: Why does my dryer take so long to dry clothes?

A: Proper airflow is critical to the efficient operation of clothes dryers. A lint filter which is full of lint or clogged with fabric softener sheet residue can reduce the airflow to the point that the time required to dry clothing will be greatly increased.

#### Q: Why does my dryer start by itself every few minutes?

A: This is how the **Wrinkle Care** feature works. The dryer runs briefly every few minutes for up to 3 hours after the cycle finishes. This feature is designed to help prevent wrinkles from setting in when the dryer is not unloaded immediately after the cycle is finished.

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Elthrough EE기	Temperature sensor failure.
TEMPERATURE SENSOR ERROR	• Turn off the appliance and call for service.
P5	Power cord is connected incorrectly.
POWER ERROR	• Check the connection of the power cord to the terminal block.
d75, d80, d90, d95	The duct work is about 75% - 95% blocked. (The error code is displayed for 2 hours only.)
DUCT BLOCK ERROR	<ul> <li>Do not use the appliance until the exhaust system has been cleaned and/or repaired. Using the appliance with a severely restricted exhaust is dangerous and could result in a fire or other property damage.</li> </ul>
	• Check the outside dryer vent while the appliance is operating to make sure there is strong airflow. If the exhaust system is extremly long, have it repaired or rerouted.
	House exhaust system blocked.
	• Keep the area around the dryer clean and free of clutter. Check vent hood for damage or lint clogging. Make sure the area around the vent hood is clear.
EL CONTROL LOCK	The Control Lock function is on to prevent anyone from changing cycles or operating the dryer.
FUNCTION	• Turn off the <b>Control Lock</b> function in the control panel. See <b>Control Lock</b> under <b>Options and Extra Functions</b> .

#### **Error Messages**

#### Operation

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
The Flow Sense <sup>™</sup> (	<ul> <li>After clearing the restrictions, the Flow Sense<sup>™</sup> () system requires multiple, consecutive cycles to determine that the performance value has improved before the Flow Sense<sup>™</sup> () indicator is reset.</li> <li>If the Flow Sense<sup>™</sup> () indicator remains active for more than five cycles after the restriction has been cleared, call for service.</li> </ul>

ENGLISH

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Clothes take too long	Exhaust ducts are blocked, dirty, or duct run is too long.	
to dry.	<ul> <li>Confirm that the exhaust duct is properly configured and free of debris, lint, and obstructions. Make sure that the outside wall damper can open properly and is not blocked, jammed, or clogged.</li> </ul>	
	Load is not properly sorted	
	• Separate heavy items from lightweight items. Larger and heavier items take longer to dry. Light items in a load with heavy items can fool the sensor because the light items dry faster.	
	Large and heavy fabrics are loaded.	
	<ul> <li>Heavy fabrics take longer to dry because they tend to retain more moisture. To help reduce and maintain more consistent drying times for large and heavy fabrics, separate these items into smaller loads of a consistent size.</li> </ul>	
	Dryer controls are not set properly.	
	• Use the appropriate control settings for the type of load you are drying. Some loads may require an adjustment of the dry level setting for proper drying.	
	Lint filter needs to be cleaned.	
	• Remove the lint from the filter before every load. With the lint removed, hold the filter up to a light to see if it is dirty or clogged. With some loads that produce high amounts of lint, such as new bath towels, it may be necessary to pause the cycle and clean the filter during the cycle.	
	House fuse is blown, circuit breaker has tripped, or power outage has occurred.	
	• Reset circuit breaker or replace fuse. Do not increase fuse capacity. If the problem is a circuit overload, have it corrected by a qualified electrician.	
	The appliance is overloaded.	
	• Divide extra large loads into smaller loads for better drying performance and efficiency.	
	Energy Saver option is selected. (on some models)	
	• If using the <b>Normal</b> cycle, deselect the <b>Energy Saver</b> option that is selected by default. This option reduces enery use by adding an air dry section to the beginning of the cycle. It is normal to feel no heat at the beginning of the cycle while in <b>Energy Saver</b> mode.	
The appliance will	Power cord is not properly plugged in.	
not turn on.	<ul> <li>Make sure that the plug is securely plugged into a grounded outlet matching the appliance's rating plate.</li> </ul>	
	House fuse is blown, circuit breaker has tripped, or power outage has occurred.	
	• Reset circuit breaker or replace fuse. Do not increase fuse capacity. If the problem is a circuit overload, have it corrected by a qualified electrician.	
The appliance does	House fuse is blown, circuit breaker has tripped, or power outage has occurred.	
not heat.	• Reset circuit breaker or replace fuse. Do not increase fuse capacity. If the problem is a circuit overload, have it corrected by a qualified electrician.	
	Gas supply or service is turned off.	
	• Confirm that the house gas shutoff and the shutoff valves of the dryer are both fully open. Even if gas is not supplied to the appliance, it will run and no error codes will display. Verify that other gas appliances in the home are working normally.	
	Energy Saver option is selected. (on some models)	
	• If using the <b>Normal</b> cycle, deselect the <b>Energy Saver</b> option that is selected by default. This option reduces energy use by adding an air dry section to the beginning of the cycle. It is normal to feel no heat at the beginning of the cycle while in <b>Energy Saver</b> mode.	

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Drying time is not	Heat settings, load size, or dampness of clothing is not consistent.	
consistent.	• The drying time for a load will vary depending on the size of the load, the type of fabrics, the wetness of the clothes and the condition of the lint filter. An unbalanced load in the washer can cause poor spinning, resulting in wetter clothes which will take longer to dry.	

#### Performance

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Clothes are wrinkled.	Clothes dried too long (overdried).	
	<ul> <li>Overdrying a load of laundry can lead to wrinkled clothes. Try a shorter drying time or use a lower dry level setting and remove items while they still retain a slight amount of moisture.</li> </ul>	
	Clothes left in dryer too long after cycle ends.	
	• Use the <b>Wrinkle Care</b> option. This option will tumble the clothes briefly every few minutes for up to 2 hours to help prevent wrinkling.	
Greasy or dirty spots	Fabric softener used incorrectly.	
on clothes.	Check and follow the instructions provided with your fabric softener.	
	Clean and dirty clothes are being dried together.	
	• Use your dryer to dry only clean items. Soil from dirty clothes can transfer to the clean clothes in the same or later loads.	
	Clothes were not properly cleaned or rinsed before being placed in the dryer.	
	• Stains on dried clothes could be stains that were not removed during the washing process. Make sure that clothes are being completely cleaned or rinsed according to the instructions for your washer and detergent. Some difficult soils may require pre-treating prior to washing.	
Clothes are	Garment care instructions are not being followed.	
shrinking.	• To avoid shrinking your clothes, always consult and follow fabric care instructions. Some fabrics will naturally shrink when washed. Other fabrics can be washed but will shrink when dried in a dryer. Use a low or no heat setting.	
Lint on clothes.	Lint filter not cleaned properly.	
	• Remove the lint from the filter before every load. With the lint removed, hold the filter up to a light to see if it is dirty or clogged. If it looks dirty, follow the cleaning instructions in the <b>MAINTENANCE</b> section. With some loads that produce high amounts of lint, it may be necessary to clean the filter during the cycle.	
	Laundry not sorted properly.	
	<ul> <li>Some fabrics are lint producers (i.e., a fuzzy white cotton towel) and should be dried separately from clothes that are lint trappers (i.e., a pair of black linen pants).</li> </ul>	
	Excess static in clothes.	
	<ul> <li>Use a fabric softener to reduce static electricity. Be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions. Overdrying a load of laundry can cause a buildup of static electricity.</li> </ul>	
	The appliance is overloaded.	
	Divide extra large loads into smaller loads for drying.	
	Tissue, paper, etc., left in pockets.	
	Check pockets thoroughly before washing and drying clothes.	
Excess static in	Fabric softener is not used or is used incorrectly.	
clothes after drying.	<ul> <li>Use a fabric softener, if available, to reduce static electricity. Be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.</li> </ul>	

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Excess static in clothes after drying.	Clothes dried too long (overdried).	
	<ul> <li>Overdrying a load of laundry can cause a buildup of static electricity. Adjust settings and use a shorter drying time. Select a lower dry level setting, if necessary.</li> </ul>	
	Drying synthetics, permanent press, or synthetic blends.	
	<ul> <li>These fabrics are naturally more prone to static buildup. Try using fabric softener, or use a lower dry level setting and/or shorter time settings.</li> </ul>	
Clothes have damp	Very large load or very small load. Single large item such as a blanket or comforter.	
spots after a dry cycle.	<ul> <li>If items are too tightly packed or too sparse the sensor may have trouble reading the dryness level of the load. Use a <b>Time Dry</b> cycle for very small loads.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Large, bulky items such as blankets or comforters can sometimes wrap themselves into a tight ball of fabric. The outside layers will dry and register on the sensors, while the inner core remains damp. When drying a single bulky item, it may help to pause the cycle once or twice and rearrange the item to unwrap and expose any damp areas.</li> </ul>	
	• To dry a few remaining damp items from a very large load or a few damp spots on a large item after a sensor cycle has completed, empty the lint trap, and then set a <b>Time Dry</b> cycle to finish drying the item(s).	

## **Indicator Messages**

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution	
Flow Sense indicator	Exhaust system is too long or has too many turns/restrictions.	
(圖) shows four bars during the drying cycle or the display shows dᡂ after drying.	• Install a shorter or straighter duct run. See the <b>Installation Instructions</b> for details.	
	Partial blockage of the ductwork due to lint buildup or other foreign object.	
	<ul> <li>Ductwork should be checked/cleaned immediately. Dryer can be used in this condition, but drying times will be longer and energy consumption will increase.</li> </ul>	
	The appliance has detected a restriction in the external dryer venting.	
	<ul> <li>If exhaust restrictions are sensed by the Flow Sense system, the indicator will remain on for <b>2 hours</b> after the end of the cycle. Opening the door or pressing the <b>Power</b> button will turn off the display.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>This warning light is not a dryer failure and is not covered by the dryer warranty. Contact a duct cleaning service to set up an appointment to have your exhaust system cleaned and inspected.</li> </ul>	
The Flow Sense indicator (圖) remains active after	After clearing the restriction, the Flow Sense system requires multiple, consecutive cycles to determine that the performance value has improved before the Flow Sense indicator is reset.	
clearing the restriction in the venting.	• If the Flow Sense indicator remains active for more than five cycles after the restriction has been cleared, call for service.	
Check filter indicator	Lint filter not cleaned properly.	
() is on during the drying cycle.	• Remove the lint from the filter before every load. With the lint removed, hold the filter up to a light to see if it is dirty or clogged. If it looks dirty, follow the cleaning instructions. With some loads that produce high amounts of lint, it may be necessary to clean the filter during the cycle.	

# Common

Wi-Fi

Problem	Possible Cause & Solution
Trouble connecting	The password for the Wi-Fi network was entered incorrectly.
appliance and smartphone to Wi-Fi	• Delete your home Wi-Fi network and begin the connection process again.
network	Mobile data for your smartphone is turned on.
	• Turn off the <b>Mobile data</b> on your smartphone before connecting the appliance.
	The wireless network name (SSID) is set incorrectly.
	<ul> <li>The wireless network name (SSID) should be a combination of English letters and numbers. (Do not use special characters.)</li> </ul>
	The router frequency is not 2.4 GHz.
	<ul> <li>Only a 2.4 GHz router frequency is supported. Set the wireless router to 2.4 GHz and connect the appliance to the wireless router. To check the router frequency, check with your Internet service provider or the router manufacturer.</li> </ul>
	The appliance and the router are too far apart.
	• If the appliance is too far from the router, the signal may be weak and the connection may not be configured correctly. Move the router closer to the appliance or purchase and install a Wi-Fi repeater.
	During Wi-Fi setup, the app is requesting a password to connect to the product (on certain phones).
	<ul> <li>Locate the network name which starts with "LG" under Settings &gt; Networks. Note the last part of the network name.</li> </ul>
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XX-XX-XX, enter lge12345.
	- If the network name looks like LGE_Appliance_XXXX, enter XXXX twice as your password. For example, if the network name appears as LGE_Appliance_8b92, then you would enter 8b928b92 as your password. In this instance, the password is case sensitive and the last 4 characters are unique to your appliance.

# LIMITED WARRANTY

# USA

#### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

#### ARBITRATION NOTICE: THIS LIMITED WARRANTY CONTAINS AN ARBITRATION PROVISION THAT REQUIRES YOU AND LG ELECTRONICS ("LG") TO RESOLVE DISPUTES BY BINDING ARBITRATION INSTEAD OF IN COURT, UNLESS YOU CHOOSE TO OPT OUT. IN ARBITRATION, CLASS ACTIONS AND JURY TRIALS ARE NOT PERMITTED. PLEASE SEE THE SECTION TITLED "PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES" BELOW.

Should your LG Washer/Dryer ("Product") fail due to a defect in materials or workmanship under normal and proper use, during the warranty period set forth below, LG will, at its option, repair or replace the Product. This limited warranty is valid only to the original retail purchaser of the Product ("You") and applies only when purchased lawfully and used within the United States including U.S. Territories.

WASHER WARRANTY PERIOD			
Product	Direct Drive Motor (Stator or Rotor)	Washer Drum	
Parts (internal/ functional parts only) and Labor: One (1) year from the date of original retail purchase	Parts Only: Ten (10) years from the date of original retail purchase You are responsible for any applicable labor cost.	Parts Only: Three (3) years from the date of original retail purchase You are responsible for any applicable labor cost.	

DRYER WARRANTY PERIOD			
Product	Dual Inverter Compressor Inverter Motor	Dryer Drum	
Parts (internal/ functional parts only) and Labor: One (1) year from the date of original retail purchase	Parts only: Ten (10) years from the date of original retail purchase You are responsible for any applicable labor cost.	Parts Only: Three (3) years from the date of original retail purchase You are responsible for any applicable labor cost.	

- Replacement Products and parts are warranted for the remaining portion of the original warranty period or ninety (90) days, whichever is greater.
- Replacement Products and parts may be new, reconditioned, refurbished, or otherwise factory remanufactured.
- Replaced Product or part(s) will be the property of LG.
- Proof of original retail purchase specifying the Product model and date of purchase is required to obtain warranty service under this limited warranty.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ON THE PRODUCT IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL LG OR ITS U.S. DISTRIBUTORS/DEALERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST GOODWILL, LOST REVENUES OR PROFITS, WORK STOPPAGE, IMPAIRMENT OF OTHER GOODS, COST OF REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT, LOSS OF USE, OR ANY OTHER DAMAGES WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. LG'S TOTAL LIABILITY, IF ANY, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT.

SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

#### THIS LIMITED WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER:

- Service trips to deliver, pick up, or install, educate how to operate, correct wiring, or correct unauthorized repairs.
- Damage or failure of the Product to perform during power failures and interrupted or inadequate electrical service.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by leaky or broken water pipes, frozen water pipes, restricted drain lines, inadequate or interrupted water supply or inadequate supply of air.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from operating the Product in a corrosive atmosphere or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by accidents, pests and vermin, lightning, wind, fire, floods, acts of nature, or any other causes beyond the control of LG.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by unauthorized modification or alteration, or if the Product is used for other than the intended purpose, or any water leakage where the Product was not properly installed.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by incorrect electrical current, voltage, or plumbing codes.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by transportation, storage, and/or handling, including scratches, dents, chips, and/or other damage to the finish of the Product, unless such damage is reported within one (1) week of delivery.
- Damage or failure of the Product resulting from misuse, abuse, improper installation, repair, or maintenance. Improper repair includes the use of parts not authorized by LG. Improper installation or maintenance includes installation or maintenance contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Damage or failure of the Product caused by the use of parts, components, accessories, consumable cleaning products, or any other products or services that were not authorized by LG.
- Damage or missing items to any display or open box Product.
- Refurbished Product or any Product sold "As Is", "Where Is", "With all Faults", or similar disclaimer.
- Products with original serial numbers that have been removed, altered, or cannot be readily determined.
- Increases in utility costs and additional utility expenses.
- Any noises associated with normal operation.
- Products used for other than normal and proper household use (e.g., commercial or industrial use) or contrary to the Product owner's manual.
- Costs associated with removal and reinstallation of the Product for repairs, or the removal and reinstallation of the Product if it is installed in an inaccessible location or not installed in accordance with the Product Owner's manual.
- Accessories, removable components, or consumable parts (e.g. Shelves, door bins, drawers, water/air filters, racks, light bulbs, batteries, etc., as applicable), except for internal/functional parts covered under this limited warranty.

#### The cost of repair or replacement under these excluded circumstances shall be borne by You.

TO OBTAIN WARRANTY SERVICE AND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Call 1-800-243-0000 and select the appropriate option from the menu.

Or visit our website at http://www.lg.com

Or by mail: LG Electronics Customer Service P.O. Box 240007 Huntsville, AL 35813 ATTN: CIC

#### **PROCEDURE FOR RESOLVING DISPUTES:**

ALL DISPUTES BETWEEN YOU AND LG ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE PRODUCT SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT IN A COURT OF GENERAL JURISDICTION. BINDING ARBITRATION MEANS THAT YOU AND LG ARE EACH WAIVING THE RIGHT TO A JURY TRIAL AND TO BRING OR PARTICIPATE IN A CLASS ACTION.

**Definitions.** For the purposes of this section, references to "LG" mean LG Electronics U.S.A., Inc., its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, beneficiaries,

predecessors in interest, successors, assigns and suppliers; references to "dispute" or "claim" shall include any dispute, claim or controversy of any kind whatsoever (whether based in contract, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, fraud, misrepresentation or any other legal or equitable theory) arising out of or relating in any way to the sale, condition or performance of the product or this Limited Warranty.

**Notice of Dispute.** In the event you intend to commence an arbitration proceeding, you must first notify LG in writing at least 30 days in advance of initiating the arbitration by sending a letter to LG at LG Electronics USA, Inc. Attn: Legal Department- Arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. You and LG agree to engage in good faith discussions in an attempt to amicably resolve your claim. The notice must provide your name, address, and telephone number; identify the product that is the subject of the claim; and describe the nature of the claim and the relief being sought. If you and LG are unable to resolve the dispute within 30 days, either party may proceed to file a claim for arbitration.

**Agreement to Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver.** Upon failure to resolve the dispute during the 30 day period after sending written notice to LG, you and LG agree to resolve any claims between us only by binding arbitration on an individual basis, unless you opt out as provided below. Any dispute between you and LG shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's product or claim. More specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, any dispute between you and LG shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class or representative action. Instead of arbitration, either party may bring an individual action in small claims court, but that small claims court action may not be brought on a class or representative basis.

**Arbitration Rules and Procedures.** To begin arbitration of a claim, either you or LG must make a written demand for arbitration. The arbitration will be administered by the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") and will be conducted before a single arbitrator under the AAA's Consumer Arbitration Rules that are in effect at the time the arbitration is initiated (referred to as the "AAA Rules") and under the procedures set forth in this section. The AAA Rules are available online at <u>www.adr.org/consumer</u>. Send a copy of your written demand for arbitration 111 Sylvan Avenue, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632. If there is a conflict between the AAA Rules and the rules set forth in this section will govern. This arbitration provision is governed by the Federal Arbitration Act. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. All issues are for the arbitrator to decide, except that issues relating to the scope and enforceability of the arbitration provision and to the arbitrativity of the dispute are for the court to decide. The arbitrator is bound by the terms of this provision.

**Governing Law.** The law of the state of your residence shall govern this Limited Warranty and any disputes between us except to the extent that such law is preempted by or inconsistent with applicable federal law.

**Fees/Costs.** You do not need to pay any fee to begin an arbitration. Upon receipt of your written demand for arbitration, LG will promptly pay all arbitration filing fees to the AAA unless you seek more than \$25,000 in damages, in which case the payment of these fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for herein, LG will pay all AAA filing, administration and arbitrator fees for any arbitration initiated in accordance with the AAA Rules and this arbitration provision. If you prevail in the arbitration, LG will pay your attorneys' fees and expenses as long as they are reasonable, by considering factors including, but not limited to, the purchase amount and claim amount. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if applicable law allows for an award of reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, an arbitrator can award them to the same extent that a court would. If the arbitrator finds either the substance of your claim or the relief sought in the demand is frivolous or brought for an improper purpose (as measured by the standards set forth in Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 11(b)), then the payment of all arbitration fees will be governed by the AAA Rules. In such a situation, you agree to reimburse LG for all monies previously disbursed by it that are otherwise your obligation to pay under the AAA Rules. Except as otherwise provided for, LG waives any rights it may have to seek attorneys' fees and expenses from you if LG prevails in the arbitration.

**Hearings and Location.** If your claim is for \$25,000 or less, you may choose to have the arbitration conducted solely on the basis of (1) documents submitted to the arbitrator, (2) through a telephonic hearing, or (3) by an in-person hearing as established by the AAA Rules. If your claim exceeds \$25,000, the right to a hearing will be determined by the AAA Rules. Any in-person arbitration hearings will be held at a location within the federal judicial district in which you reside unless we both agree to another location or we agree to a telephonic arbitration.

**Opt Out.** You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. If you opt out, neither you nor LG can require the other to participate in an arbitration proceeding. To opt out, you must send notice to LG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the product by either: (i) sending an e-mail to <u>optout@lge.com</u>, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out" or (ii) calling 1-800-980-2973. You must include in the opt out e-mail or provide by telephone: (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the product was purchased; (c) the product model name or model number; and (d) the serial number (the serial number can be found (i) on the product; or (ii) online by accessing <u>https://www.lg.com/us/support/repair-service/schedule-repair-continued</u> and clicking on "Find My Model & Serial Number").

You may only opt out of the dispute resolution procedure in the manner described above (that is, by e-mail or telephone); no other form of notice will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the full benefits of the Limited Warranty. If you keep this product and do not opt out, then you accept all terms and conditions of the arbitration provision described above.



LG Customer Information Center	Centro de Información al Cliente LG	Centre de Service à la Clientèle de LG
For inquiries or comments, visit <b>www.lg.com</b> or call: 1-800-243-0000 U.S.A. 1-888-542-2623 CANADA	Para consultas o comentarios, visite www.lg.com o llame por teléfono: 1-800-243-0000 EE.UU. 1-888-542-2623 CANADÁ	Pour des questions ou des commentaires, visitez www.lg.com/ca_fr ou appelez : 1-800-243-0000 ÉTATS-UNIS 1-888-542-2623 CANADA
Register your product Online!	¡Registre su producto en línea!	Enregistrez votre produit en ligne!
www.lg.com	www.lg.com	www.lg.com/ca_fr